

**LINK:
CONTENT & A-Z**



**The Ultimate
Driving Machine**



OWNER'S HANDBOOK.

THE BMW M5 SALOON.



WELCOME TO BMW.

Owner's Handbook.

BMW M5.

Congratulations on your choice of a BMW.

The better you are acquainted with your vehicle, the easier you will find it is to operate. We would therefore like to offer you the following advice:

Please read the Owner's Handbook before setting out in your new BMW. Also use the Integrated Owner's Handbook in your vehicle. It contains important notes on how to operate the vehicle, enabling you to derive maximum benefit from the technical advantages of your BMW. It also contains information which will help you to maintain both the operating and road safety of your BMW as well as its full resale value.

At the time of production in the factory, the printed Owner's Handbook is the most up-to-date medium. After a vehicle software update – for example, a Remote Software Upgrade – the integrated Owner's Handbook for the vehicle will contain updated information.

Supplementary information is provided in the other documents of on-board literature.

We wish you a safe and pleasant journey.

TABLE OF CONTENTS

After a vehicle software update – for example, a Remote Software Upgrade – the integrated Owner's Handbook for the vehicle will contain updated information.

! NOTES

Notes	6
Owner's Handbook media	14

🔑 QUICK REFERENCE

Getting in	16
Adjustment and operation	20
On the move	24

👉 CONTROLS

Driving area	32
Vehicle operating state	37
iDrive	40
BMW Remote Software Upgrade	57
General settings	60
Personal settings	65
Connections	70
Opening and closing	78
Seats, mirrors and steering wheel	103
Carrying children safely	117
Driving	130
Displays	148
Lights	167
Safety	175
Driving Stability Control Systems	212
Driver Assistance Systems	220
Driving comfort	260
Air conditioning	262

Interior equipment	277
Storage compartments	286
Boot	290

DRIVING HINTS

BMW M5 Technology	296
Driving precautions	298
Towing a trailer	305
Saving fuel	310

MOBILITY

Refuelling	312
Wheels and tyres	314
Engine compartment	337
Operating fluids	340
Maintenance	347
Replacing parts	350
Help in case of a breakdown	359
General care	367

REFERENCE

Technical data	372
Appendix	374
Everything from A to Z	376

© 2019 Bayerische Motoren Werke

Aktiengesellschaft

Munich, Germany

Not to be reproduced, wholly or in part, without written permission from BMW AG, Munich.

English ID7 X/19, 11 19 490

Printed on environmentally friendly paper, bleached without chlorine, suitable for recycling.

Notes

About this Owner's Handbook

Orientation

The quickest way to find information on a particular topic or feature is to consult the alphabetical index.

We recommend that you read through the first chapter to obtain an initial overview of the vehicle.

Validity of Owner's Handbook

Vehicle production

At the time of production in the factory, the printed Owner's Handbook provides up-to-date information. Updates following the copy deadline can result in differences between the printed Owner's Handbook and the integrated Owner's Handbook in the vehicle.

You will find notes on any updates in the appendix of the printed Owner's Handbook for the vehicle.

After a software update in the vehicle

After a vehicle software update – for example, a Remote Software Upgrade – the integrated Owner's Handbook for the vehicle will contain updated information.

Owner's Handbook for Navigation, Entertainment, Communication

The Owner's Handbook for navigation, entertainment and communication is available as a printed book from Service.

These topics are also covered in the integrated Owner's Handbook in the vehicle.

Additional sources of information

Service Partner

A Service Partner of the manufacturer will be happy to answer any further questions.

Internet

Vehicle information and general information on BMW – on technology, for example – are available on the Internet: www.bmw.com.

Integrated Owner's Handbook in the vehicle

The Integrated Owner's Handbook describes the specific equipment and functions present in the vehicle. The Integrated Owner's Handbook can be shown in the Control Display.

BMW Driver's Guide App

The BMW Driver's Guide app specifically describes the equipment and functions included in the vehicle. The app can be displayed on smartphones and tablets.

BMW Driver's Guide web version

The Driver's Guide web version shows the most appropriate information for the selected vehicle. Where possible, only the equipment and functions actually installed in the vehicle will be described. The Driver's Guide web version can be displayed in any up-to-date browser.

Symbols and displays

Symbols in the Owner's Handbook

Symbol	Meaning
	Precautions that must be followed in order to avoid the possibility of injury to yourself and to others as well as serious damage to the vehicle.
	Measures that can be taken to help protect the environment.
"..."	Texts on a display in the vehicle for selecting functions.
>...<	Commands for the voice control system.
>>...<<	Replies by the voice control system.

Actions

Actions that need to be carried out are shown as a numbered list. The sequence of steps must be followed.

1. First action.
2. Second action.

Lists

Alternative options and lists of items with no implied sequence are shown as bullet point lists:

- First option.
- Second option.

Symbol on components and assemblies

 This symbol on a vehicle component indicates that further information on the component is available in the Owner's Handbook.

Vehicle equipment

This Owner's Handbook describes all models and all the standard, national and special equipment available for the model series. As a result, this Owner's Handbook may also contain descriptions and illustrations of equipment and functions not featured in a vehicle, for example due to selected special equipment or the country variant.

This also applies to safety-relevant functions and systems.

Please comply with the relevant laws and regulations when using the corresponding functions and systems.

If certain equipment and models are not described in this Owner's Handbook, refer to the Supplementary Owner's Handbooks provided.

In right-hand drive vehicles, some controls are arranged differently from those shown in the illustrations.

Production date

The production date of your vehicle can be found at the bottom of the door pillar on the driver's door.

The production date is defined as the calendar month and the calendar year in which the vehicle body and the powertrain assemblies are joined and the vehicle is driven or moved from the production line.

Status of the Owner's Handbook

General

The high level of safety and quality of the vehicles is ensured by continuous development. For this reason, it is possible in exceptional cases

that the features described in this handbook may differ from those in your vehicle.

For Australia/New Zealand: general

When reading this Owner's Handbook, please bear the following in mind: to ensure that our vehicles continue to embody the highest quality and safety standards, we pursue a policy of continuous, ongoing development. Because modifications in the design of both vehicles and accessories may be introduced at any time, your own vehicle's equipment may vary from that described in this handbook. For the same reason, it is also impossible to guarantee that all descriptions will be completely accurate in all respects.

We must therefore request your understanding of the fact that the manufacturer of your vehicle is unable to recognise legal claims based on discrepancies between the data, illustrations and descriptions in this Owner's Handbook and your own vehicle's equipment. Please note, too, that some of the optional equipment described in this manual is not available on Australian models due to restrictions imposed by Australian Design Rules and other requirements.

Should you require any further information, please contact your Service centre, who will be pleased to advise you.

Validity of Owner's Handbook

Vehicle production

At the time of production in the factory, the printed Owner's Handbook provides up-to-date information. Updates following the copy deadline can result in differences between the printed Owner's Handbook and the integrated Owner's Handbook in the vehicle.

You will find notes on any updates in the appendix of the printed Owner's Handbook for the vehicle.

After a software update in the vehicle

After a vehicle software update – for example, a Remote Software Upgrade – the integrated Owner's Handbook for the vehicle will contain updated information.

Your own safety

Intended use

Please comply with the following when using the vehicle:

- ▷ Owner's Handbook.
- ▷ Information on the vehicle. Do not remove stickers.
- ▷ Technical data of the vehicle.
- ▷ The applicable laws and safety standards of the country in which the vehicle is used.
- ▷ Vehicle papers and legal documents.

Warranty

The vehicle is technically designed for the operating conditions and approval (homologation) requirements of the country to which it was first delivered. If the vehicle is to be driven in another country, it may have to be adapted beforehand to any prevailing different operating conditions and approval requirements. If the vehicle does not comply with the homologation requirements in a certain country, warranty claims cannot be lodged for the vehicle there. Warranty claims can also be invalidated if the on-board network has been modified, e.g. through the use of control units, hardware or software that have been classified as unsuitable by the vehicle manufacturer. A Service Partner is able to provide further information.

Maintenance and repairs

The advanced technology used in your vehicle, for example the state-of-the-art materials and

high-performance electronics, requires appropriate maintenance and repair methods.

Consequently, the manufacturer of the vehicle recommends having corresponding work carried out by a BMW Service Partner. If another BMW authorised workshop is chosen, BMW recommends choosing one that performs work, for example maintenance and repair, according to BMW specifications with properly trained personnel. In the Owner's Handbook, facilities of this kind are referred to as "another qualified Service Partner or a specialist workshop".

If such work, for example maintenance and repair, is performed inexpertly, it could result in consequential damage and thus constitute a safety risk.

Work performed incorrectly on the vehicle paintwork can cause components, for example the radar sensors, to fail or malfunction, resulting in a safety risk.

Parts and accessories

BMW recommends using parts and accessories that are approved by BMW and are therefore suitable for this purpose.

You are recommended to consult a BMW Service Partner for advice on genuine BMW parts and accessories, other BMW approved products and expert advice on all related matters.

The safety and compatibility of these products in conjunction with BMW vehicles have been checked by BMW.

BMW accepts product responsibility for genuine BMW parts and accessories. On the other hand, BMW cannot accept liability for parts or accessory products of any kind which it has not approved.

BMW is unable to assess each individual product of outside origin as to its suitability for use on BMW vehicles without safety risk. Likewise no guarantee can be assumed even if the product has been granted official approval in a specific country. Tests performed for such approvals cannot always cover all operating conditions for

BMW vehicles, and some of them therefore are insufficient.

Data memory

General

A number of electronic control devices are installed in your vehicle. Electronic control devices process data that they receive from vehicle sensors, generate themselves or exchange with one another, for example. Some control devices are necessary for the vehicle to function safely or provide assistance during driving, for example Driver Assistance Systems. There are also control devices which manage comfort or infotainment functions.

Information on the data saved or exchanged can be obtained from the vehicle manufacturer, for example in a separate brochure.

Personal identification

Every vehicle has a unique vehicle identification number. Depending on the country, a vehicle owner can be identified by the vehicle identification number, the number plate and the relevant authorities. There are also other ways of tracing data collected in the vehicle back to the driver or vehicle owner, for example via the ConnectedDrive account used.

Data protection laws

As per prevailing data protection law, vehicle users have certain rights they may assert against the vehicle manufacturer or companies that collect or process their personal data.

Vehicle users have an unrestricted right to obtain information free of charge from bodies that save their personal data.

Such bodies could be:

- ▷ Vehicle manufacturer.
- ▷ Qualified Service Partners.
- ▷ Specialist workshops.

► Service providers.

Vehicle users may request information about what personal data has been saved, what it is used for and where it has come from. Proof of ownership or use is required in order to obtain this information.

The right to information also extends to information about data that has been transferred to other companies or bodies.

Please refer to the vehicle manufacturer's website for the applicable data privacy policy. This data privacy policy contains information about the right to have data deleted or corrected. The vehicle manufacturer's website also provides its contact details and those of its data protection officer.

The vehicle owner can have the data that is stored in the vehicle read out by a Service Partner of the manufacturer or another qualified Service Partner or a specialist workshop, on payment of a fee where applicable.

The legally required on-board diagnosis OBD socket in the vehicle is used to read out the vehicle data.

Legal requirements regarding data disclosure

According to current law, the vehicle manufacturer is obliged to provide the authorities with any data it has stored. Data is provided to the extent required and on a case-by-case basis, for example to investigate a criminal offence.

The current law also gives state bodies authorisation to read out data from the vehicle themselves for individual cases. This could include reading out data from the airbag control device to shed light on the circumstances of an accident, for example.

Operating data in the vehicle

Control devices process data to operate the vehicle.

This data includes, for example:

- Status messages relating to the vehicle and its individual components, for example wheel rotation speed, wheel speed, deceleration, lateral acceleration, fastened seat belt indicator.
- Ambient conditions, for example temperature, rain sensor signals.

The data is only processed within the vehicle itself and is usually transient. The data is not saved after the vehicle is switched off.

Electronic parts, for example control devices and vehicle keys, contain components for storing technical information. Information about the vehicle's condition, component use and wear, maintenance requirements, events or errors can be stored temporarily or permanently.

This information generally documents the condition of a component, a module, a system or its environment, including:

- Operating states of system components, for example fill levels, tyre inflation pressure, battery status.
- Malfunctions and faults of important system components, for example lights and brakes.
- Responses of the vehicle to particular driving situations, for example triggering of an airbag, activation of the drive stability control systems.
- Information on vehicle-damaging events.

The data is required so that the control units can perform their functions. It is also used for detecting and rectifying malfunctions, and helps the vehicle manufacturer to optimise vehicle functions.

Most of this data is transient and is only processed within the vehicle itself. Only a small proportion of the data is stored in event or error memories in response to specific circumstances.

When service work is being carried out, for example repairs, service operations, warranty work and quality assurance measures, this technical information can be read out from the vehicle together with the vehicle identification number.

A Service Partner of the manufacturer or another qualified Service Partner or a specialist workshop can read out the information. The data is read out via the on-board diagnostics (OBD) socket, which the vehicle is required to have by law.

The data is collected, processed and used by the relevant organisations in the service network.

The data logs the technical conditions of the vehicle and helps in locating errors, complying with warranty obligations and improving quality.

Furthermore, the manufacturer has product monitoring obligations to meet in line with product liability law. To fulfil these obligations, the vehicle manufacturer requires technical data from the vehicle. Data from the vehicle can also be used to check customer warranty claims.

Error and event memories in the vehicle can be reset when a Service Partner of the manufacturer or another qualified Service Partner or a specialist workshop performs repair or servicing work.

Data entry and data transfer into the vehicle

General

Depending on the vehicle equipment, the following comfort and individual settings can be saved in the vehicle and modified or reset at any time.

These include, for example:

- ▶ Settings for the seat and steering wheel positions.
- ▶ Suspension and climate control settings.

Data can be imported into the vehicle entertainment and communication system if required, for example via a smartphone.

Depending on the vehicle equipment, this data includes:

- ▶ Multimedia data such as music, films or photos for playback in an integrated multimedia system.

- ▶ Address book data for use in conjunction with an integrated hands-free system or an integrated navigation system.
- ▶ Chosen navigation destinations.
- ▶ Data on usage of Internet services.

This data may be saved locally in the vehicle or stored on a device that has been connected to the vehicle, for example a smartphone, USB stick or MP3 player. If this data is saved in the vehicle, it can be deleted at any time.

This data is only transmitted to third parties if expressly requested in the course of using online services. The transfer depends on the settings selected for using the services.

Integration of mobile devices

Depending on the equipment, mobile devices connected to the vehicle, for example smartphones, can be controlled via the vehicle controls.

Sound and images from the mobile device can be played back and displayed through the multimedia system. Certain information is transferred to the mobile device at the same time. Depending on the type of integration, this includes position data and other general vehicle information, for example. This optimises the way in which selected apps, for example navigation or music playback, work.

There is no further interaction between the mobile device and the vehicle, for example active access to vehicle data.

How the data is processed further is determined by the provider of the particular app being used. The range of possible settings depends on the respective app and the operating system of the mobile device.

Services

General

If the vehicle has a wireless network connection, this enables data to be exchanged between the vehicle and other systems. The wireless network

connection is established via an in-vehicle transmitter and receiver unit or via personal mobile devices brought into the vehicle, for example smartphones. This wireless network connection enables 'online functions' to be used. These include online services and apps supplied by the vehicle manufacturer or by other providers.

Services from the vehicle manufacturer

Where online services from the vehicle manufacturer are concerned, the relevant functions are described in the appropriate place, for example the Owner's Handbook or manufacturer's website. The relevant legal information pertaining to data protection is also provided. Personal data may be used to perform online services. Data is exchanged over a secure connection, for example with the IT systems of the vehicle manufacturer intended for this purpose.

Any collection, processing and use of personal data above and beyond that needed to provide the services must always be based on legal permission, a contractual arrangement or consent. It is also possible to activate or deactivate the data connection as a whole. Excluded from this are functions and services which are required by law, for example emergency call systems.

Services from other providers

When using online services from other providers, these services are the responsibility of the relevant provider and subject to their data privacy conditions and terms of use. The vehicle manufacturer has no control over the content exchanged when using these services. Information as to how personal data is collected and used in relation to services from third parties, the scope of such data and its purpose, can be obtained from the relevant service provider.

Vehicle identification number

Engine compartment



The vehicle identification number is in the engine compartment, on the right-hand side of the vehicle.

Type plate

With 3-door cars:



The vehicle identification number can be found on the type plate on the right-hand or left-hand side of the vehicle.

With 5-door cars:



The vehicle identification number can be found on the type plate on the right-hand or left-hand side of the vehicle.

Windscreen



The vehicle identification number is additionally located behind the windscreen.

iDrive

It is also possible to display the vehicle identification number via iDrive, see page [71](#).

Owner's Handbook media

Vehicle equipment

This chapter describes all standard, country-specific and special equipment available for the model series. It may therefore describe equipment and functions which are not installed in your vehicle, for example on account of the optional equipment selected or the country variant. This also applies to safety-relevant functions and systems. Please comply with the relevant laws and regulations when using the corresponding functions and systems.

General

Media overview

Various media can be used to call up content from the Owner's Handbook. The following Owner's Handbook media formats are available:

- ▷ Printed Owner's Handbook.
- ▷ Integrated Owner's Handbook in the vehicle.

Validity of Owner's Handbook

Vehicle production

At the time of production in the factory, the printed Owner's Handbook provides up-to-date information. Updates following the copy deadline can result in differences between the printed Owner's Handbook and the integrated Owner's Handbook in the vehicle.

You will find notes on any updates in the appendix of the printed Owner's Handbook for the vehicle.

After a software update in the vehicle

After a vehicle software update – for example, a Remote Software Upgrade – the integrated

Owner's Handbook for the vehicle will contain updated information.

Printed Owner's Handbook

Principle

The printed Owner's Handbook describes all standard, country-specific and special equipment available for the model series.

General

The Owner's Handbook for navigation, entertainment and communication is available as a printed book from Service.

Supplementary Owner's Handbooks

Please also follow the supplementary Owner's Handbooks which are attached in addition to the on-board literature as necessary.

Integrated Owner's Handbook in the vehicle

Principle

The Integrated Owner's Handbook describes the specific equipment and functions present in the vehicle.

The Integrated Owner's Handbook can be shown in the Control Display.

Selecting the Owner's Handbook

1.  Press the button.
2. "CAR"

3. "Owner's Handbook"
4. Select the required method of accessing the contents.

Scrolling within the Owner's Handbook

Turn the Controller until the next or previous contents are displayed.

Context-sensitive help

General

The section of the Owner's Handbook relating to the function that is currently selected can be displayed directly.

Calling up when using iDrive

Switch to the Options menu directly from the function on the Control Display:

1.  Press the button.
2. "Help"

Calling up when a Check Control message is displayed

Directly from the Check Control message on the Control Display:

1.  "Owner's Handbook"

Favourites buttons

General

Shortcuts to the Owner's Handbook can be saved to Favourites buttons and called up directly.

Saving

1. Select the required jump using iDrive:
 - ▷ "Keyword search"
 - ▷ "Picture search"
 - ▷ "User help"

- ▷ "Quick reference"
- ▷ "Chapters"
- ▷ "Quicklist"

2.  Press and hold the required Favourites button for more than 2 seconds.

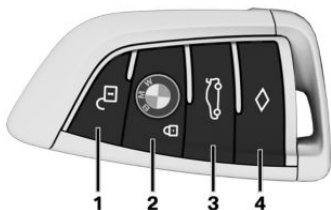
Calling up

1.  Press the appropriate button.
Owner's Handbook is displayed directly with the selected shortcut.

Getting in

Opening and closing

Buttons on the vehicle key



- 1 Unlocking
- 2 Locking
- 3 Without automatic operation of the tailgate:
opening the boot lid
With automatic tailgate operation: to open/
close the boot lid
- 4 Headlight courtesy delay feature

Unlocking the vehicle

 Press the button on the vehicle key.

Depending on the settings, only the driver's door or all vehicle access points are unlocked.

If only the driver's door is unlocked, press the button on the vehicle key again to unlock the other vehicle access points.

 Keep the button on the vehicle key pressed after unlocking.

The windows and the Glass Roof are opened for as long as the button on the vehicle key is pressed.

Locking the vehicle

1. Close the driver's door.

2. Press the  button on the vehicle key.
All vehicle entrances are locked.

 Keep the button on the vehicle key pressed after locking.

The windows and the Glass Roof are closed for as long as the button on the vehicle key is pressed.

Central locking buttons

Overview



Central locking buttons.

Locking

 Press the button with the front doors closed.

The fuel filler flap remains unlocked.

Unlocking

 Press the button.

Comfort Access

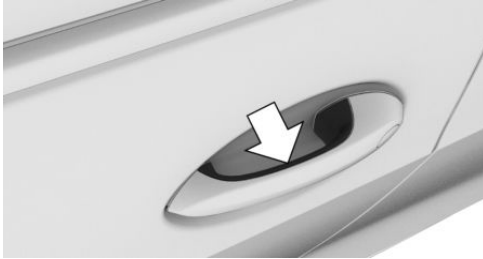
Principle

This feature allows you to access the vehicle without having to operate the vehicle key.

Simply having the vehicle key with you, for example in your trouser pocket, is sufficient.

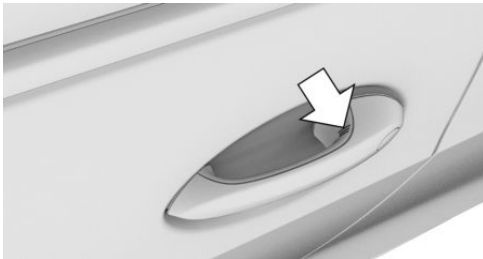
The vehicle automatically recognises the vehicle key when it is in the immediate vicinity or inside the vehicle.

Unlocking the vehicle



Fully grip the handle of a vehicle door.

Locking the vehicle



With your finger, touch the grooved area on the handle of a closed vehicle door for approximately 1 second, without gripping the door handle.

Contactless opening and closing of the boot lid

Principle

The boot lid can be opened and closed contactlessly, provided you are carrying the vehicle key with you.

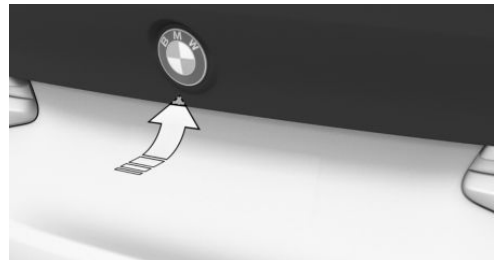
Correct foot movement

1. Stand in the centre behind the vehicle, approximately an arm's length away from the rear of the vehicle.
2. Kick your foot underneath the vehicle and immediately pull it back. Your leg must move across the ranges of both sensors.



Boot lid

Opening



- ▷ Unlock the vehicle, then press the button on the outside of the boot lid.
- ▷  Press and hold the button on the vehicle key for approximately 1 second.

If applicable, the doors are also unlocked.

Without automatic operation of the tailgate: closing

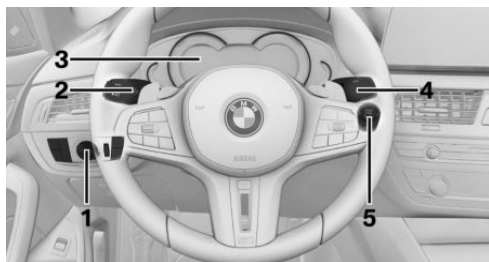
Close the boot lid manually.

With automatic tailgate operation: closing

- ▶  Press and hold the button on the vehicle key until the boot lid has closed.
- ▶  Press the button on the inside of the boot lid.

Displays and controls

Around the steering wheel



- 1 Light switch element
- 2 Turn indicator, high-beam headlights
- 3 Instrument cluster
- 4 Wipers
- 5 Start/stop button

Indicator and warning lamps

Instrument cluster

Indicator and warning lamps can illuminate in a variety of combinations and colours.

When the engine starts or the standby state is switched on, the functionality of some lights is briefly checked.

Driver's door



- 1 Exterior mirror
- 2 Power window switches
- 3 Safety switch
- 4 Seats, comfort functions
- 5 Central locking system
- 6 Opening of the boot lid

Switch cluster



- 1 Selector lever
- 2 Controller
- 3 Parking brake, Automatic Hold
- 4 ▶ Sound control
 - ▶ Park assistance systems
- 5 M Setup

iDrive

Principle

iDrive brings together the functions of a number of switches. These functions can be operated using the Controller.

Buttons on the Controller

Button	Function
	To call up the main menu.
	To call up the Communication menu.
	To call up the Media/Radio menu.
	To call up the destination entry menu of the navigation system.
	To call up the navigation map.
	To call up the previous screen.
	To call up the Options menu.

Voice control

Activating the voice control system

1.  Press the button on the steering wheel.
2. Wait for the acoustic signal.
3. Say the command.

 This symbol indicates that the voice control system is active.

If no further spoken commands are possible, switch to iDrive to operate the function.

Switching off the voice control system

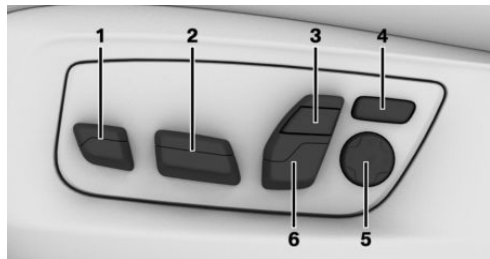
 Press the button on the steering wheel or say ›Cancel‹.

 This symbol indicates that the voice control system is deactivated.

Adjustment and operation

Seats, mirrors and steering wheel

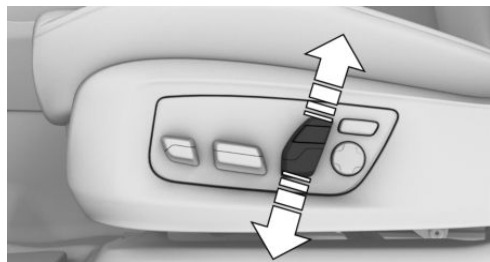
Electrically adjustable seats



- 1 Thigh support
- 2 Forward/back, height, seat angle
- 3 Shoulder support
- 4 Backrest width
- 5 Lumbar support
- 6 Backrest tilt, head restraint

To adjust the head restraint

Adjusting the height: electric head restraints



Press the switch up or down.

Adjusting the distance: manual head restraints

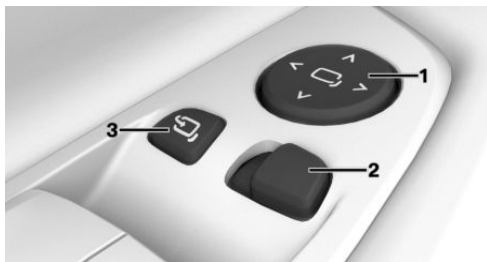


- ▷ Back: press the button and slide the head restraint towards the rear.
- ▷ Forward: pull the head restraint forwards.

Adjusting the distance: electric head restraints

The head restraint is moved automatically on adjusting the shoulder support.

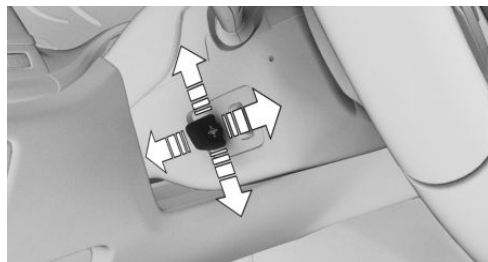
To adjust the exterior mirrors



- 1 To adjust
- 2 To select a mirror, automatic parking function
- 3 Folding in and out

To adjust the steering wheel

Electrical steering wheel adjustment



Press the switch to adjust the steering wheel to the correct fore/aft position and height for your seating position.

Memory function

Principle

The memory function enables the following settings to be stored and retrieved when required:

- Seat position.
- Exterior mirror position.
- Steering wheel position.
- Height of the Head-Up Display.

Saving

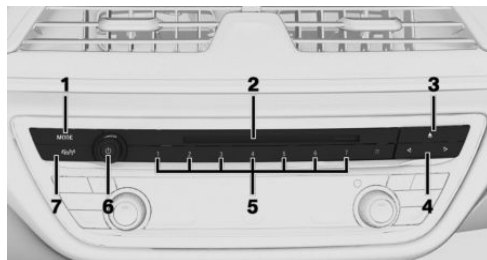
1. Set the desired position.
2. **SET** Press the button on the door. The lettering in the button is illuminated.
3. Press the desired button 1 or 2 at the door while the lettering is illuminated. A signal sounds.

Recalling

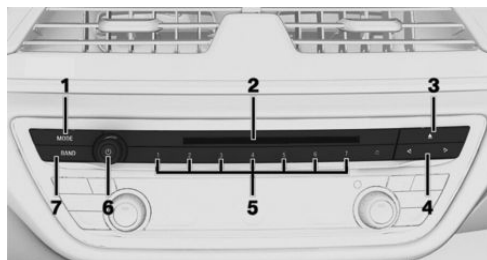
Press the desired button 1 or 2.

Infotainment

Depending on the national-market version: radio



- 1 Changing the entertainment source
- 2 CD/DVD player
- 3 Eject CD/DVD
- 4 Changing station/track
- 5 Favourites buttons
- 6 Sound output on/off, volume
- 7 Traffic information



- 1 Changing the entertainment source
- 2 CD/DVD player
- 3 Eject CD/DVD
- 4 Changing station/track
- 5 Favourites buttons
- 6 Sound output on/off, volume
- 7 Change waveband

Navigation destination entry

Entering the destination using the quick-search function

1.  Press the button on the Controller.
2.  "Search"
3. Enter at least two letters or characters.
If applicable, the search term will be automatically completed in grey text.
Press the Controller or tilt it upwards to accept the suggested search term.
4. **OK** Select symbol as appropriate.
The results are shown as a list.
5. "Search location": select search location if applicable.
6. Tilt the Controller to the right.
7. Select the desired destination.

Connecting mobile telephone

General

Once the mobile telephone has been connected in the vehicle, it can be operated using iDrive and the buttons on the steering wheel.

Connecting the mobile telephone via Bluetooth

Via iDrive:

1. "COM"
2. If applicable, set the following setting:
"Telephone"
3. "Connect new telephone"
4. To perform other operations on the mobile telephone; see the user manual of the mobile telephone: for example finding/connecting Bluetooth device or new device.

The Bluetooth name of the vehicle is shown on the display of the mobile telephone. Select the Bluetooth name of the vehicle.

5. Depending on the mobile device, either a control number is displayed, or you will have to enter the control number yourself.
 - ▶ Compare the control number shown on the Control Display with the control number in the device display.
Confirm the control number in the device and on the Control Display.
 - ▶ Enter the same control number on the device and via iDrive then confirm.

The device is connected and displayed in the device list.

Telephony

Accepting a call

Depending on the vehicle equipment, incoming calls can be accepted in different ways.

- ▶ Via iDrive:
 -  "Accept"
- ▶  Press the button on the steering wheel.
- ▶ Via the selection list in the instrument cluster:
Select using the knurled wheel on the steering wheel: "Accept"
- ▶ Via the touchscreen: tap the corresponding entry on the Control Display.
- ▶ By gestures: point towards the Control Display using your index finger.

Dialling a number

Via iDrive:

1. "COM"
2. If applicable, "Telephone"
3. "Dial number"

4. Enter the numbers.
5.  Select the symbol. The call is made using the mobile telephone assigned to the telephone function.

To make a call via the additional telephone:

1.  Press the button.
2. "Call via"

Apple CarPlay preparation

Principle

CarPlay makes it possible to operate certain functions of a compatible Apple iPhone by Siri voice operation and using iDrive.

Operating requirements

- Compatible iPhone.
iPhone 5 or later with iOS 7.1 or later.
- Corresponding mobile radio contract.
- Bluetooth, WLAN and Siri voice operation are activated on the iPhone.

Switching on Bluetooth and CarPlay

Via iDrive:

1. "COM"
2. "Mobile devices"
3. Tilt the Controller to the right.
4. "Settings"
5. Set the following setting:
"Apple CarPlay"
6. Activate the function.

Registering iPhone with CarPlay

Register iPhone via Bluetooth on the vehicle.

Select CarPlay as the function:

- ▶ "Apple CarPlay"

The iPhone is connected to the vehicle and displayed in the device list.

On the move

Driving

Drive-ready state

Switching on drive-ready state



1. Depress the brake pedal.
2. Press the start/stop button.

Switching off drive-ready state

M Steptronic sport transmission:

1. With the vehicle at a standstill, engage selector lever position P.
2. Press the start/stop button.
The engine is switched off.
3. Apply the parking brake.

Auto Start Stop function

The Auto Start Stop function switches the engine off automatically at a standstill to save fuel. For driving off, the engine automatically starts under the following conditions:

M Steptronic sport transmission:

- ▷ By releasing the brake pedal.
- ▷ With Automatic Hold activated: press the accelerator pedal.

Parking brake

Engaging



Pull the switch.

The LED on the switch and the indicator lamp in the instrument cluster are illuminated.

Releasing



With drive-ready state switched on:

Press the switch with the brake pedal depressed or selector lever position P engaged.

LED and indicator lamp turn off.

The parking brake is released.

Parking

The parking brake is automatically applied when the vehicle is held by Automatic Hold and the drive-ready state is switched off or the vehicle is exited.

M Steptronic sport transmission

Engaging selector lever positions D, N, R



- ▷ R reverse.
- ▷ N neutral.
- ▷  Centre position, forward setting.
- ▷ - downshift, manual.
- ▷ + upshift, manual.
- ▷ D/S drive mode or sequential mode.

With the driver's seat belt fastened, pull or push the selector lever in the desired direction, possibly overcoming a resistance point. Selector lever returns to centre position in each case.

Apply the brakes until ready to drive off, otherwise the vehicle will move when a drive position or reverse gear is selected.

The selector lever engages into position R.

Only engage selector lever position R when the vehicle is stationary.

Drive mode D/S



Push the selector lever out of the centre position in the D/S direction.

Drive mode is activated; all forward gears are changed automatically.

The gear engaged appears on the instrument cluster together with a D, for example 1 D.

Sequential mode D/S



Push the selector lever out of the centre position in the D/S direction, arrow 1, or shift gears via the selector lever, arrows at 2.

Sequential mode is activated; it is possible to shift gears manually without taking your foot off the accelerator.

- To shift up: pull the selector lever backwards.

- To shift down: press the selector lever forwards.

The gear engaged appears on the instrument cluster, for example 1.

Engaging P

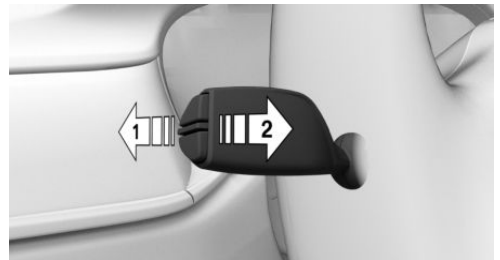
Only engage selector lever position P when the vehicle is stationary.



Press button P.

High-beam headlights, flasher, indicator

High-beam headlights, headlight flasher



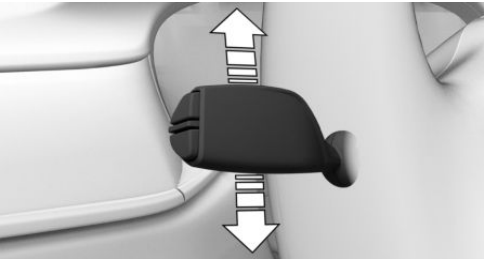
Push the lever forwards or pull it back.

- High-beam headlights on, arrow 1.

The high-beam headlights are illuminated when the low-beam headlights are switched on.

- High-beam headlights off/headlight flasher, arrow 2.

Turn indicator



- ▶ On: press the lever beyond the resistance point.
- ▶ Off: press the lever in the opposite direction beyond the resistance point.
- ▶ Triple turn signal: lightly tip the lever up or down.
- ▶ To indicate a turn briefly: press the lever as far as the resistance point and hold it there for as long as you wish to indicate a turn.

Light and lighting

Light functions

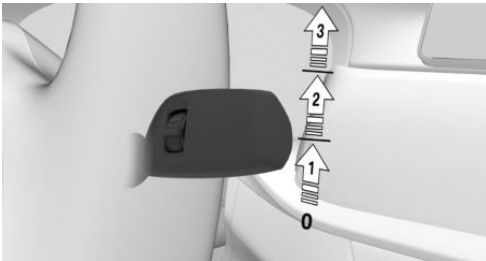
Symbol	Function
	Rear fog light.
	Night Vision.
	Lights off. Automatic driving lights control. Daytime driving lights.
	Side lights.
	Automatic driving lights control. Adaptive light functions.

Symbol	Function
	Low-beam headlights.
	Instrument lighting.
	Parking light, right.
	Parking light, left.

Wiper system

Switching the wipers on/off and flick-wiping

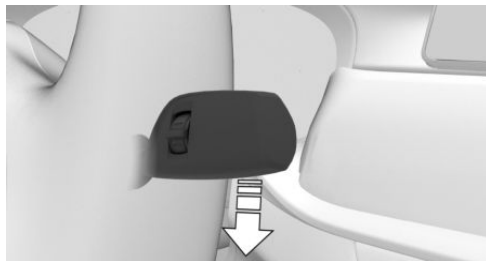
Switching on



Press the lever upwards to the desired position.

- ▶ Rest position of the wipers: position 0.
- ▶ Rain sensor: position 1.
- ▶ Normal wiper speed: position 2.
- ▶ Fast wiper speed: position 3.

Switching off and flick-wiping

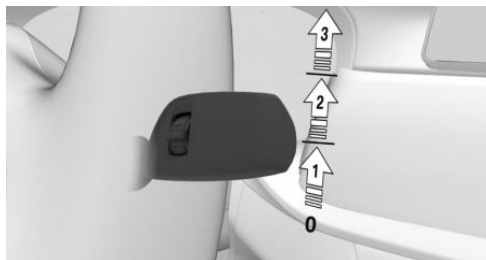


Press the lever down.

- To switch off: press the lever downwards to the home position.
- To flick-wipe: press the lever downwards from the home position.

Rain sensor

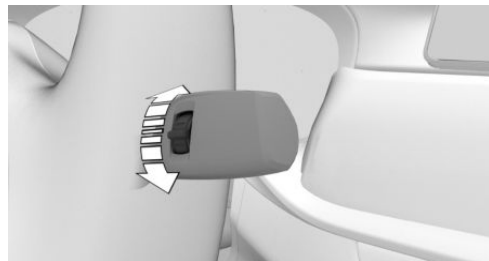
Activating/deactivating



To activate: press the lever up once from its home position, arrow 1.

To deactivate: press the lever back to the home position.

To adjust the sensitivity



Turn the knurled wheel on the wiper lever.

To clean the windscreen



Pull the wiper lever.

Air conditioning

Automatic air conditioning

Button	Function
	Temperature.
	Air-conditioning mode.
	Maximum cooling.
	AUTO programme.

Button	Function
	Recirculated-air mode.
	Air flow, manual.
	Air distribution, manual.
	SYNC Programme.
	Window defrost/demist
	Rear window heating.
	Active seat ventilation.
	Seat heating.
	To call up the air conditioning menu. For the following settings, for example: upper body temperature adjustment, independent ventilation.

Refuelling stop

Refuelling

Fuel tank cap

1. To open the fuel filler flap, push on the upper edge, arrow. The fuel filler flap opens.



2. Turn the fuel tank cap anticlockwise.
3. Place the fuel tank cap in the holder on the fuel filler flap.

Petrol

For optimal fuel consumption, the petrol should be sulphur-free or have a low sulphur content. Fuels labelled on the pump as containing metal must not be used.

Wheels and tyres

Tyre inflation pressure information



The tyre inflation pressure inscriptions can be found on the tyre pressure plate on the door pillar.

After adjusting the tyre inflation pressure

For runflat indicator RPA:

Reinitialise the runflat indicator RPA.

For Tyre Pressure Monitor TPM:

The corrected tyre inflation pressures are applied automatically. Make sure that the correct tyre settings have been performed.

For tyres that cannot be found in the tyre inflation pressure information on the Control Display, reset the Tyre Pressure Monitor TPM.

Checking the tyre inflation pressure

Check regularly and adjust as necessary:

- At least twice a month.
- Before a long journey.

Electronic oil measurement

Operating requirements

A current measurement is available after approximately 30 minutes of normal driving with the internal combustion engine running.

Displaying the engine oil level

Via iDrive:

1. "CAR"
2. "Vehicle status"
3.  "Engine oil level"

Different messages are shown on the Control Display, depending on the engine oil level. Follow these messages.

Adding engine oil

General

Safely stop the vehicle and switch off drive-ready state before topping up with engine oil.

Topping up



Do not top up engine oil unless a message is displayed in the instrument cluster.

Note the top-up quantity in the message.

Do not add too much engine oil.

Note recommended engine oil types.

Breakdown Assist

Hazard warning lights



The button is located in the centre console.

Help in case of a breakdown

BMW Emergency Service

Via iDrive:

1. "APPS"
2. "Installed apps"
3. "BMW Assistance"
4. If applicable, "BMW Roadside Assistance"
A voice connection is established.

ConnectedDrive

Concierge Service

The Concierge Service provides information about hotels, restaurants etc. and can send an SMS with the required information to the vehicle. Addresses can also be sent directly to the navigation system.

Via iDrive:

1. "COM"
2. "BMW Assistance"
3. Select the entry for the Concierge Service if applicable.

A voice connection to the Concierge Service is established.

Teleservice

Teleservices are services that help to keep the vehicle mobile.

Teleservices may include the following services:

- ▷ BMW breakdown assistance.
- ▷ BMW Accident Assistance.
- ▷ Teleservice Call.
- ▷ Teleservice Report.
- ▷ Teleservice Battery Guard.
- ▷ Your Service Partner.
- ▷ Online logbook.

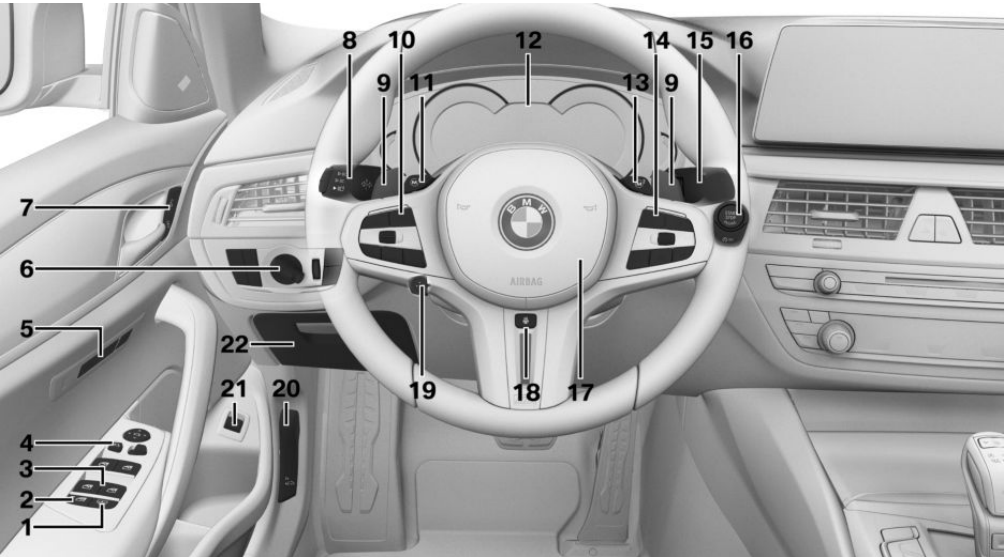
Driving area

Vehicle equipment

This chapter describes all standard, country-specific and special equipment available for the model series. It may therefore describe equipment and functions which are not installed in

your vehicle, for example on account of the optional equipment selected or the country variant. This also applies to safety-relevant functions and systems. Please comply with the relevant laws and regulations when using the corresponding functions and systems.

Around the steering wheel



- 1

Roller sunblind in the rear window [99](#)
- 2

Safety switch [99](#)
- 3

Power window switches [97](#)
- 4

Exterior mirror operation [111](#)
- 5

Seat comfort functions

- Memory function [113](#)
- Massage function [114](#)
- 6

Lights
- Rear fog light [171](#)
- Night Vision [190](#)



Light switch 167



Lights off
Automatic driving lights control 167



Daytime driving lights 169



Side lights 168



Automatic driving lights control 167



Adaptive light functions 169



High-beam assistance 170



Low-beam headlights 168



Instrument lighting 172



Right parking light 168



Left parking light 168

7 Central locking system



To unlock 88



Locking 88

8 Steering-column lever, left



Turn indicator 136



High-beam headlights, headlight flasher 136



High-beam assistance 170



Widgets in the instrument cluster 149

Journey data 161

9 Shift paddles 143

10 Buttons on steering wheel, left



Manual Speed Limiter 220



Cruise Control on/off 221



Active Cruise Control on/off 224



Steering and lane control assistant on/off 233



To interrupt or resume Cruise Control



Active Cruise Control: to increase the distance



Active Cruise Control: to reduce the distance



With steering and lane control assistant: adjusting the distance

Rocker switch for Cruise Control

11 Activating Setup M1 212



12 Instrument cluster 148

13 Activating Setup M2 212



14 Buttons on steering wheel, right



Selection lists 160



Volume, see Owner's Handbook for Navigation, Entertainment, Communication 6



Voice control system 48



Changing the station/track, see the Owner's Handbook for Navigation, Entertainment, Communication 6

- 

Telephone, see Owner's Handbook for Navigation, Entertainment, Communication [6](#)
- 

Knurled wheel for selection lists [160](#)
- 

Wipers [136](#)
- 

Rain sensor [137](#)
- 

Cleaning windscreen and head-lights [138](#)
- 

To switch drive-ready state on/off [130](#)
- 

Auto Start Stop function [130](#)
- 

Horn, entire area
- 

Steering wheel heating [113](#)
- 

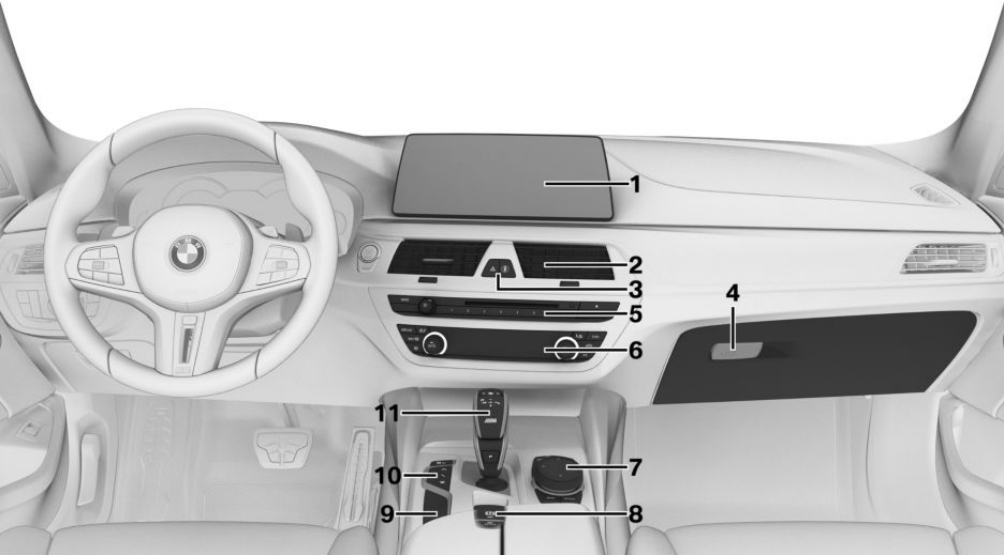
To adjust the steering wheel [113](#)
- 

To release the bonnet [338](#)
- 

Opening and closing the boot lid [92](#)
- 

Glove box [287](#)
- 15** Steering-column lever, right

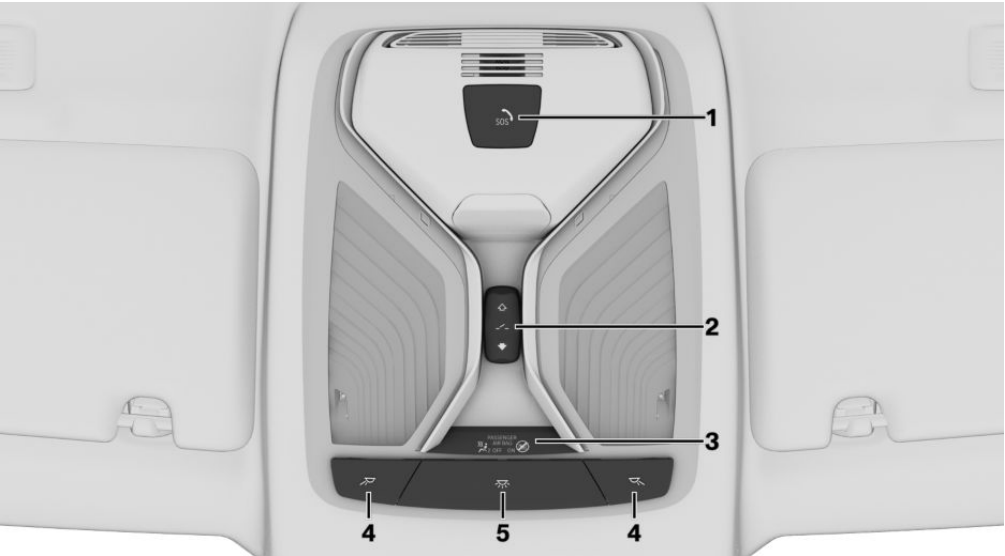
Around the centre console



- 1** Control Display [43](#)
- 2** Ventilation [267](#)

- 3**  Hazard warning lights [359](#)
-  Intelligent Safety [179](#)
- 4** Glove box [286](#)
- 5** Radio/multimedia, see Owner's Handbook for Navigation, Entertainment, Communication [6](#)
- 6** Automatic air conditioning [262](#)
- 7** Controller with buttons [43](#)
- 8**  Parking brake [133](#)
-  Automatic Hold [134](#)
- 9**  Surround View: Panorama View [244](#)
-  Park Distance Control, PDC [237](#)
- Without Surround View: rear-view camera [241](#)
- Surround View [244](#)
- Crossing traffic warning [256](#)
- Park Assistant [251](#)
-  Sound control [147](#)
- 10**  Servotronic [218](#)
-  Adaptive M suspension [260](#)
-  M Engine dynamics control [146](#)
-  Dynamic Stability Control, DSC [214](#)
-  M Setup menu [212](#)
- 11** Gearbox: selector lever [139](#)

Around the roof lining



- 1



Emergency call, SOS [361](#)
- 2



Operating the electric glass roof [100](#)
- 3



Front passenger airbag indicator lamp [178](#)
- 4



Reading lights [173](#)
- 5



Interior light [172](#)

Vehicle operating state

Vehicle equipment

This chapter describes all standard, country-specific and special equipment available for the model series. It may therefore describe equipment and functions which are not installed in your vehicle, for example on account of the optional equipment selected or the country variant. This also applies to safety-relevant functions and systems. Please comply with the relevant laws and regulations when using the corresponding functions and systems.

General

Depending on the situation, the vehicle is in one of the three states:

- ▷ Rest state.
- ▷ Standby state.
- ▷ Drive-ready state.

Rest state

Principle

If the vehicle is in rest state, it is switched off. All electrical consumers are deactivated.

General

The vehicle is in rest state before you open it from outside and once you have left the vehicle and locked it.

Safety notes

WARNING

An unsecured vehicle can start moving and rolling away. There is a risk of accident. Before leaving the vehicle, secure it to prevent it from rolling away.

Observe the following to ensure that the vehicle is secured against rolling away:

- ▷ Apply the parking brake.
- ▷ Turn the front wheels towards the kerb on upward or downward gradients.
- ▷ Additionally secure the vehicle on upward or downward gradients, for example with a chock.

WARNING

Unsupervised children or pets in the vehicle can set the vehicle in motion and endanger themselves or other road users, for example by the following actions:

- ▷ Pressing the start/stop button.
- ▷ Releasing the parking brake.
- ▷ Opening and closing doors or windows.
- ▷ Engaging selector lever position N.
- ▷ Operating vehicle equipment.

There is a risk of accidents or injury. Do not leave children or pets unsupervised in the vehicle. When leaving the vehicle, take the vehicle key with you and lock the vehicle.

Automatic rest state

The vehicle switches automatically to rest state under the following conditions:

- ▷ After a few minutes, if no operation is performed on the vehicle.

- ▷ When the battery state of charge is low.
- ▷ When leaving the vehicle, if one of the front doors is opened, depending on the iDrive setting.

Rest state is not established automatically during a telephone call.

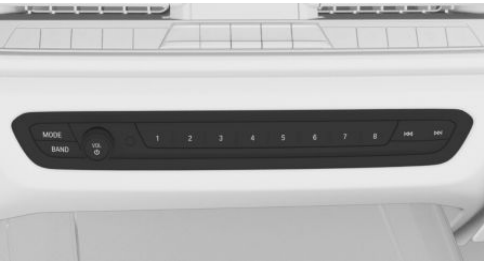
Establishing rest state on opening the front doors

Via iDrive:

1. "CAR"
2. "Settings"
3. "Doors/Vehicle access"
4. "Switch off after door opening"

Manual rest state

To establish rest state in the vehicle at the end of a journey:



Press and hold the button, until the OFF display on the instrument cluster turns off.

Standby state

Principle

When standby state is activated, most functions can be operated while the vehicle is still stationary. Any desired settings can be performed.

General

The vehicle switches to standby state after the front doors are opened from the outside.

Display in the instrument cluster



OFF is shown in the instrument cluster. The drive is switched off and standby state switched on.

Drive-ready state

Principle

Switching on drive-ready state corresponds to starting the engine.

General

Some functions can only be operated when the drive-ready state is switched on.

Safety notes

DANGER

A blocked exhaust pipe or inadequate ventilation can allow harmful exhaust fumes to enter the vehicle. The exhaust fumes contain pollutants which are colourless and odourless. In enclosed spaces, exhaust fumes can also build up outside the vehicle. There is a risk of death. Keep the exhaust pipe clear and ensure sufficient ventilation.

WARNING

An unsecured vehicle can start moving and rolling away. There is a risk of accident. Before leaving the vehicle, secure it to prevent it from rolling away.

Observe the following to ensure that the vehicle is secured against rolling away:

- ▷ Apply the parking brake.
- ▷ Turn the front wheels towards the kerb on upward or downward gradients.
- ▷ Additionally secure the vehicle on upward or downward gradients, for example with a chock.

NOTE

Repeated attempts to start the vehicle or starting it several times in quick succession result in unburned or insufficiently burned fuel. The catalytic converter can overheat. There is a risk of material damage. Avoid repeatedly starting in quick succession.

Display in the instrument cluster

When drive-ready state is switched on, the revolution counter shows the current engine speed.

Switching off drive-ready state

M Steptronic sport transmission

1. With the vehicle at a standstill, engage selector lever position P.
2. Press the start/stop button.
The engine is switched off. The vehicle changes to standby state.
3. Apply the parking brake.

Switching on drive-ready state

Principle



Drive-ready state is switched on using the start/stop button:

M Steptronic sport transmission

1. Depress the brake pedal.
2. Press the start/stop button.

The starting process is activated automatically for a short time and stops as soon as the engine starts.

Most of the indicator and warning lamps in the instrument cluster are illuminated for different lengths of time.

Petrol engine

Depending on the engine version, full drive power may only be available approx. 30 seconds after starting the engine. In this case, the vehicle will not accelerate in the usual way.

iDrive

Vehicle equipment

This chapter describes all standard, country-specific and special equipment available for the model series. It may therefore describe equipment and functions which are not installed in your vehicle, for example on account of the optional equipment selected or the country variant. This also applies to safety-relevant functions and systems. Please comply with the relevant laws and regulations when using the corresponding functions and systems.

Operating concept

Principle

iDrive comprises a wide range of functions. These functions can be operated using the Controller and, depending on the equipment version, the touchscreen, voice control system or Gesture Control.

Safety note

WARNING

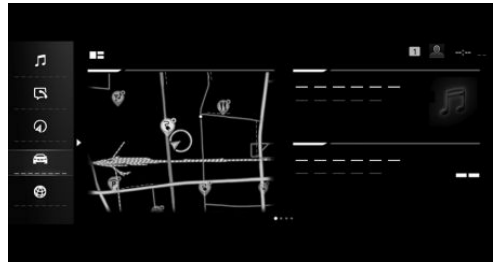
Operating integrated information systems and communication devices during a journey may distract you from the road. You could lose control of the vehicle. There is a risk of accident. Only operate the systems or devices if the traffic conditions allow you to do so. Stop if necessary and operate the systems or devices with the vehicle at a standstill.

Entry and display

Main menu

General

The main menu is divided into two areas. The left area contains menu items that can be used to call up all the iDrive functions. The right area contains widgets that provide quick access to certain functions.



Media/Radio

 All of the entertainment system functions, for example radio and TV stations, connection with external devices and music collection.

Communication

 Telephone and message functions, e-mail and calendar, as well as the connection and management of mobile devices such as smartphones.

Navigation

 Access to navigation system, destination entry and traffic information. Configurable map views as well as other functions such as Points of Interest and avoid areas.

My vehicle

 Information on vehicle status and journeys. Access to the integrated Owner's Handbook as

well as management of driver profiles and setting options for the vehicle and iDrive.

Apps

 Management of apps, access to apps as well as vehicle functions. Additional apps can be obtained from the BMW Store.

Widgets

 Widgets provide quick access to frequently used functions. The defined widgets display dynamic content – for example, the navigation map – and also serve as buttons.

Letters and numbers

Letters and numbers can be selected when the destination is entered, for example.

Letters and numbers can be entered using the Controller and, depending on the vehicle equipment, using the touchscreen or voice control system. The keyboard display changes automatically.

Symbol	Function
	Switch between upper and lower case.
	To enter a space.
	Switch between languages.
	To use the voice control.
	To confirm your entry.
	Move the entry area to the left or right.

Entry comparison

When entering names and addresses, the selection is gradually narrowed down and possibly supplemented with every subsequent letter and character entered.

Inputs are continuously compared with the data saved in the vehicle.

- ▶ Only letters and characters for which data is available are offered for entry.
- ▶ Destination search: place names can be entered in all languages available in iDrive.

Enabling/disabling functions

Some menu items are preceded by a checkbox. The box indicates whether the function is enabled or disabled. Selecting the menu item enables or disables the function.

☒ Function is enabled.

☐ Function is disabled.

Status information

General

The status field is located in the top area of the Control Display. Status information is displayed in the form of symbols.

Symbols for telephone

Symbol	Meaning
	Incoming or outgoing call.
	Missed call.
	Reception level of mobile telephone network.
	Searching for network.
	No mobile telephone network available.
	Critical charge state of the mobile telephone reached.
	Data transfer not possible.
	Roaming active.
	Location active.
	Text message received.
	Message received.

Symbol	Meaning
	Reminder.
	Sending not possible.

Symbols for entertainment

Symbol	Meaning
	CD/DVD player.
	Bluetooth audio.
	USB audio interface.
	Online Entertainment.
	WLAN.

Other symbols

Symbol	Meaning
	Check Control message.
	Audio output switched off.
	Current vehicle position.
	Traffic information.
	Driver profile.
	Messages.
	Service requirements.
	Information.
	Stop.
	Data protection.

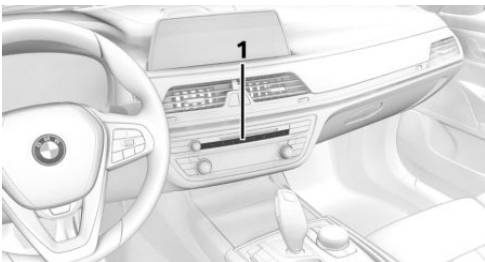
Favourites buttons

General

iDrive functions, for example radio stations, navigation destinations, telephone numbers and shortcuts to the menu or pages of the Integrated Owner's Handbook, can be saved to Favourites buttons and called up directly.

The settings are saved for the current driver profile.

Overview



1 Favourites buttons

Saving a function

A function can be saved to a Favourites button. A button that has already been assigned a function can be overwritten with a different function.

1. Select function via iDrive.
2. Press and hold the desired button until the bar shown on the Control Display has fully loaded.

Performing a function

- Press the button.

The function is carried out immediately. If you have selected a telephone number for example, the connection will also be established.

Displaying the button assignment

Touch the buttons with your finger. Do not wear gloves or use objects.
The button assignment is displayed at the top edge of the screen.

Removing all button assignments

It is possible to remove the assignments of all buttons.

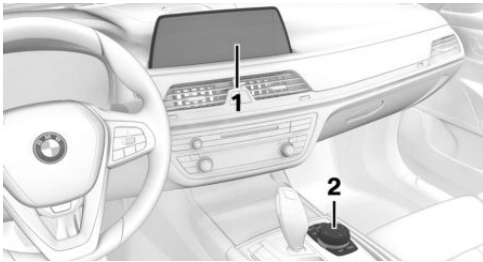
1. Press and hold buttons 1 and  simultaneously for approx. 5 seconds.
2. "OK"

Control Display and Controller

Principle

The iDrive functions are shown on the Control Display. The Control Display can be operated using the Controller, touchpad and touch screen.

Overview



- 1 Control Display with touchscreen
- 2 Controller with buttons and touchpad

Control Display

Safety note

NOTE

Objects located in front of the Control Display may slip and damage the Control Display. There is a risk of material damage. Do not place objects in front of the Control Display.

Switching on/off automatically

The Control Display is switched on automatically after unlocking.

In certain situations, the Control Display is switched off automatically, for example if no operation is performed on the vehicle for several minutes.

Switching on/off manually

The Control Display can also be switched off manually.

1. Tilt the Controller up.
2. "Screen off"

Press the Controller or any button on the Controller to switch it back on again.

System limits

If the Control Display is exposed to very high temperatures, for example because of strong sunlight, the brightness may be reduced and the Control Display may even switch itself off. Normal functions will be restored when the temperature is reduced, for example by shading or using the air conditioning system.

Controller

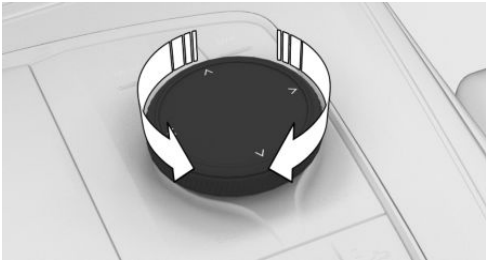
General

The buttons can be used to call up menus directly. The Controller can be used to select menu items and perform settings.

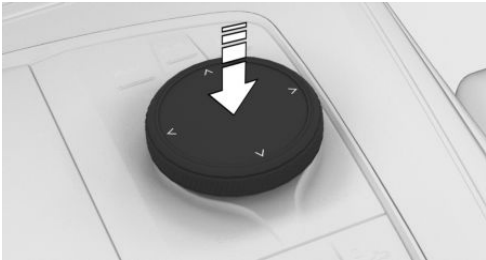
Some of the functions of the iDrive can be operated with the touchpad of the Controller.

Operation

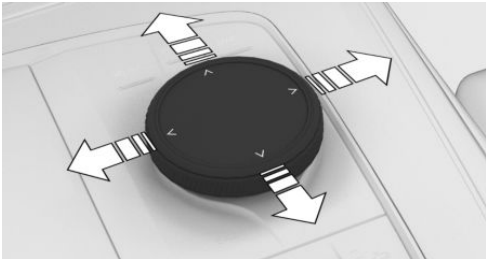
- Turn to switch between menu items, for example.



► Press to select a menu item, for example.



► Tilt in four directions to switch between screens, for example.



Buttons on the Controller

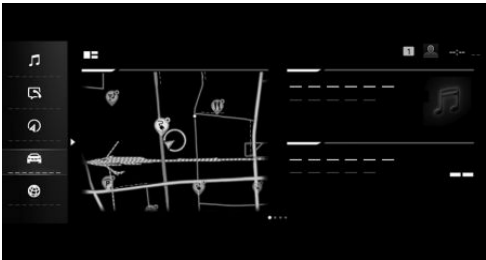
Button	Function
	To call up the main menu.
	To call up the Communication menu.
	To call up the Media/Radio menu.
	To call up the destination entry menu of the navigation system.

Button	Function
	To call up the navigation map.
	To call up the previous screen.
	To call up the Options menu.

Operation using the Controller

Calling up the main menu

	Press the button.



The main menu is displayed.

Selecting menu

Selecting menu items

1. Turn the Controller until the desired menu item is highlighted.
2. Press the Controller.

Selecting widgets

1. Tilt the Controller to the right.
2. Turn the Controller until the desired widget is selected.
3. Press the Controller.

It is also possible to select widgets in the instrument cluster.

Adapting the menu

Adapting widgets

You can adapt the widgets in the main menu. It is possible to create multiple pages with widgets and switch between the pages. It is only possible to make adaptations with the vehicle at a standstill.

Via iDrive:

1. Select the required page in the main menu. It is only possible to adapt the page that is currently selected.
2. Tilt the Controller up.
3. "Adjust main menu"
4. Select the desired adaptation:
 - ▷ Add a new widget: select the **+** symbol and the desired widget.
The desired widget will be added at the relevant position. It is possible to display a maximum of four widgets per page.
 - ▷ Delete the selected widget: select the **×** symbol.
 - ▷ Add a new page: "Add page".
 - ▷ Delete the selected page: "Delete page".
 - ▷ Adapt the widget content: select the widget.
5. "Done"

Adapt the menu content

The display of the "MEDIA", "COM" and "NAV" menus can be adapted, for example to remove the entries for unused functions from the menu.

Via iDrive:

1. Select menu.
2. "Personalise menu"
3. Select the menu content that is intended to be displayed.

Switching between screens

After a menu item has been selected, for example "Settings", a new screen is displayed.

- ▷ Tilt the Controller to the left.

The current screen is closed and the previous screen is displayed.

- ▷  Press the button.

The previous screen is opened again.

- ▷ Tilt the Controller to the right.

The new screen is opened.

An arrow indicates that further screens can be called up.

Calling up the Options menu

- ▷  Press the button.

The "Options" menu is displayed.

The menu consists of various areas:

- ▷ Help for selected menu; for example "Help".
- ▷ System settings; for example "Switch off screen".
- ▷ Operating options for the selected main menu, for example for "Media/Radio".

Adjusting the settings

Settings such as brightness can be adjusted.

Via iDrive:

1. "CAR"
2. "Settings"
3. "Displays"
4. "Control display"
5. "Brightness at night"
6. Press the Controller.
7. Turn the Controller until the desired setting is displayed.
8. Press the Controller.

Entering letters and numbers

Entry

- 1. Turn the Controller: to select a letter or number.
- 2. **OK** : to confirm your entry.

Deleting

Symbol	Function
	Press the Controller: to delete a letter or number.
	Press and hold the Controller: to delete all letters or numbers.

Operating alphabetical lists

For alphabetical lists with more than 30 entries, the letters for which entries exist can be displayed in a letter field.

- 1. Turn the Controller quickly to the left or right.
- 2. Select the initial letter of the desired entry.
The first entry for the selected letter is displayed in the list.

Operation via touchpad

General

Some of the functions of the iDrive can be operated with the touchpad of the Controller.

Selecting functions

Via iDrive:

- 1. "CAR"
- 2. "Settings"
- 3. "General settings"
- 4. "Touchpad"
- 5. Select the desired setting:
 - ▷ "Character input": to enter letters and numbers.

- ▷ "Map": to operate the map.
- ▷ "Search fields": to write letters without selecting the list field.
- ▷ "Audio confirmation": to have the entered letters and numbers read out.

Entering letters and numbers

- ▷ Enter characters as they are displayed on the Control Display.
- ▷ Always enter associated characters, for example accents or dots, so that the letter can be clearly identified.
- ▷ The input options depend on the language that has been set. You may need to enter special characters using the Controller.

Entering special characters

Entry	Operation
To delete a character.	Swipe to the left on the touchpad.
To enter a space.	From the centre of the touchpad, swipe to the right.
To enter a hyphen.	At the top of the touchpad, swipe to the right.
To enter an underscore.	At the bottom of the touchpad, swipe to the right.

Operating map

The map of the navigation system can be moved using the touchpad.

Function	Operation
To move the map.	Swipe in the appropriate direction.
To enlarge/reduce the map.	On the touchpad, pinch together or move apart your fingers.
To display the menu.	Tap once.

Operation by touchscreen

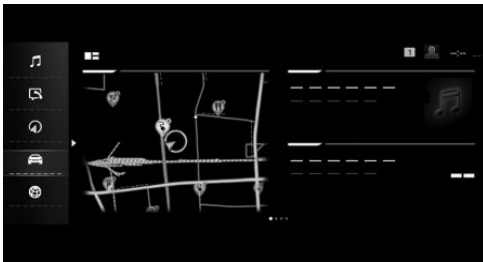
General

The Control Display is equipped with a touchscreen.

It is possible to tap menu items and widgets. Touch the touchscreen with your fingers. Do not use any objects.

Calling up the main menu

🏠 Tap the symbol.



The main menu is displayed.

Adapting widgets

You can adapt the widgets in the main menu. It is possible to create multiple pages with widgets and switch between the pages. It is only possible to make adaptations with the vehicle at a standstill.

Via iDrive:

1. Select the required page in the main menu. It is only possible to adapt the page that is currently selected.
2. Tap the  symbol in the main menu.
3. Select the desired adaptation:
 - ▶ Add a new widget: tap the  symbol and select the desired widget.
The desired widget will be added at the relevant position. It is possible to display a maximum of four widgets per page.
 - ▶ Delete the selected widget: tap the  symbol.
 - ▶ Add a new page: tap "Add page".
 - ▶ Delete the selected page: tap "Delete page".
 - ▶ Adapt the content of the widget: tap the centre of the widget.
4. Tap "Done".

Showing/hiding the display bar

At the top edge of the screen, it is possible to show or hide a display bar with additional functions.

- ▶ To show the display bar, pull down the display bar at the top edge of the screen.
- ▶ To hide the display bar, pull up the display bar at the top edge of the screen.

Switching between screens

After a menu item has been selected, a new screen is displayed.

An arrow indicates that further screens can be called up.

- ▶ Swipe to the left.
- ▶ Tap the arrow.

The new screen is opened.

Adjusting the settings

Settings such as brightness can be made using the touchscreen.

Via iDrive:

- 1. "CAR"
- 2. "Settings"
- 3. "Displays"
- 4. "Control display"
- 5. "Brightness at night"
- 6. Perform the desired setting:
 - Move to the right or left until the required setting is displayed.
 -   Tap the symbol.

Entering letters and numbers

Entry

- 1.  Tap the symbol on the touchscreen.
A keyboard appears on the Control Display.
- 2. Enter letters and numbers.

Deleting

Symbol	Function
	Tap the symbol: to delete letter or number.
	Tap and hold the symbol: to delete all letters or numbers.

Operating the map

The navigation map can be moved via the touchscreen.

Function	Operation
To move the map.	Swipe in the appropriate direction.
To enlarge/reduce the map.	Pinch together or move apart your fingers.
To display the menu.	Tap once.

Voice control system

Principle

The voice activation system can be used to operate functions with spoken commands. The system provides spoken announcements to assist you with input.

The voice control system and the feedback it provides are not a substitute for the printed or integrated Owner's Handbook.

General

- Functions that can only be used when the vehicle is stationary can only be operated via the voice control system to a limited extent.
- The system includes special microphones on the driver side and the front passenger side.
- ›...‹ indicates commands for the voice control system.

Operating requirements

- A language must be set using iDrive that is supported by the voice control system. To select the language, see page 62.
- Always say the commands in the language of the voice control system.

Activating the voice control system

General

Voice control can be activated in various ways:

-  Press the button on the steering wheel.
- Say the wake word ›Hello BMW‹ or the personalised wake word.

 This symbol indicates that the voice control system is active.

Then say the command. It is possible that no further spoken commands are available. In this case, switch to iDrive to operate the function.

Voice control can be interrupted:

- ▶ Press the  button on the steering wheel again.
- ▶ Say ›Cancel‹.



This symbol indicates that the voice control system is deactivated.

Button on the steering wheel

1.  Press the button on the steering wheel.
2. Wait for the acoustic signal.
3. Say the command.

Wake word

General

Saying the wake word ›Hello BMW‹ or the customised wake word starts the system.

Activating/deactivating

1. Say the wake word ›Hello BMW‹ or the personalised wake word.
2. Say the command.

Preset wake word

The preset wake word "Hello BMW" can be activated and deactivated. The ›Hello BMW‹ option activates the preset and personal wake word.

Via iDrive:

1. "CAR"
2. "Settings"
3. "General settings"
4. "Language"
5. "Say "Hello BMW" for activation"

Personalised wake word

A personalised wake word can be set in addition to the preset wake word "Hello BMW".

Via iDrive:

1. "CAR"
2. "Settings"
3. "General settings"
4. "Language"
5. "Personal activation word"
6. "Start recording"

For the "Start recording" option, online speech processing must be available and activated. Alternatively, the personal wake word can be entered using the Controller.

7. Follow the instructions on the Control Display.

Possible commands

General

Most of the contents on the Control Display can be said as commands; for example, menu items or list entries. When doing this, say the list entries as they are shown in the list.

Commands and numbers should be spoken fluently, with the usual emphasis and at a normal volume and speed.

The voice recognition status is displayed in the upper area of the Control Display.

Functional examples

Menu items

The commands for the menu items are spoken in the same way as they are selected using the Controller.

1.  Press the button on the steering wheel.
2. ›Media and radio‹
3. ›Saved stations‹

The saved stations are displayed on the Control Display.

Navigation

The voice control system can be used to enter destinations in the navigation. It is also possible to state Points of Interest or have traffic messages read aloud.

- ▶ ›Drive me to 1 High Street in Manchester‹.
- ▶ ›Take me home‹.
- ▶ ›Are there any traffic messages‹

Communication

When a mobile telephone is connected, it is possible to start calls or send SMS messages, for example, using the voice control system.

- ▶ ›Call John Smith on the mobile phone‹.
- ▶ ›Dial the number 0370 505 0160‹.
- ▶ ›New text message to John Smith: I'm on my way‹.

Media and radio

Most radio functions can be operated by voice commands.

- ▶ ›Switch on music‹.
- ▶ ›Music off‹.
- ▶ ›Next track‹.

Air conditioning

Most air conditioning functions can be operated by voice commands.

- ▶ ›Activate climate control‹.
- ▶ ›Deactivate ... air recirculation‹.
- ▶ ›Temperature [...] at ...‹.

Help with the voice control system

- ▶ To have voice command options read aloud, say: ›Voice commands‹.
- ▶ To have information about the voice control system read aloud: ›General information on voice control‹.

- ▶ To have help on the current menu read aloud: ›Help‹.

Information for emergency calls

The voice control system should not be used for emergency calls. Under stress, a person's speech and voice pitch can change. This could unnecessarily delay connection of your call.

Instead, use the SOS button, see page 361, located near the rear-view mirror.

Settings

Selecting the language

The language to be used for voice control and system announcements can be selected.

Via iDrive:

1. "CAR"
2. "Settings"
3. "General settings"
4. "Language"
5. "System language"
6. Select the desired language.

Selecting the speech dialogue

You can select whether the system uses the standard dialogue or the short variant.

If the short variant is selected, the system announcements are played in shortened form.

Via iDrive:

1. "CAR"
2. "Settings"
3. "General settings"
4. "Language"
5. "Length of answers"
6. Select the desired setting.

Speaking during voice output

It is possible to answer while the voice control system is querying your previous spoken instruc-

tion. The function can be deactivated if the queries are frequently cancelled inadvertently, for example due to background noise or people speaking.

Via iDrive:

1. "CAR"
2. "Settings"
3. "General settings"
4. "Language"
5. "Speaking during voice output"

Online speech processing

Online speech processing enables use of the dictation function, facilitates the natural input of destinations and improves the quality of voice recognition. To use the function, data is sent across an encrypted connection to a service provider and stored locally there.

Via iDrive:

1. "CAR"
2. "Settings"
3. "General settings"
4. "Language"
5. "Online speech processing"

Adjusting the volume

Turn the volume knob during the spoken instructions until the desired volume is obtained.

- ▶ The volume setting is retained even if you change the volume of other audio sources.
- ▶ The volume setting is saved for the current driver profile.

System limits

- ▶ Certain noises may be detected and could result in problems. Keep doors, windows and the Glass Roof closed.
- ▶ Noise from passengers or the rear bench may interfere with the system. Avoid back-

ground noise in the vehicle while you are speaking.

- ▶ Strong dialects may prevent voice recognition from working properly. Speak loudly and clearly.

Using the voice control system on the smartphone

A smartphone connected to the vehicle can be operated via voice control.

This requires voice control to be activated on the smartphone.

1.  Press and hold the button on the steering wheel for approx. 3 seconds.
Voice control on the smartphone is activated.
2.  Release the button.
If activation is successful, a confirmation appears on the Control Display.

If it was not possible to activate voice control, the list of Bluetooth devices appears on the Control Display.

Amazon Alexa Car Integration

Principle

Alexa is a digital assistant from Amazon. Amazon Alexa Car Integration enables Alexa to be used in the vehicle.

General

Some of Alexa's functions may only work to a limited extent in the vehicle to ensure they do not create a safety risk when driving.

Operating requirements

- ▶ Amazon Alexa Car Integration acquired via the ConnectedDrive Store.
- ▶ The same ConnectedDrive account is used in the vehicle as in the BMW Connected app.
- ▶ Vehicle is linked in the BMW Connected app.

- ▶ Amazon account and BMW account are linked in the BMW Connected app.
- ▶ The Bluetooth connection or USB connection between vehicle and mobile device is active.

Activation in the BMW Connected app

Amazon Alexa Car Integration is activated in the BMW Connected app.

Follow the instructions in the app.

Activation in the vehicle

Authorisation to use Amazon Alexa Car Integration needs to be provided before the start of each journey.

1. Authorising Amazon Alexa Car Integration:
 - ▶ Pair the mobile device with the vehicle via Bluetooth.
 - ▶ Select a driver profile, see page 66.
2. Say the activation word "Alexa" and the required command.
Information about the active function appears on the Control Display.

Malfunction

In the event of a malfunction, switch the engine off and on again.

BMW Intelligent Personal Assistant

Principle

BMW Intelligent Personal Assistant expands the voice control function to include additional functions and improves interaction in the vehicle.

General

BMW Intelligent Personal Assistant is available depending on the national-market version. The

Personal Assistant is operated using spoken commands. Voice operation is supplemented with personalised recommendations and messages, as well as automated habits.

The Personal Assistant is connected to other digital services such as the Concierge Service and is continually being developed. An active driver profile is required to access the full scope of functions.

There are two versions of BMW Intelligent Personal Assistant:

- ▶ In the guest profile: this version is linked to a single vehicle and cannot be personalised. Not all the functions described are available in full.
- ▶ With active driver profile: this version can be used in various vehicles and can be personalised. All the functions described are available in full.

Operating requirements

Activate the following settings for the full extent of applications:

- ▶ The driver profile is activated.
- ▶ The Connected Drive Service is applied for at a Service Partner or has been purchased via the ConnectedDrive Store.
- ▶ Registered in the ConnectedDrive Store.
- ▶ "Online speech processing" is activated.
- ▶ "Synchronise driver profile" is activated under "Personalisation" in the data protection menu.
- ▶ All settings are activated under "BMW ConnectedDrive" in the data protection menu.

Functional example

1. Say the wake word ›Hello BMW‹ or the personalised wake word.
2. ›Is my engine oil level still OK?‹

The Personal Assistant provides information about the engine oil level.

Settings

Situational adjustment

General

Depending on the situation, various states can be activated.

State	Description
"Do not disturb"	Incoming calls and some messages are not displayed.
"Do not learn"	Habits are no longer learned.
"Passenger on board"	Personalised version: private information – in e-mails, for example – is not displayed.

Activating/deactivating

1. "APPS"
2. "Installed apps"
3. "Personal assistant"
4. "Situational adjustment"
5. Select the desired setting.

Automating habits

General

The Personal Assistant is able to learn habits; for example, automatically activating the steering wheel heating once a certain outside temperature is reached. This involves creating rules that can be activated and deactivated at any time.

Creating rules

1. "APPS"
2. "Installed apps"
3. "Personal assistant"
4. "Automate habits"
5. Select the desired setting.

Functions

Caring Car

General

A short program harmonises various vehicle functions in the interior with one another. A program lasts for 3 minutes.

Activating/deactivating

1. "CAR"
2. "Caring Car"
3. Select the desired channel.

The program can be ended prematurely:

"End programme"

Connected Command

General

Connected Command allows passengers to control various functions in the vehicle and obtain information about the journey using a smartphone and the BMW Connected app.

Operating requirements

- ▶ The smartphone is connected to the vehicle via Bluetooth and WiFi.
- ▶ The Connected app is installed on the smartphone.

Managing rights

1. "COM"
2. "Mobile devices"
3. Select the required setting for the corresponding device.

Owner's Handbook by voice control

Principle

It is possible to ask simple questions about the vehicle functions and about operating the vehicle.

General

The voice control system and the feedback it provides are not a substitute for the printed or integrated Owner's Handbook. The voice recognition function and the quality of the feedback may vary.

The system support questions starting with "How" or "What".

Functional example

1.  Press the button on the steering wheel.
2. ›How do you disable the front passenger airbag?‹

The voice control system provides feedback. If applicable, the section of the integrated Owner's Handbook is displayed on the Control Display while at a standstill.

BMW Gesture Control

Principle

BMW Gesture Control enables some iDrive functions to be operated simply by moving your hands.

Overview



The camera in the roof lining detects gestures made in the area of the centre console at the height of the Control Display.

Activating/deactivating

Via iDrive:

1. "CAR"
2. "Settings"
3. "General settings"
4. "Gesture control"
5. "Gesture control"

Settings

Via iDrive:

1. "CAR"
2. "Settings"
3. "General settings"
4. "Gesture control"
5. Select the desired setting:
 - ▷ "Display user help": the possible gesture is displayed on the Control Display.
 - ▷ "Audio confirmation": an audible signal is output when the gesture is recognised.

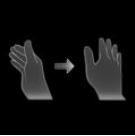
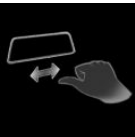
Performing gestures

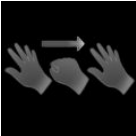
Perform the gestures under the rear-view window and to the side of the steering wheel.

Perform the gestures clearly.

The gestures can also be performed by the front passenger.

Possible gestures

Gesture	Operation	Function
	Move your index finger forward in the direction of the screen and back again.	Accept phone call. Select highlighted entry of a list during voice control. Confirm the pop-up.
	Move your hand across the width of the Control Display in the direction of the front-passenger side.	Reject phone call. Close the pop-up. End voice control.
	Slowly move your hand in a clockwise circle with your index finger pointing forward. Gesture is detected after approximately one circular movement.	The volume is increased.
	Slowly move your hand anticlockwise with your index finger pointing forward. Gesture is detected after approximately one circular movement.	The volume is reduced.
	Pinch your thumb and index finger together and move your hand horizontally right or left.	Surround View: rotate camera view. This gesture is only possible with the vehicle at standstill.
	Move your index and middle fingers apart and extend them forwards.	Individually assignable gesture. Possible functions: Mute. Control Display on/off. Voice control.
	With your thumb stretched out to the left, move your fist back and forth.	Skip function backwards. The previous music track is played.

Gesture	Operation	Function
	With your thumb stretched out to the right, move your fist back and forth.	Skip function forwards. The next music track is played.
	Stretch out all five fingers, make a fist and then stretch out all five fingers again.	Individually assignable gesture. Possible functions: Route guidance to home address. Messages. Recent calls.

Assign gesture individually

Via iDrive:

- 1. "CAR"
- 2. "Settings"
- 3. "General settings"
- 4. "Gesture control"
- 5. "Function assignment gesture 1" or "Function assignment gesture 2"
- 6. Select the desired setting.

System limits

Detection of gestures by the camera in the roof lining can be disrupted under the following circumstances:

- ▶ The camera lens is covered.
- ▶ There are objects on the rear-view mirror.
- ▶ The camera lens is contaminated. Cleaning camera lenses, see page 370.
- ▶ The gesture is performed outside the detection area.
- ▶ Wearing of gloves or jewellery.
- ▶ Smoking in the interior.

BMW Remote Software Upgrade

Vehicle equipment

This chapter describes all standard, country-specific and special equipment available for the model series. It may therefore describe equipment and functions which are not installed in your vehicle, for example on account of the optional equipment selected or the country variant. This also applies to safety-relevant functions and systems. Please comply with the relevant laws and regulations when using the corresponding functions and systems.

BMW Remote Software Upgrade

Principle

The Remote Software Upgrade can be used to update the vehicle software. The Remote Software Upgrade provides new functions, functional enhancements or quality improvements.

General

BMW recommends carrying out the Remote Software Upgrade as soon as it becomes available.

The data for the Remote Software Upgrade is automatically downloaded to the vehicle when available.

For safety reasons, it is only possible to install the downloaded upgrade while at a standstill. The installation will not begin until it has been confirmed at the vehicle.

- Installation can take around 20 minutes.
- Installation cannot be interrupted.
- The vehicle cannot be used during installation.
- You may leave the vehicle during installation.

Validity of Owner's Handbook

Vehicle production

At the time of production in the factory, the printed Owner's Handbook provides up-to-date information.

After a software update in the vehicle

After a vehicle software update – for example, a Remote Software Upgrade – the integrated Owner's Handbook for the vehicle will contain updated information.

Operating requirements

An active ConnectedDrive contract is required in order to use the Remote Software Upgrade.

Version information

General

The version information describes the updates contained in the Remote Software Upgrade. The version information can be shown on the Control Display during the download and following successful completion of the installation. The information is available at all times in the ConnectedDrive customer portal.

Register with the ConnectedDrive customer portal online at: www.bmw-connecteddrive.com.

Displaying the version information

Via iDrive:

1. "CAR"
2. "Settings"
3. "General settings"
4. "Remote Software Upgrade"
5. "Installed version:"

Safety note

WARNING

Unsupervised children or pets in the vehicle can set the vehicle in motion and endanger themselves or other road users, for example by the following actions:

- ▷ Pressing the start/stop button.
- ▷ Releasing the parking brake.
- ▷ Opening and closing doors or windows.
- ▷ Engaging selector lever position N.
- ▷ Operating vehicle equipment.

There is a risk of accidents or injury. Do not leave children or pets unsupervised in the vehicle. When leaving the vehicle, take the vehicle key with you and lock the vehicle.

5. "Search for upgrades"
6. Follow the instructions on the Control Display.

Via BMW Connected app

1. Download the upgrade to your smartphone in the BMW Connected app when available.
2. Follow the instructions in the BMW Connected app.
3. Establish a WiFi and Bluetooth connection between the smartphone and the vehicle simultaneously.

The upgrade data will only transfer from the smartphone to the vehicle while driving.

4. Follow the instructions on the Control Display.

Installing an upgrade

General

If the upgrade has downloaded successfully, it can be installed once the vehicle has been parked. The installation can be carried out immediately after download or later on.

Follow the instructions on the Control Display.

Following a successful upgrade, booked services – for example RTTI – are automatically activated again while driving.

Searching for and downloading an upgrade

General

There are various ways of searching for and downloading an upgrade:

- ▷ Automatically.
- ▷ Via iDrive.
- ▷ Via BMW Connected app.

Automatic download

The data for the Remote Software Upgrade is automatically downloaded to the vehicle when available. There is no need to approve the download.

Via iDrive

1. "CAR"
2. "Settings"
3. "General settings"
4. "Remote Software Upgrade"

Operating requirements

- ▷ Adequate charge state of the battery.
- ▷ The outside temperature is above — 10 °C/14 °F.
- ▷ Vehicle is standing on level ground.
- ▷ Hazard warning lights switched off.
- ▷ Selector lever position P is engaged.
- ▷ Engine is sufficiently cooled.

Preparing the vehicle

- ▷ Park the vehicle in a safe place off the public roads.

- Mobile phone reception must be guaranteed so that an error message can be sent if the installation is cancelled, for example.
- Close the windows.
- Close the Glass Roof.
- Close the boot lid.
- Remove devices that consume energy, for example mobile telephone.
- Disconnect the trailer or load carrier.
- The vehicle key is in the vehicle to start the installation.
- Switch off the exterior lights.

Other vehicle-dependent operating requirements are shown on the Control Display.

Installing an upgrade later

Via iDrive:

1. "CAR"
2. "Settings"
3. "General settings"
4. "Remote Software Upgrade"
5. "Start upgrade now"

Follow the instructions on the Control Display.

Functional limitations

During the upgrade, many of the functions are temporarily unavailable, for example:

- Hazard warning lights.
- Central locking system.
- Side lights.
- Horn.
- Alarm system.
- Emergency call.
- Power window switches.
- Glass Roof.
- Locking of the fuel filler flap.

The driver's door can be unlocked and locked from outside with the integrated key.

Malfunction

In the event of a malfunction, follow the instructions on the Control Display or in the BMW Connected app.

If the malfunction cannot be rectified, contact a Service Partner of the manufacturer or another qualified Service Partner or a specialist workshop.

General settings

Vehicle equipment

This chapter describes all standard, country-specific and special equipment available for the model series. It may therefore describe equipment and functions which are not installed in your vehicle, for example on account of the optional equipment selected or the country variant. This also applies to safety-relevant functions and systems. Please comply with the relevant laws and regulations when using the corresponding functions and systems.

Messages

Principle

The menu shows all messages received by the vehicle, centrally in the form of a list.

General

The following messages can be displayed:

- ▷ Traffic messages.
- ▷ Check Control messages.
- ▷ Service requirement messages.
- ▷ Communication messages, for example e-mail, SMS or reminders.
- ▷ Messages from the Concierge Service or the BMW Connected app, for example.
- ▷ Messages from the vehicle manufacturer.

The number of messages is also displayed in the status field.

The Messages menu can also be created as a widget.

Calling up messages

Via iDrive:

1. Tilt the Controller up.

2. "Notifications"
3. Select the required message.

Deleting messages

All messages which are not Check Control messages or messages from the vehicle manufacturer can be deleted from the list.

Check Control messages or messages from the vehicle manufacturer remain for as long as they are relevant.

Via iDrive:

1. Tilt the Controller up.
2. "Notifications"
3. Select the desired message; for example, SMS.
4.  Press the button.
5. ▷ "Delete this notification"
- ▷ "Delete all notifications"

Settings

The following settings can be performed:

- ▷ Selection of applications from which messages are permitted.
- ▷ All messages or a limited period of received messages.

Via iDrive:

1. Tilt the Controller up.
2. "Notifications"
3. Tilt the Controller to the right.
4. "Settings"
5. Select the desired setting.

Time

Setting the time zone

Via iDrive:

1. "CAR"
2. "Settings"
3. "General settings"
4. "Date and time"
5. "Time zone:"
6. Select the desired setting.

The setting is saved for the current driver profile.

Setting the time

Via iDrive:

1. "CAR"
2. "Settings"
3. "General settings"
4. "Date and time"
5. "Time:"
6. Turn the Controller until the desired hours are displayed.
7. Press the Controller.
8. Turn the Controller until the desired minutes are displayed.
9. "OK"

Setting the time format

Via iDrive:

1. "CAR"
2. "Settings"
3. "General settings"
4. "Date and time"
5. "Time format:"
6. Select the desired setting.

The setting is saved for the current driver profile.

Automatic time setting

Depending on the equipment, the time, date and, if necessary, time zone are updated automatically.

Via iDrive:

1. "CAR"
2. "Settings"
3. "General settings"
4. "Date and time"
5. "Automatic time setting"

The setting is saved for the current driver profile.

Date

Setting the date

Via iDrive:

1. "CAR"
2. "Settings"
3. "General settings"
4. "Date and time"
5. "Date:"
6. Turn the Controller until the desired day is displayed.
7. Press the Controller.
8. Select the month and year.
9. "OK"

Setting the date format

Via iDrive:

1. "CAR"
2. "Settings"
3. "General settings"
4. "Date and time"
5. "Date format:"
6. Select the desired setting.

The setting is saved for the current driver profile.

Language

Selecting the language

Via iDrive:

1. "CAR"
2. "Settings"
3. "General settings"
4. "Language:"
5. "System language"
6. Select the desired setting.

The setting is saved for the current driver profile.

Selecting the speech dialogue

Speech dialogue for the voice control system, see page 50.

Selecting the units of measurement

Depending on the country specifications, it is possible to select the units of measurement for various values, for example consumption, distances and temperature.

Via iDrive:

1. "CAR"
2. "Settings"
3. "General settings"
4. "Units"
5. Select the desired menu item.
6. Select the desired setting.

The setting is saved for the current driver profile.

Journey data settings

Principle

The intervals at which the journey data is reset can be adjusted.

Resetting journey data

Via iDrive:

1. "CAR"
2. "Settings"
3. "General settings"
4. "Reset journey data"
5. Select the desired setting.

Speed warning

Principle

A speed limit can be set which triggers a warning when it is reached.

General

The warning is repeated if the vehicle speed exceeds the set speed limit again, after it has dropped below 5 km/h/3 mph.

To adjust

Via iDrive:

1. "CAR"
2. "Settings"
3. "General settings"
4. "Speed warning"
5. "Warning at:"
6. Turn the Controller until the desired speed is displayed.
7. Press the Controller.

Activating/deactivating

Via iDrive:

1. "CAR"
2. "Settings"
3. "General settings"
4. "Speed warning"
5. "Speed warning"

Setting the current speed as the speed warning

Via iDrive:

1. "CAR"
2. "Settings"
3. "General settings"
4. "Speed warning"
5. "Select current speed"

Driver Attention Camera

Principle

The instrument cluster contains a camera which monitors the driver's activity. The camera evaluates the head position and opening of the eyes in order to analyse the attentiveness of the driver. This system supports various vehicle assistance systems, for example:

- Attentiveness assistant.

Activating/deactivating

Via iDrive:

1. "CAR"
2. "Settings"
3. "General settings"
4. "Driver Attention Camera"
5. Select the desired setting.

System limits

The Driver Attention Camera may have limited functionality in the following situations, for example:

- If the Driver Attention Camera is covered by the steering wheel rim.
- If the driver is wearing sunglasses that block infrared light.

Activating/deactivating information windows

Information windows are automatically shown on the Control Display for some functions. Some of these information windows can be activated or deactivated.

Via iDrive:

1. "CAR"
2. "Settings"
3. "General settings"
4. "Pop-ups"
5. Select the desired setting.

The setting is saved for the current driver profile.

Activating/deactivating display of the current vehicle position

Principle

If vehicle tracking is activated, the current vehicle position can be displayed in the BMW Connected app or in the ConnectedDrive customer portal.

Activating/deactivating

Via iDrive:

1. "CAR"
2. "Settings"
3. "General settings"
4. "Data privacy"
5. "Configure services"
6. Select the desired setting.

Control Display

Brightness

Via iDrive:

1. "CAR"
2. "Settings"
3. "Displays"
4. "Control display"
5. "Brightness at night"
6. Press the Controller.
7. Turn the Controller until the desired brightness is obtained.
8. Press the Controller.

The setting is saved for the current driver profile.

Depending on the lighting conditions, the brightness adjustment may not be immediately apparent.

Resetting the vehicle configuration

All individual settings can be reset to the factory settings when the drive-ready state is switched off.

Via iDrive:

1. "CAR"
2. "Settings"
3. "General settings"
4. "Reset vehicle data"
5. "Reset vehicle data"

If the settings saved in a driver profile are synchronised with a ConnectedDrive account, these settings will be retained in the ConnectedDrive account.

Personal settings

Vehicle equipment

This chapter describes all standard, country-specific and special equipment available for the model series. It may therefore describe equipment and functions which are not installed in your vehicle, for example on account of the optional equipment selected or the country variant. This also applies to safety-relevant functions and systems. Please comply with the relevant laws and regulations when using the corresponding functions and systems.

Data protection

Data transfer

Principle

The vehicle offers various services which require data to be transferred to BMW or a service provider. The transfer of data can be deactivated for some services.

General

If data transfer has been deactivated for a service, then that service cannot be used.

Only perform settings with the vehicle at a standstill.

Settings

The data transfer can be configured individually in various stages or for individual services.

Via iDrive:

1. "CAR"
2. "Settings"
3. "General settings"
4. "Data privacy"
5. Select the desired setting.

Deleting personal data in the vehicle

Principle

Depending on use, the vehicle stores personal data such as saved radio stations. This personal data can be permanently deleted using iDrive.

General

Depending on the equipment in your vehicle, data such as the following can be deleted:

- ▷ Driver profile settings.
- ▷ Saved radio stations.
- ▷ Saved Favourites buttons.
- ▷ Trip and on-board computer values.
- ▷ Music hard disc.
- ▷ Navigation, for example saved destinations.
- ▷ Phone book.
- ▷ Online data, for example Favourites, cookies.
- ▷ Office data, for example voice memos.
- ▷ Login accounts.

It may take up to 15 minutes in total to delete data.

Operating requirements

Data can only be deleted with the vehicle at a standstill.

Deleting data

Personal data in the vehicle is deleted when the vehicle is reset to its factory settings.

Reset the vehicle to its factory settings, see page 64.

Driver profiles

Principle

Driver profiles can be created in order to store personalised vehicle settings. If multiple drivers use a vehicle, each driver can create a personalised driver profile. If a driver profile is selected, the vehicle automatically adopts the settings stored in the driver profile.

General

You can create three personal driver profiles.

There is also a guest profile available which can be selected by any driver. The guest profile is active if no personal driver profile has been selected.

Changes to the vehicle settings are saved automatically in the active driver profile or in the guest profile.

Recognition via a vehicle key can be assigned to a driver profile so that the vehicle settings are adjusted to the relevant driver as soon as the vehicle is unlocked. As soon as the vehicle key is detected by the vehicle, the relevant driver profile is activated.

ConnectedDrive countries: The settings saved in the driver profile can be synchronised with the personal BMW ConnectedDrive account. This makes it possible to use these settings in other BMW vehicles as well.

Operating requirements

If the driver profile is changed, the vehicle cannot move at any more than walking speed.

Welcome screen

The welcome screen is shown once the Control Display is switched on.

The following actions can be performed on the welcome screen:

- ▷ Switch the driver profile.
- ▷ Start the setup assistant.

This option is offered for a limited time in new vehicles.

As soon as the engine is started or any button is pressed, the welcome screen disappears.

Setup assistant

The setup assistant is offered on the welcome screen in new vehicles for a limited time in order to define the key settings for the vehicle.

Select "Getting started" to start the setup assistant.

The setup assistant can be started at any time using iDrive.

1. "CAR"
2. "Settings"
3. "General settings"
4. "Getting started"

The driver is guided through the following functions step by step:

- ▷ Set the system language.
- ▷ ConnectedDrive countries:
If the setup assistant has been called up in the guest profile: create the driver profile.
- ▷ Register mobile devices with the vehicle.
- ▷ If the setup assistant has been called up from a previously defined driver profile: set up the Personal Assistant.
- ▷ Depending on whether the setup assistant has been called up from a previously defined driver profile or a guest profile: set up services or confirm the declaration regarding the transfer of vehicle data.
- ▷ Set up other operating methods.

The selected settings are saved in the active driver profile.

Guest profile

The guest profile can be activated by any driver. Vehicle settings that are made when the guest profile is active are saved in the guest profile.

The guest profile is automatically active in the following cases:

- No driver profiles have been created yet.
- No driver profile is assigned to the vehicle key used to unlock the vehicle.

The following restrictions apply:

- The guest profile cannot be renamed.
- Recognition cannot be assigned to the guest profile.
- It is not possible to assign a PIN to the guest profile.
- ConnectedDrive countries: Synchronisation with a ConnectedDrive account is not possible.

The guest profile is selected on the welcome screen or via iDrive:

1. "CAR"
2. "Driver profiles"

As an alternative to steps 1 and 2, it is possible to tap the profile picture in the upper status bar.

3. "Guest"
4. "OK"

Creating a driver profile

A driver profile is created via iDrive:

1. "CAR"
2. "Driver profiles"
3. Tilt the Controller to the right.

As an alternative to steps 1 to 3, it is possible to tap the profile picture in the upper status bar.

4. "Add driver profile"

ConnectedDrive countries: An existing ConnectedDrive account must be assigned to a driver profile. If there is no existing ConnectedDrive account, it is possible to create one using a smartphone. A QR code is displayed on the Control Display for this purpose. It is possible to continue creating the driver profile using the login details

for the ConnectedDrive account that has been created.

Selecting recognition

The recognition setting is made via iDrive:

1. "CAR"
2. "Driver profiles"
3. Tilt the Controller to the right.

As an alternative to steps 1 to 3, it is possible to tap the profile picture in the upper status bar.

4. "Driver recognition"
5. "with vehicle key"

The vehicle key that is used to unlock the vehicle is assigned to the driver profile.

6. "Activate linkage"

As soon as the vehicle key is detected by the vehicle, the relevant driver profile is activated.

Setting up PIN protection

Once the vehicle is unlocked, it is possible to select a different driver profile via iDrive. If PIN protection is set up for the selected driver profile, this driver profile can only be activated using the PIN.

Non-ConnectedDrive countries: If the PIN is not known, the driver profile cannot be activated.

ConnectedDrive countries: If the PIN is not known, the driver profile can be activated with the login details for the relevant ConnectedDrive account.

Via iDrive:

1. "CAR"
2. "Driver profiles"
3. Tilt the Controller to the right.

As an alternative to steps 1 to 3, it is possible to tap the profile picture in the upper status bar.

4. "Driver recognition"
5. "using PIN"

Changing/cancelling recognition

If a different vehicle key is assigned to a driver profile, the current assignment must be cancelled first.

Via iDrive:

1. "CAR"
2. "Driver profiles"
3. Tilt the Controller to the right.

As an alternative to steps 1 to 3, it is possible to tap the profile picture in the upper status bar.

4. "Driver recognition"
5. "with vehicle key"
6. "Activate linkage"

If the vehicle and the vehicle key are handed over for a service, for example, carry out the following steps first:

- ▶ Set up PIN protection.
- ▶ Cancel recognition via the vehicle key.
- ▶ Switch to the guest profile.

This means the vehicle key that is handed over can no longer be used to access the personal driver profile.

Selecting a driver profile

The driver profile is selected automatically based on the recognition of the key/remote control.

If the guest profile is active, the driver profile is selected on the welcome screen or via iDrive. A PIN may need to be entered.

1. "CAR"
 2. "Driver profiles"
- As an alternative to steps 1 and 2, it is possible to tap the profile picture in the upper status bar.
3. Select a driver profile.
 4. "OK"

The settings saved in the selected driver profile are applied automatically.

Switching synchronisation with the ConnectedDrive account on/off

ConnectedDrive countries:

The settings saved in the driver profile are synchronised with the personal ConnectedDrive account. This makes it possible to use the personal settings in other BMW vehicles with ConnectedDrive access as well, provided that this function is supported.

Synchronisation with the ConnectedDrive account is enabled when a driver profile is created or via iDrive:

1. "CAR"
2. "Driver profiles"
3. Tilt the Controller to the right.

As an alternative to steps 1 to 3, it is possible to tap the profile picture in the upper status bar.

4. "Settings"
5. "Synchronise driver profile"
6. "Synchronise driver profile"

Renaming the driver profile

Countries in which ConnectedDrive is not available:

The name assigned when setting up the driver profile can be changed via iDrive:

1. "CAR"
 2. "Driver profiles"
- As an alternative to steps 1 and 2, it is possible to tap the profile picture in the upper status bar.
3. Select a driver profile.
 4. "Settings"
 5. Enter a profile name.
 6. **OK** Select the symbol.

Selecting a profile picture

Countries in which ConnectedDrive is available:

The profile picture is taken from the ConnectedDrive customer portal or the BMW Connected app.

Countries in which ConnectedDrive is not available:

Via iDrive:

1. "CAR"
2. "Driver profiles"
3. Tilt the Controller to the right.

As an alternative to steps 1 to 3, it is possible to tap the profile picture in the upper status bar.

4. "Avatar"
5. Select the desired profile picture.

Deleting a driver profile

Via iDrive:

1. "CAR"
2. "Driver profiles"
3. Tilt the Controller to the right.

As an alternative to steps 1 to 3, it is possible to tap the profile picture in the upper status bar.

4. "Settings"
5. "Remove driver profile"
6. Select the desired driver profile.
7. "Remove now"

ConnectedDrive countries: If the driver profile has been synchronised with a ConnectedDrive account, the data saved in the ConnectedDrive account is retained.

- ▶ The driver unlocks the vehicle via Comfort Access.
- ▶ If there is a change of driver without the vehicle being locked and unlocked.
- ▶ If a number of vehicle keys are located in the area outside of the vehicle, on the driver's side.

ConnectedDrive countries:

It is only possible to create a driver profile and synchronise it with the ConnectedDrive account if mobile telephone reception is available.

Using the personal settings saved in the ConnectedDrive account in other vehicles is subject to certain technical restrictions. For example, there may be stored settings for a system that is not available in other vehicles, or only in an incompatible version.

System limits

It is not always possible to detect the desired vehicle key uniquely. This may be the case in the following scenarios, for example:

Connections

Vehicle equipment

This chapter describes all standard, country-specific and special equipment available for the model series. It may therefore describe equipment and functions which are not installed in your vehicle, for example on account of the optional equipment selected or the country variant. This also applies to safety-relevant functions and systems. Please comply with the relevant laws and regulations when using the corresponding functions and systems.

Connecting mobile devices to the vehicle

Principle

Various types of connection are available in the vehicle for using mobile devices. Which connection type to select depends on the mobile device and the function you wish to use.

General

The following lists show possible functions and the appropriate connection types for them. The level of functionality depends on the mobile device.

Function	Connection type
Making calls using the hands-free system.	Bluetooth.
Operating telephone functions via iDrive or touchscreen.	
Other functions, for example contacts or SMS.	
Playing music from the smartphone or the audio player.	Bluetooth or USB.

Function	Connection type
USB storage medium: Music playback.	USB.
Playing videos from the smartphone or the USB device.	USB.
Using the vehicle's Internet access.	WiFi hotspot over WLAN.
Operate Apple CarPlay apps via iDrive and by voice commands.	Bluetooth and WLAN.
Screen Mirroring: Showing the smartphone display on the Control Display.	WLAN.

The following connection types require a one-off registration process with the vehicle:

- ▶ Bluetooth.
- ▶ WiFi hotspot.
- ▶ Apple CarPlay.
- ▶ Screen Mirroring.

Registered devices are then automatically recognised and connected to the vehicle.

Safety note

 **WARNING**

Operating integrated information systems and communication devices during a journey may distract you from the road. You could lose control of the vehicle. There is a risk of accident. Only operate the systems or devices if the traffic conditions allow you to do so. Stop if necessary and operate the systems or devices with the vehicle at a standstill.

Compatible devices

General

Information about mobile devices compatible with the vehicle is available at www.bmw.com/bluetooth.

Malfunctions may occur when using unlisted devices or different software versions.

Viewing the vehicle identification number and software part number

When looking for compatible devices, the vehicle identification number and software part number may have to be stated. These numbers can be displayed in the vehicle.

Via iDrive:

1. "COM"
2. "Mobile devices"
3. Tilt the Controller to the right.
4. "Settings"
5. "Bluetooth information"
6. "System information"

Bluetooth connection

Operating requirements

- Compatible device, see page 71, with Bluetooth interface.
- The vehicle key or BMW display key is located in the vehicle.
- The device is operational.
- Bluetooth is activated on the device and switched on in the vehicle.
- The Control Display indicates that the system is ready for registration.
- The device may require certain Bluetooth default settings, for example visibility; see the user manual of the device.

Switching on Bluetooth

Via iDrive:

1. "COM"
2. "Mobile devices"
3. Tilt the Controller to the right.
4. "Settings"
5. "Bluetooth"
6. Select the setting.

Enabling/disabling telephone functions

To be able to use all supported functions of a mobile telephone, the desired functions may need to be activated in the vehicle before registering the mobile telephone with the vehicle.

Via iDrive:

1. "COM"
2. "Personalise menu"
3. Select the desired settings, for example "Text messages".

Registering the mobile device with the vehicle

Via iDrive:

1. "COM"
2. "Mobile devices"
3. Tilt the Controller to the right.
4. "New device"
5. "Phone calls and audio"

The Bluetooth name of the vehicle is displayed in the Control Display.
6. On the mobile device, search for Bluetooth devices in the vicinity and select the vehicle.

A control number is displayed.
7. Compare the control number shown on the Control Display with the control number on

the mobile device display, and confirm that the two match.

8. Select Bluetooth connection if necessary: "Use BMW iDrive for phone calls, Bluetooth audio and apps."

The mobile device is connected to the vehicle and displayed in the device list.

Frequently Asked Questions

For the mobile device to work correctly, the pre-conditions have to be met and all the necessary steps have to be carried out in the correct order. Nevertheless, there may still be instances where the mobile device does not function as expected.

In such cases, the following explanations may provide assistance:

Why could the mobile telephone not be paired or connected?

- ▶ Too many Bluetooth devices are paired to the mobile telephone or the vehicle.

In the vehicle, delete Bluetooth connections with other devices.

Delete the Bluetooth connection from the device list on the mobile telephone and start a new device search.

Too many Bluetooth devices with the same function are registered.

- ▶ The mobile telephone is in power-save mode or the battery is low.

Charge the mobile telephone and deactivate power-save mode if necessary.

Why does the mobile telephone no longer respond?

- ▶ The applications on the mobile telephone are no longer functioning.

Switch the mobile telephone off and on again.

- ▶ Ambient temperature too high or too low to operate the mobile telephone.

Do not subject the mobile telephone to extreme ambient conditions.

Why can telephone functions not be operated via iDrive?

- ▶ No telephone functions are configured for the mobile telephone.

Connect the mobile telephone with the telephone function.

Why are no phone book entries, not all entries or incomplete entries displayed?

- ▶ The transfer of the phone book entries is not yet completed.
- ▶ Under certain circumstances only the phone book entries saved in the mobile telephone or on the SIM card are transferred.
- ▶ It is possible that phone book entries with special characters cannot be displayed.
- ▶ It may not be possible to transfer contacts from social networks.

- ▶ The number of phone book entries to be transferred is too high.

- ▶ The data volume of the contact is too large, for example due to saved information such as memos.

Reduce the data volume of the contact.

- ▶ A mobile telephone can only be connected as an audio source or as a telephone.

Configure the mobile telephone and connect it to the telephone function.

- ▶ A contact was created in the telephone contact list after the last synchronisation.

Re-synchronise the contacts: "Reload contacts"

How can the telephone connection quality be improved?

- ▶ Adjust the strength of the Bluetooth signal on the mobile telephone; the procedure varies from mobile telephone to mobile telephone.
- ▶ Insert the mobile telephone in the wireless charging dock.
- ▶ Adjust the volume of the microphone separately in the sound settings.

If all the points on the list have been reviewed and the desired function cannot be performed, contact the Hotline, a Service Partner of the manufacturer or another qualified Service Partner or a specialist workshop.

USB connection

General

Mobile devices with a USB port are connected to the USB interface.

- ▷ Mobile telephones.
- ▷ Audio devices, for example MP3 players.
- ▷ USB storage devices.

Common file systems are supported. Formats FAT32 and exFAT are recommended.

A connected USB device is charged via the USB interface if the device supports this. Note the maximum charging current of the USB interface.

The following can be done at USB interfaces compatible with data transfer:

- ▷ Playback of music files.
- ▷ Playback of video films.

When connecting, bear the following in mind:

- ▷ Do not use force when inserting the plug into the USB interface.
- ▷ Use a flexible adapter cable.
- ▷ Protect the USB device from mechanical damage.
- ▷ Due to the large variety of USB devices available on the market, operation via the vehicle cannot be ensured for every device.
- ▷ Do not expose the USB devices to extreme environmental conditions, for example very high temperatures; see the operating instructions of the device.
- ▷ Due to the large variety of different compression techniques, correct playback of the media stored on the USB device cannot be guaranteed in every case.

- ▷ To ensure correct transfer of the stored data, do not charge a USB device from the socket in the vehicle when the device is also connected to the USB interface.
- ▷ Depending on how the USB device is being used, it may be necessary to perform settings on the USB device; see the operating instructions of the device.

Unsuitable USB devices:

- ▷ USB hard drives.
- ▷ USB hubs.
- ▷ USB memory card reader with several slots.
- ▷ HFS-formatted USB devices.
- ▷ Devices such as fans or lamps.

Operating requirements

Compatible device, see page 71, with USB interface.

Connecting a device

Connect the USB device to a USB interface, see page 282, using a suitable adapter cable.

The USB device is displayed in the device list.

WiFi hotspot

Principle

Compatible devices with a WLAN interface can use the vehicle's Internet connection via the WiFi hotspot.

General

Up to 10 devices can be connected at the same time using the WiFi hotspot.

Operating requirements

- ▷ Compatible device, see page 71, with activated WiFi interface.
- ▷ WiFi is activated in the vehicle.
- ▷ Internet usage is activated in the vehicle.

- ▷ Registration and, if necessary, data contract with a service provider.
- ▷ Standby state is switched on.

Connecting a device to the Internet via a WiFi hotspot

Registration will be required and a data volume may need to be purchased from a service provider when you first connect to the Internet via the WiFi hotspot.

Data volumes can be purchased via the connected mobile telephone or the ConnectedDrive Store, depending on the country version.

Via iDrive:

1. "COM"
2. "Mobile devices"
3. Tilt the Controller to the right.
4. "New device"
5. "Internet, apps"

The hotspot name and hotspot code are displayed on the Control Display.
6. Activate Internet usage via WiFi if necessary.

"Open settings"
7. Activate Internet usage.

"Internet use"
8. Tilt the Controller to the left.
9. On the mobile device, search for WiFi networks. Select the network name on the device.
10. Enter the hotspot code on the device and connect.

The device is displayed in the device list.

A QR code is also displayed on the Control Display. Alternatively, this QR code can be used to pair the mobile device with the hotspot.

This data volume is used by all devices connected via the hotspot.

Deactivating Internet usage via the WiFi hotspot

Internet usage may be deactivated if the data volume is used up, for example.

Via iDrive:

1. "COM"
2. "Mobile devices"
3. Tilt the Controller to the right.
4. "Settings"
5. "Internet use"
6. Select the desired setting.

Apple CarPlay preparation

Principle

CarPlay makes it possible to operate certain functions of a compatible Apple iPhone by Siri voice operation and using iDrive.

Operating requirements

- ▷ Compatible iPhone, see page 71.

iPhone 5 or later with iOS 7.1 or later.
- ▷ Corresponding mobile radio contract.
- ▷ Bluetooth, WLAN and Siri voice operation are activated on the iPhone.
- ▷ Booking of the ConnectedDrive service: Apple CarPlay preparation.

Switching on Bluetooth and CarPlay

Via iDrive:

1. "COM"
2. "Mobile devices"
3. Tilt the Controller to the right.
4. "Settings"
5. Set the following setting:

"Apple CarPlay"
6. Activate the function.

Registering iPhone with CarPlay

Via iDrive:

1. "COM"
2. "Mobile devices"
3. Tilt the Controller to the right.
4. "New device"
5. "Phone calls and audio"
The Bluetooth name of the vehicle is displayed in the Control Display.
6. On the mobile device, search for Bluetooth devices in the vicinity and select the vehicle.
A control number is displayed.
7. Compare the control number shown on the Control Display with the control number on the mobile device display, and confirm that the two match.
8. Select CarPlay:
"Confirm note and connect with Apple CarPlay"

The iPhone is connected to the vehicle and displayed in the device list.

Operation

For further information, see the integrated Owner's Handbook or the Owner's Handbook for Navigation, Entertainment and Communication.

Frequently Asked Questions

For the mobile device to work correctly, the pre-conditions have to be met and all the necessary steps have to be carried out in the correct order. Nevertheless, there may still be instances where the mobile device does not function as expected.

In such cases, the following explanations may provide assistance:

The iPhone has already been paired with Apple CarPlay. When a new connection is established, CarPlay can no longer be selected.

- ▷ Delete the iPhone concerned from the device list.

- ▷ On the iPhone, delete the vehicle concerned from the list of saved connections under Bluetooth and under WLAN.
- ▷ Pair the iPhone as a new device.

If the steps listed have been carried out and the desired function still cannot be run: contact the hotline, a Service Partner of the manufacturer or another qualified Service Partner or a specialist workshop.

Screen Mirroring

General

Screen Mirroring enables you to display your smartphone screen on the Control Display.

Operating requirements

- ▷ Compatible smartphone, see page 71, with Screen Mirroring interface.
- ▷ Screen Mirroring is switched on in the smartphone.
- ▷ WLAN is switched on in the vehicle.

Switching on WLAN in the vehicle

Via iDrive:

1. "COM"
2. "Mobile devices"
3. Tilt the Controller to the right.
4. "Settings"
5. "WiFi"

Registering the smartphone with Screen Mirroring

Via iDrive:

1. "COM"
2. "Mobile devices"
3. Tilt the Controller to the right.
4. "New device"

- 5.  "Screen Mirroring"
The WLAN name of the vehicle is displayed in the Control Display.
- 6. On the smartphone, search for WLAN devices in the vicinity.
The WLAN name of the vehicle is shown on the display of the device. Select WLAN name of the vehicle.
- 7. Confirm the connection via iDrive.
The device is connected and displayed in the device list.

Managing mobile devices

General

- ▶ Following one-off registration, the devices are automatically detected and connected again when standby state is switched on.
- ▶ The data saved on the SIM card or in the mobile telephone – for example, contacts – is transferred to the vehicle following detection and can be used via iDrive.
- ▶ Some devices may require particular settings, for example authorisation; see the user manual of the device.

Displaying the device list

All devices registered or connected to the vehicle are displayed in the device list.

A maximum of 4 devices can be connected to the vehicle via Bluetooth and 10 devices via WLAN. A maximum of 20 devices can be detected.

Via iDrive:

- 1. "COM"
- 2. "Mobile devices"

A symbol indicates which function a device is used for. If the symbol is shown in white, there is an active connection to the vehicle with this function. The symbol is shown in grey when the device function is inactive.

Symbol	Meaning
	Telephone.
	Bluetooth audio.
	WiFi hotspot.
	Apple CarPlay.
	Screen Mirroring.

Configuring the device

Functions can be activated or deactivated on a registered or connected device.

When a function is assigned to a device, where necessary it is disabled on a device that is already connected and that device is disconnected. Observe the information on the Control Display.

Via iDrive:

- 1. "COM"
- 2. "Mobile devices"
- 3. Select the required device.
- 4. Select the desired setting:
 - ▶ "Disconnect device"
The device remains registered and can be connected again.
 - ▶ "Connect device"
Functions assigned to the device before disconnection are reassigned to the device upon reconnection. If applicable, these functions are deactivated for an already connected device.
 - ▶ "Delete device"
The device is disconnected and deleted from the device list.

Telephone priority

If two mobile telephones are connected to the vehicle, it is possible to define reconnection priorities for them.

Via iDrive:

1. "COM"
2. "Mobile devices"
3. Tilt the Controller to the right.
4. "Settings"
5. "Priorities for telephony"
6. Select the required device.
7. Turn the Controller to set the priority for the selected mobile telephone.
Move to select the desired priority.

Opening and closing

Vehicle equipment

This chapter describes all standard, country-specific and special equipment available for the model series. It may therefore describe equipment and functions which are not installed in your vehicle, for example on account of the optional equipment selected or the country variant. This also applies to safety-relevant functions and systems. Please comply with the relevant laws and regulations when using the corresponding functions and systems.

Vehicle key

General

Depending on the vehicle's equipment, two vehicle keys or one vehicle key and the BMW display key are supplied.

Each vehicle key contains a replaceable battery.

Various settings are possible for the button functions, depending on the equipment and the national-market version.

A driver profile with personalised settings can be assigned to a vehicle key.

To provide information on maintenance requirements, the service data is saved in the vehicle key.

To prevent the vehicle key from being locked in, take it with you whenever you leave the vehicle.

Safety notes

WARNING

Persons remaining in the vehicle or pets left inside can lock the doors from the inside and lock themselves in. In this case, the vehicle cannot be opened from the outside. There is a risk of

injury. Carry the vehicle key with you so that you can open the vehicle from the outside.

WARNING

On some country variants, unlocking from the inside is only possible with special knowledge.

There is a risk of injury or danger to life if persons remain in the vehicle for extended periods and are exposed to extreme temperatures as a result. Do not lock the vehicle from the outside when there is someone inside it.

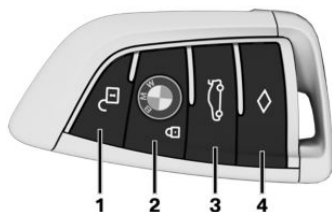
WARNING

Unsupervised children or pets in the vehicle can set the vehicle in motion and endanger themselves or other road users, for example by the following actions:

- ▷ Pressing the start/stop button.
- ▷ Releasing the parking brake.
- ▷ Opening and closing doors or windows.
- ▷ Engaging selector lever position N.
- ▷ Operating vehicle equipment.

There is a risk of accidents or injury. Do not leave children or pets unsupervised in the vehicle. When leaving the vehicle, take the vehicle key with you and lock the vehicle.

Overview



- 1 Unlocking
- 2 Locking
- 3 Without automatic operation of the tailgate:
opening the boot lid
With automatic tailgate operation: to open/
close the boot lid
- 4 Headlight courtesy delay feature

Unlocking

General

The vehicle's response when unlocked with the vehicle key depends on the following settings:

- ▶ Whether only the driver's door and the fuel filler flap or all vehicle access points are unlocked with the first press of the button.
- ▶ Whether the unlocking of the vehicle is acknowledged with a light signal or an acoustic signal.
- ▶ Whether the welcome light is switched on when the vehicle is unlocked.

Unlocking the vehicle



Press the button on the vehicle key.

If only the driver's door and the fuel filler flap have been unlocked due to the settings, press the button on the vehicle key again to unlock the other vehicle access points.

The following functions are also carried out:

- ▶ If a driver profile has been assigned to the vehicle key, this driver profile is activated and the settings saved in it are configured.
- ▶ The interior light is switched on unless it was switched off manually.
- ▶ Folded-in exterior mirrors are folded out.
If the exterior mirrors were folded in using the button in the interior, they are not folded out when the vehicle is unlocked.
- ▶ With anti-theft system: The anti-theft system is switched off.
- ▶ With alarm system: The alarm system is switched off.

The vehicle is operational after one of the front doors is opened.

The lighting functions may depend on the ambient brightness.

Comfort opening



Keep the button on the vehicle key pressed after unlocking.

The windows and the Glass Roof with sun guard are opened for as long as the button on the vehicle key is pressed.

Locking

General

The vehicle's response when locked with the vehicle key depends on the following settings:

- ▶ Whether locking of the vehicle is acknowledged with a light signal or an acoustic signal.
- ▶ Whether the exterior mirrors are automatically folded in when the vehicle is locked. If the hazard warning lights are switched on, the exterior mirrors are not folded in.
- ▶ Whether the headlight courtesy delay feature is activated when the vehicle is locked.

Locking the vehicle

1. Close the driver's door.

2. Press the  button on the vehicle key.

The following functions are carried out:

- ▷ All the doors, the boot lid and fuel filler flap are locked.
- ▷ With anti-theft system: The anti-theft system is switched on. This prevents the doors from being unlocked using the locking buttons or the door openers.
- ▷ With alarm system: The alarm system is switched on.

If the drive-ready state is still switched on when locking, the vehicle horn sounds twice. In this case, switch off the drive-ready state using start/stop button.

Comfort closing

Safety note

WARNING

Parts of the body can become trapped when the comfort closing feature is operated. There is a risk of injury. When the comfort closing feature is operating, make sure that the area of movement is kept clear.

Closing



Keep the button on the vehicle key pressed after locking.

The windows and the Glass Roof with sun guard are closed for as long as the button on the vehicle key is pressed.

The exterior mirrors are folded in, provided that they were not folded in when the vehicle was locked. If the hazard warning lights are switched on, the exterior mirrors are not folded in.

Switching on the interior light and exterior lights



With the vehicle locked, press the button on the vehicle key.

The function is not available for the first 10 seconds after locking.

- ▷ The interior light is switched on unless it was switched off manually. To switch the interior light on/off manually, see page 172.
- ▷ Depending on the settings, the exterior lights, see page 168, are switched on.

The lighting functions may depend on the ambient brightness.

Boot lid

General

To prevent the vehicle key from being locked in, do not place it in the boot.

It is possible to set whether the doors are unlocked when the boot lid is opened with the vehicle key.

When the trailer socket is in use, the boot lid cannot be opened with the vehicle key.

Safety notes

WARNING

Parts of the body can become trapped when the boot lid is operated. There is a risk of injury. When opening and closing, make sure that the area of movement of the boot lid is kept clear.

NOTE

The boot lid swings rearwards and upwards when opened. There is a risk of material damage. When opening and closing, make sure that the area of movement of the boot lid is kept clear.

Opening



Press and hold the button on the vehicle key for approximately 1 second.

On some equipment versions, the doors are also unlocked each time.

With automatic tailgate operation: closing



Press and hold the button on the vehicle key until the boot lid has closed.

Releasing the button stops the closing operation. If the doors were not unlocked, the boot lid is locked again as soon as it is closed.

Switching on the headlight courtesy delay feature

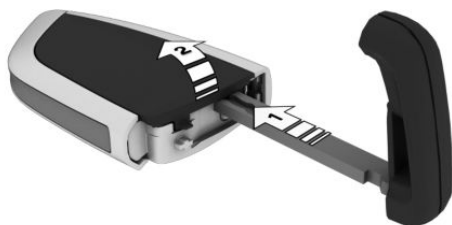


Press and hold the button on the vehicle key for approximately 1 second.

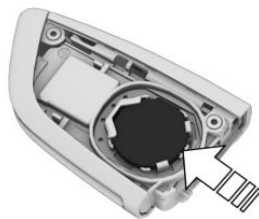
It is possible to adjust the duration of the headlight courtesy delay feature, see page 168.

Replacing the battery

1. Remove the integrated key from the vehicle key, see page 86.
2. Place integrated key under the battery compartment cover, arrow 1, and pry off the cover with a lever motion of the integrated key, arrow 2.



3. Use a pointed object to push the battery in the direction of the arrow and lift it out.



4. Insert a new type CR 2032 battery with the positive side facing upwards.
5. Press the cover back into position.
6. Push the integrated key into the vehicle key until the integrated key engages.



Dispose of old batteries at a Service Partner of the manufacturer or another qualified Service Partner or a specialist workshop or hand them in to an authorised collecting point.

Additional vehicle keys

Additional vehicle keys are available from a Service Partner of the manufacturer or another qualified Service Partner or an authorised workshop.

Loss of vehicle keys

A lost vehicle key can be blocked and replaced by a Service Partner of the manufacturer or another qualified Service Partner or an authorised workshop.

If a driver profile has been assigned to the lost vehicle key, the connection to this vehicle key must be removed. A new vehicle key can then be assigned to the driver profile.

Malfunction

General

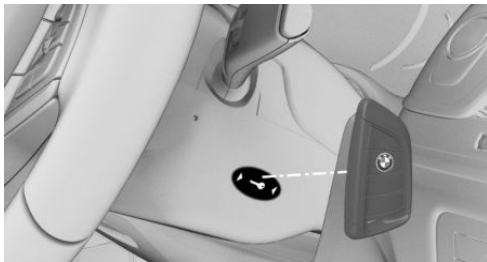
A Check Control message is shown.

It may be difficult for the vehicle to detect the vehicle key in some conditions, including the following:

- ▷ The battery of the vehicle key is discharged.
- ▷ Disruption of the radio link by transmission masts or other equipment transmitting powerful signals.
- ▷ Shielding of the vehicle key by metallic objects.
Do not transport the vehicle key together with metallic objects.
- ▷ Disruption of the radio link by mobile telephones or other electronic devices in the immediate vicinity of the vehicle key.
Do not transport the vehicle key together with electronic devices.
- ▷ Interference with the radio transmission caused by the charging of mobile devices, for example a mobile phone.
- ▷ The vehicle key is located in the immediate vicinity of the wireless charging dock.
Place the vehicle key somewhere else.

If there is a malfunction, the vehicle can be unlocked and locked from the outside with the integrated key, see page 86.

Switching on drive-ready state via the special ID feature of the vehicle key



Drive-ready state cannot be switched on if the vehicle key has not been detected.

If this happens, proceed as follows:

1. Hold the rear side of the vehicle key against the mark on the steering column. Pay attention to the display in the instrument cluster.
2. If the vehicle key is detected:
Switch on drive-ready state within 10 seconds.

If the vehicle key is not detected, change the position of the vehicle key slightly and repeat the procedure.

Frequently Asked Questions

What provisions can be made to enable a vehicle to be opened if the vehicle key has accidentally been locked inside the vehicle?

- ▷ The Remote Services of the BMW Connected app can be used to lock and unlock a vehicle.
This requires an active BMW Connected-Drive contract and the BMW Connected app must be installed on a smartphone.
- ▷ Unlocking of the vehicle can be requested via the BMW ConnectedDrive call centre.
This requires an active BMW Connected-Drive contract.

BMW display key

General

The BMW display key is supplied with an additional mechanical key. When using the display key, you should also carry the mechanical key, for example in your wallet or purse. The mechanical key is used in the same way as the integrated key, see page 86.

The display key supports all functions of the standard vehicle key.

The following functions are also available:

- ▷ Call up status of doors and windows.
- ▷ Call up status of the anti-theft alarm.

- Call up service information.
- Call up range with the available fuel.
- With auxiliary heating: operate auxiliary heating.

Without auxiliary heating: operate independent ventilation.

Safety notes

WARNING

Persons remaining in the vehicle or pets left inside can lock the doors from the inside and lock themselves in. In this case, the vehicle cannot be opened from the outside. There is a risk of injury. Carry the vehicle key with you so that you can open the vehicle from the outside.

WARNING

On some country variants, unlocking from the inside is only possible with special knowledge. There is a risk of injury or danger to life if persons remain in the vehicle for extended periods and are exposed to extreme temperatures as a result. Do not lock the vehicle from the outside when there is someone inside it.

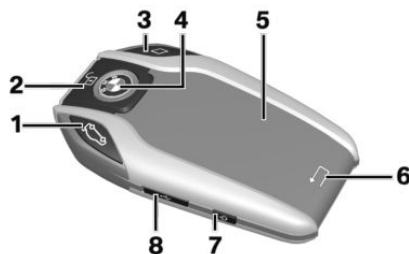
WARNING

Unsupervised children or pets in the vehicle can set the vehicle in motion and endanger themselves or other road users, for example by the following actions:

- Pressing the start/stop button.
- Releasing the parking brake.
- Opening and closing doors or windows.
- Engaging selector lever position N.
- Operating vehicle equipment.

There is a risk of accidents or injury. Do not leave children or pets unsupervised in the vehicle. When leaving the vehicle, take the vehicle key with you and lock the vehicle.

Overview



- 1 Without automatic operation of the tailgate: opening the boot lid
With automatic tailgate operation: to open/close the boot lid
- 2 Unlocking
- 3 Headlight courtesy delay feature
- 4 Locking
- 5 Display
- 6 Back
- 7 Switch display on/off
- 8 Micro-USB charge point

Reception range

Number of available functions of the display key depends on distance to vehicle.

- In close reception range, all functions of the display key are available.
- In the extended reception range, the status information can be called up.

With auxiliary heating: auxiliary heating can be operated.

Without auxiliary heating: independent ventilation can be operated.

- ▶ Outside reception range, it is possible to display last status information transmitted from vehicle.
- 🔌 Symbol is shown on the display if one of the buttons is pressed outside the reception range.

Display

General

Display is divided into the status bar at top, information area and status bar at bottom.

Upper status bar

Status bar at top shows following information:

- ▶  /  vehicle locked/vehicle unlocked.
- ▶ Time set in vehicle.
- ▶  State of charge of the battery of the display key.

Information area

In the information area, the information can be called up and the additional functions carried out. If information area contains more than one page, page indicators are displayed under information.

○●○ Indicator for current side is filled in.

Swipe to the left or right to switch between the sides.

If further information can be accessed on a page, tap on the corresponding symbol.

⏮ Tap symbol below the display to return to the higher-level page.

Lower status bar

The lower status bar shows whether the display key is within the reception range.

- ▶ "Connected": the display key is located in the reception range.
- ▶ "Updated": the display key is located outside of the reception range. It indicates when the last data transfer from the vehicle took place.

Switching off/on

The content of the display is hidden automatically after a brief time to reduce battery power consumption.

Hide the information shown on the display manually:

Press the button on the left of the display key.

Show content on the display:

1. Press the button on the left of the display key.
2. Next, swipe your finger from the bottom to the top to cancel the screen lock.

Switch off the display to increase the battery life:

1. Unlock the screen if necessary.
2. Press and hold the button on the left side of the display key for longer than 4 seconds.
3. "OK"

Switch on the display:

Press the button on the left of the display key.

Operating principle

There are four main menus via which sub-menus can be accessed.

Main menu	Information/function
"Security information"	 /  Status of the doors. Status of the alarm system. After alarm triggering: date, time and reason for the alarm triggering.
	 Status of the windows. Status of the Glass Roof.
"Vehicle information"	Maintenance displays of the Condition Based Service CBS. Status of the parking lights.

Main menu	Information/function
"Range information"	Range with the available fuel.
"Preconditioning setting"	With auxiliary heating: operate auxiliary heating. Without auxiliary heating: operate independent ventilation.

Battery of the display key

General

Comply with the following notes:

- If the charge state of the display key battery decreases, the display is automatically switched off. The battery must be charged so the display can be switched on again. Functional capability of standard buttons is retained until the battery is completely flat.
- Charge the battery for at least three hours before using the display key for the first time or if the key has not been used for an extended period.
- The display key can be used during charging via the USB port. If the battery is fully discharged, it can take some time before the display key can be used again.
- Due to the large variety of USB devices available on the market, operation via the vehicle cannot be ensured for every charger. The charging time depends on the charger used.
- Charging via the USB port can cause the charger and the display key to heat up.

Charging in the wireless charging dock can cause the dock and the display key to heat up.

At higher temperatures, a reduction in the charging current can occur due to the display key; in exceptional cases, the charging process is temporarily interrupted.

- When inserting the display key into the wireless charging dock, make sure there are no

objects between it and the wireless charging dock.

Safety note

WARNING

When charging a Qi-compatible device in the wireless charging dock, any metal objects located between the device and the dock can become very hot. If storage media or electronic cards, for example smart cards, cards with magnetic strips or cards for transmitting signals, are placed between the device and the dock, this may impair card function. There is a risk of injury and material damage. When charging mobile devices, make sure there are no objects between the device and the dock.

Charging

Via USB

Connect the display key to a USB port using the micro-USB charging connection.

In the centre console



1. Open the cover of the dock.
2. Place the display key in the middle of the wireless charging dock in front of the cupholders.

Make sure that the display is pointing upwards.

3. Close the cover of the dock.

Malfunction

General

A Check Control message is shown.

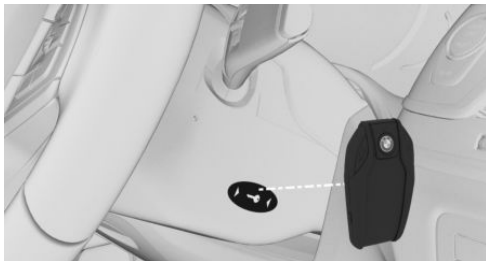
Detection of the BMW display key by the vehicle may be disrupted by the following circumstances, amongst others:

- ▷ The battery of the display key is flat.
- ▷ Disruption of the radio link by transmission masts or other equipment transmitting powerful signals.
- ▷ Shielding of the display key by metallic objects.
- ▷ Disruption of the radio link by mobile telephones or other electronic devices in the immediate vicinity.
- ▷ Interference with the radio transmission caused by the charging of mobile devices, for example a mobile phone.

Do not transport the display key together with metallic objects or electronic devices.

If there is a malfunction, the vehicle can be unlocked and locked from the outside with the mechanical key.

Switching on drive-ready state by special ID of the BMW display key



The drive-ready state cannot be switched on if the display key has not been detected.

If this happens, proceed as follows:

1. Hold the back of the display key against the mark on the steering column. Pay attention to the display in the instrument cluster.

2. If the display key is detected:

Switch on drive-ready state within 10 seconds.

If the display key is not detected, change the position of the display key slightly and repeat the procedure.

Resetting the BMW display key

If the charged display key can no longer be switched on, or the display no longer responds to inputs, the display key can be reset.

Press and hold the following buttons on the display key simultaneously for at least 10 seconds until the display switches off and on again:



Integrated key

General

With the integrated key, the driver's door can be unlocked and locked without the vehicle key.

The integrated key also fits in the glove box.

Use the integrated key to operate the key switch for front passenger airbags.

Safety notes

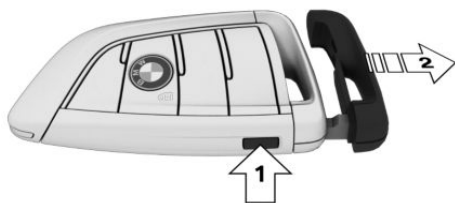
WARNING

On some country variants, unlocking from the inside is only possible with special knowledge.

There is a risk of injury or danger to life if persons remain in the vehicle for extended periods and are exposed to extreme temperatures as a result. Do not lock the vehicle from the outside when there is someone inside it.

NOTE

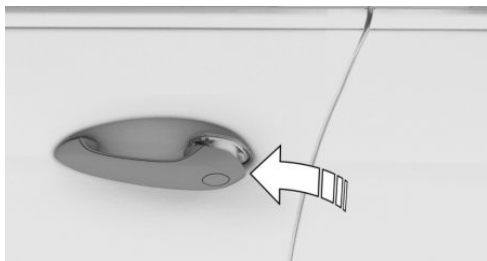
The door lock is firmly connected to the door. The door handle can be moved. Pulling the door handle when the integrated key is inserted can damage the paint or the integrated key. There is a risk of material damage. Pull out the integrated key before pulling on the outer door handle.

Removing

Press the button, arrow 1, and pull out the integrated key, arrow 2.

Unlocking/locking using the door lock

1. Pull the door handle outwards with one hand and hold it.

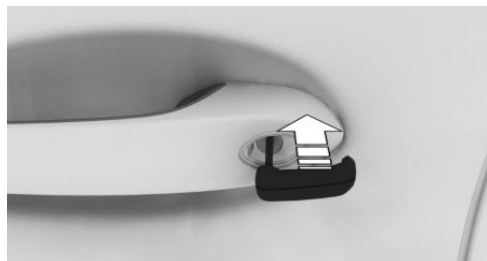


2. Slide one finger of your other hand under the cover from behind and push the cover outwards.

Support the cover with your thumb, to stop it falling out of the door handle.



3. Remove the cover.
4. Unlock or lock the door lock with the integrated key.



The other doors must be unlocked or locked from the inside.

Alarm system

The switched-on alarm system is triggered when the door is opened after being unlocked via the door lock.

The alarm system is not switched on if the vehicle is locked with the integrated key.

Central locking buttons**General**

In the event of an accident of sufficient severity, the vehicle is automatically unlocked. The hazard warning lights and interior lights illuminate.

Overview



Central locking buttons.

Locking



Press the button with the front doors closed.

- ▷ The fuel filler flap remains unlocked.
- ▷ Locking does not activate the vehicle's anti-theft protection system.

Unlocking



Press the button.

Opening

- ▷  Press the button to unlock all the doors together.
Pull the door opener above the armrest.
- ▷ Turn the door opener on the door to be opened. The other doors remain locked.

Comfort Access

Principle

This feature allows you to access the vehicle without having to operate the vehicle key.

Simply having the vehicle key with you, for example in your trouser pocket, is sufficient.

The vehicle automatically recognises the vehicle key when it is in the immediate vicinity or inside the vehicle.

General

Comfort Access supports the following functions:

- ▷ Unlocking and locking the vehicle using the door handle.
- ▷ Comfort closing.
- ▷ Opening of the boot lid.
- ▷ Contactless opening and closing of the boot lid.

Operating requirements

- ▷ To lock the vehicle, the vehicle key must be located outside the vehicle in the vicinity of the doors.
- ▷ The vehicle can only be unlocked and locked again after approximately 2 seconds.

Unlocking

General

The behaviour of the vehicle when unlocked via Comfort Access depends on the following settings:

- ▷ Whether the unlocking of the vehicle is acknowledged with a light signal or an acoustic signal.
- ▷ Whether the welcome light is switched on when the vehicle is unlocked.

Unlocking the vehicle



Fully grip the handle of a vehicle door.

The following functions are also carried out:

- ▶ If a driver profile has been assigned to the vehicle key, this driver profile is activated and the settings saved in it are configured.
- ▶ The interior light is switched on unless it was switched off manually.
- ▶ Folded-in exterior mirrors are folded out.
If the exterior mirrors were folded in using the button in the interior, they are not folded out when the vehicle is unlocked.
- ▶ With anti-theft system: The anti-theft system is switched off.
- ▶ With alarm system: The alarm system is switched off.

Locking

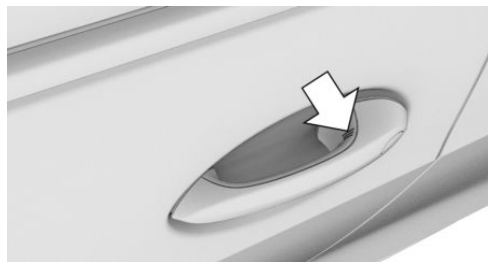
General

The behaviour of the vehicle when locked via Comfort Access depends on the following settings:

- ▶ Whether locking of the vehicle is acknowledged with a light signal or an acoustic signal.
- ▶ Whether the exterior mirrors are automatically folded in when the vehicle is locked. If the hazard warning lights are switched on, the exterior mirrors are not folded in.
- ▶ Whether the headlight courtesy delay feature is activated when the vehicle is locked.

Locking the vehicle

Close the driver's door.



With your finger, touch the grooved area on the handle of a closed vehicle door for approximately 1 second, without gripping the door handle.

The following functions are carried out:

- ▶ All the doors, the boot lid and fuel filler flap are locked.
- ▶ With anti-theft system: The anti-theft system is switched on. This prevents the doors from being unlocked using the locking buttons or the door openers.
- ▶ With alarm system: The alarm system is switched on.

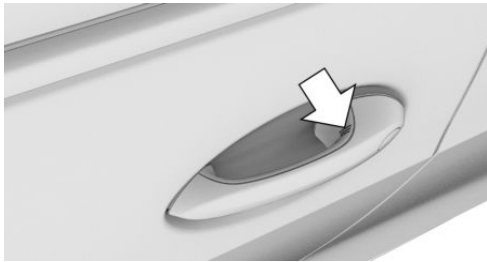
Comfort closing

Safety note

WARNING

Parts of the body can become trapped when the comfort closing feature is operated. There is a risk of injury. When the comfort closing feature is operating, make sure that the area of movement is kept clear.

Closing



With your finger, touch the knurled area on the handle of a closed vehicle door and keep your finger there without gripping the door handle.

In addition to locking, the windows and the Glass Roof with sun guard are closed.

The exterior mirrors are folded in, provided that they were not folded in when the vehicle was locked. If the hazard warning lights are switched on, the exterior mirrors are not folded in.

Opening the boot lid

General

If the boot lid is opened using Comfort Access, locked doors are not unlocked.

To prevent the vehicle key from being locked in, do not place it in the boot.

Safety notes

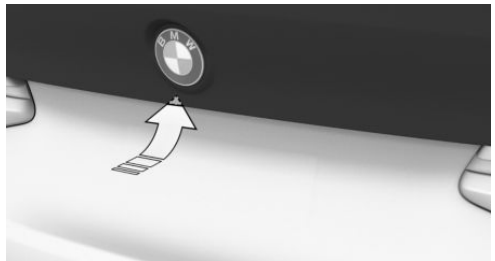
WARNING

Parts of the body can become trapped when the boot lid is operated. There is a risk of injury. When opening and closing, make sure that the area of movement of the boot lid is kept clear.

NOTE

The boot lid swings rearwards and upwards when opened. There is a risk of material damage. When opening and closing, make sure that the area of movement of the boot lid is kept clear.

Opening



Press the button on the outside of the boot lid.

Contactless opening and closing of the boot lid

Principle

The boot lid can be opened contactlessly, provided you are carrying the vehicle key with you. With automatic operation of the tailgate, it can also be closed contactlessly. Two sensors detect a directed foot movement in the central rear area and the boot lid is opened or closed.

General

To prevent the vehicle key from being locked in, do not place it in the boot.

If the vehicle key is within the sensor range, the boot lid can be accidentally opened or closed by an unintentional or presumed foot movement.

The sensor range extends to approximately 1.50 m, 5 ft behind the rear area.

If the boot lid is opened with a contactless method, locked doors are not unlocked.

Safety notes

WARNING

When operating the boot lid contactlessly, there is a risk of touching vehicle parts, for example the hot exhaust system. There is a risk of injury. Make sure you are standing securely as you move your foot, and do not touch the vehicle.

WARNING

Parts of the body can become trapped when the boot lid is operated. There is a risk of injury. When opening and closing, make sure that the area of movement of the boot lid is kept clear.

NOTE

The boot lid swings rearwards and upwards when opened. There is a risk of material damage. When opening and closing, make sure that the area of movement of the boot lid is kept clear.

Correct foot movement

1. Stand in the centre behind the vehicle, approximately an arm's length away from the rear of the vehicle.
2. Kick your foot underneath the vehicle and immediately pull it back. Your leg must move across the ranges of both sensors.



Opening

Perform the foot movement described previously.

The hazard warning lights flash before the boot lid opens.

With automatic tailgate: Moving your foot again will stop the opening procedure, and moving it one more time after that will close the boot lid again.

Closing

Contactless closing of the boot lid is only possible with automatic operation of the boot lid.

Perform the foot movement described previously.

The hazard warning lights flash and an acoustic signal sounds.

Moving your foot again will stop the closing operation, and moving it one more time after that will open the boot lid again.

Malfunction

It may be difficult for the vehicle to detect the vehicle key in some conditions, including the following:

- ▷ The battery of the vehicle key is discharged. To replace the battery, see page 81.
- ▷ Disruption of the radio link by transmission masts or other equipment transmitting powerful signals.
- ▷ Shielding of the vehicle key by metallic objects.

Do not transport the vehicle key together with metallic objects.

- ▷ Disruption of the radio link by mobile telephones or other electronic devices in the immediate vicinity of the vehicle key.

Do not transport the vehicle key together with electronic devices.

Wet or snowy conditions may interfere with the locking request recognition function on the door handles.

If a fault occurs, unlock and lock the vehicle with the buttons on the vehicle key or with the integrated key, see page 86.

Boot lid

General

To prevent the vehicle key from being locked in, do not place it in the boot.

When the trailer socket is in use, the boot lid cannot be opened with the vehicle key or with the button in the interior.

Safety notes

WARNING

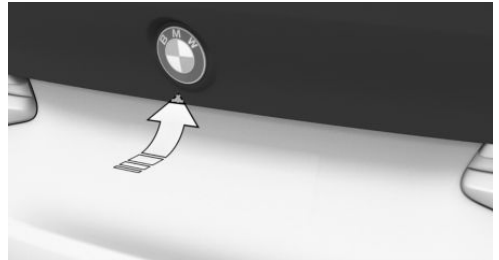
Parts of the body can become trapped when the boot lid is operated. There is a risk of injury. When opening and closing, make sure that the area of movement of the boot lid is kept clear.

NOTE

The boot lid swings rearwards and upwards when opened. There is a risk of material damage. When opening and closing, make sure that the area of movement of the boot lid is kept clear.

Without automatic operation of the tailgate: opening and closing

Opening from outside



- ▷ Unlock the vehicle, then press the button on the outside of the boot lid.
- ▷ With Comfort Access: have the vehicle key about your person and press the button on the outside of the boot lid.
- ▷  Press and hold the button on the vehicle key for approximately 1 second.

When unlocking with the vehicle key, see page 80, the doors may also be unlocked.

Depending on the country: opening from inside

-  Press the button in the driver's door storage compartment.

Closing



Pull the boot lid down using the handle recess.

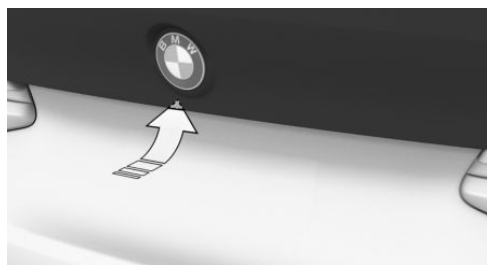


With Comfort Access: When the driver's door is closed, press the button on the inside of the boot lid to lock an unlocked vehicle before closing the boot lid.

With automatic operation of the tailgate: opening and closing

Opening

From outside



- Unlock the vehicle, then press the button on the outside of the boot lid.
- With Comfort Access: have the vehicle key about your person and press the button on the outside of the boot lid.
-  Press and hold the button on the vehicle key for approximately 1 second.

If applicable, the doors are also unlocked. To open with the vehicle key, see page 80.

From inside



Press the button in the driver's door storage compartment.

Cancelling the opening operation

The opening procedure is interrupted:

- If the vehicle begins to move.
- By pressing the button on the outside of the boot lid. Pressing again closes the boot lid.

- By pressing the button on the inside of the boot lid. Pressing again closes the boot lid.
- By pressing the button on the vehicle key. Pressing again resumes the opening operation.

Pressing and holding the button closes the boot lid again.

- By pressing or pulling the button in the driver's door. Pressing again resumes the opening operation.

Closing

From outside

- Press and hold the  button on the vehicle key until the boot lid has closed. Releasing the button stops the movement.
-  Press the button on the inside of the boot lid.

With Comfort Access:

-  Press the button on the inside of the boot lid.

The vehicle is locked after the boot lid has been closed. To do so, the driver's door must be closed and the vehicle key must be outside the vehicle in the vicinity of the boot lid.

From inside



Pull and hold the button in the driver's door storage compartment.

For this function, the vehicle key must be inside the vehicle.

Cancelling the closing operation

The closing procedure is interrupted in the following situations:

- When driving off suddenly.
- By pressing the button on the outside of the boot lid. Pressing again re-opens the boot lid.

- ▷ By pressing the button on the inside of the boot lid. Pressing again re-opens the boot lid.
- ▷ By releasing the button on the vehicle key. Pressing the button again and holding it down resumes the closing operation.
- ▷ By releasing the button in the driver's door. Pulling the button again and holding it in this position resumes the closing operation.

Malfunction

In the event of an electrical fault, operate the unlocked boot lid manually; do so slowly and without sudden movements.

Boot lid emergency release



Pull the handle in the boot.

This will unlock the boot lid.

Soft Close Automatic

Safety note

WARNING

Parts of the body can become trapped when the doors are operated. There is a risk of injury. When opening and closing, make sure that the area of movement of the doors is kept clear.

Closing

To close, push the door gently.

The closing operation is then performed automatically.

Settings

General

Various settings are possible for opening and closing, depending on the equipment and the country specifications.

These settings are saved for the current driver profile.

Unlocking and locking

Doors

Via iDrive:

1. "CAR"
2. "Settings"
3. "Key button assignment"
4.  Select the symbol.
5. Select the desired setting:

- ▷ "Driver's door only"

Only the driver's door and fuel filler flap are unlocked. Pressing again unlocks the entire vehicle.

- ▷ "All doors"

The entire vehicle is unlocked.

Vehicle acknowledgement signals

Via iDrive:

1. "CAR"
2. "Settings"
3. "Doors/Vehicle access"
4. Deactivate or activate desired acknowledgement signals:

- ▷ "Flash for lock/unlock"

Unlocking is acknowledged by flashing twice, locking by flashing once.

- ▷ With alarm system:

"Acoustic signal for lock/unlock"

Unlocking is acknowledged by an acoustic signal sounding twice, locking by the acoustic signal sounding once.

Automatic folding of the mirrors

Via iDrive:

1. "CAR"
2. "Settings"
3. "Doors/Vehicle access"
4. "Fold mirrors in when locked"

The exterior mirrors are folded in automatically when the vehicle is locked.

Automatic unlocking

Via iDrive:

1. "CAR"
2. "Settings"
3. "Doors/Vehicle access"
4. "Unlock at end of journey"

After drive-ready state has been switched off by pressing the start/stop button, the locked vehicle is automatically unlocked.

Automatic locking

Via iDrive:

1. "CAR"
2. "Settings"
3. "Doors/Vehicle access"
4. Select the desired setting:

- ▷ "Lock automatically"

The vehicle is automatically locked again after a short while if no door is opened after unlocking.

- ▷ "Lock after pulling away"

On driving off, the vehicle is locked automatically.

Boot lid

Boot lid and doors

Depending on the equipment and the country specifications, these settings may not be available.

Via iDrive:

1. "CAR"
2. "Settings"
3. "Key button assignment"
4.  Select the symbol.
5. Select the desired setting:

- ▷ "Tailgate"

The boot lid is opened.

- ▷ "Tailgate and door(s)"

The boot lid is opened and the doors are unlocked.

Closing the Glass Roof automatically

Via iDrive:

1. "CAR"
2. "Settings"
3. "Doors/Vehicle access"
4. "Automatic roof closing"

If the vehicle was parked with the Glass Roof open, the Glass Roof will be automatically moved to the raised position when it starts to rain.

Establishing rest state after opening the front doors

Via iDrive:

1. "CAR"
2. "Settings"
3. "Doors/Vehicle access"
4. "Switch off after door opening"

Rest state, see page 37, is established when the front doors are opened.

Alarm system

General

The alarm system responds to the following changes when the vehicle is locked:

- ▷ A door, the bonnet or the boot lid is opened.
- ▷ Movements inside the vehicle.
- ▷ A change in the vehicle's incline, for instance if an attempt is made to jack it up and steal the wheels or to raise it prior to towing away.
- ▷ An interruption in the power supply from the battery.
- ▷ Improper use of the socket for on-board diagnosis OBD.
- ▷ The vehicle is locked while a device is connected to the socket for on-board diagnosis OBD.

The alarm system indicates these changes visually and audibly:

- ▷ Audible alarm:
Depending on local regulations, the acoustic alarm may be suppressed.
- ▷ Visual alarm:
By flashing of the hazard warning lights and, if applicable, the headlights.

To safeguard the function of the alarm system, do not modify the system.

Switching on/off

The alarm system is switched off and on at the same time as the vehicle is unlocked and locked with the vehicle key or Comfort Access.

Opening the doors when the alarm system is switched on

The alarm system is triggered on opening a door if the door has been unlocked using the integrated key in the door lock.

Opening the boot lid with the alarm system switched on

The boot lid can be opened even with the alarm system switched on.

On closing the boot lid, it is locked again and monitored, as long as the doors are locked. The hazard warning lights flash once.

Indicator lamp on the rear-view mirror



- ▷ Indicator lamp flashes every 2 seconds:
The alarm system is switched on.
- ▷ Indicator lamp flashes for approximately 10 seconds before it flashes every 2 seconds:
The interior movement detector and tilt alarm sensor are not active because the doors, bonnet or boot lid are not closed correctly. Correctly closed access points are secured.
If the open access points are then closed, the interior protection and tilt alarm sensor are switched on.
- ▷ The indicator lamp extinguishes after the vehicle has been unlocked:
No attempt has been made to tamper with the vehicle.

- ▶ The indicator lamp flashes after unlocking until drive-ready state is switched on, but for no longer than approximately 5 minutes:
The alarm has been triggered.

Tilt alarm sensor

The incline of the vehicle is monitored.

The alarm system responds, for example when there is an attempt to steal a wheel or when towing away.

Interior movement detector

To ensure perfect functioning, the windows and Glass Roof must be closed.

Avoiding false alarms

General

The tilt alarm sensor and the interior movement detector may trigger an alarm without any unauthorised activity taking place.

Possible situations for an unwanted alarm:

- ▶ In washing bays or car washes.
- ▶ In two-level garages.
- ▶ During transport via motorail, car ferry or trailer.
- ▶ When there are pets in the vehicle.
- ▶ When the vehicle is locked after starting to refuel.

The tilt alarm sensor and interior protection can be switched off for such situations.

Switching off the tilt alarm sensor and interior movement detector



Within 10 seconds of locking the vehicle, press the button on the vehicle key.

The indicator lamp illuminates for approximately 2 seconds and then flashes again.

The tilt alarm sensor and the interior movement detector are switched off until the next time the vehicle is locked.

Stopping the alarm

- ▶ Unlock the vehicle with the vehicle key.
- ▶ Unlock the vehicle with the integrated key and switch on drive-ready state using the special ID feature of the vehicle key, see page 81.
- ▶ With Comfort Access: fully grip the handle of the driver's or front passenger door while carrying the vehicle key.

Power window switches

General

The windows can be opened and closed from outside with the vehicle key.

With Comfort Access: The windows can be closed from outside using Comfort Access.

Safety note



WARNING

Parts of the body can become trapped when the windows are operated. There is a risk of injury or material damage. When opening and closing, make sure that the area of movement of the windows is kept clear.

Overview



Power window switches



Safety switch

Operating requirements

The windows can be operated under the following conditions.

- ▶ Standby state is switched on.
- ▶ Drive-ready state is switched on.
- ▶ For a short while after rest state has been established.

The vehicle key must be in the vehicle interior.

Opening

- ▶  Push the switch as far as the resistance point.

The window opens for as long as the switch is held.

- ▶  Push the switch past the resistance point.

The window is opened automatically. Pressing the switch again stops the movement.

Closing

- ▶  Pull the switch as far as the resistance point.

The window closes for as long as the switch is held.

- ▶  Pull the switch past the resistance point.

The window closes automatically if the door is closed. Pulling the switch again stops the movement.

Anti-trap mechanism

Principle

The anti-trap mechanism prevents objects or parts of the body from becoming trapped between the door frame and window while a window is being closed.

General

If resistance or a blockage is detected while a window is being closed, the closing operation is interrupted.

The window is opened slightly.

Safety note

WARNING

Accessories on the windows, for example aerials, can impair the anti-trap mechanism. There is a risk of injury. Do not attach any accessories within the area of movement of the windows.

Closing without the anti-trap mechanism

If an external hazard or ice prevents you from closing the windows normally, proceed as follows:

1.  Pull the switch past the resistance point and hold it there.

The window is closed but with limited anti-trap function. If the closing force exceeds a certain level, the closing operation is interrupted.

2.  Pull the switch past the resistance point again within approximately 4 seconds and hold it in this position.

The window is closed with no anti-trap function.

Safety switch

Principle

The safety switch can be used to prevent children from opening and closing the rear windows by means of the switches in the rear, for example.

In the event of an accident of sufficient severity, the safety function is automatically switched off.

Switching on/off



Press the button.

The LED is illuminated when the safety function is switched on.

Roller sunblinds for the rear side windows

Safety note

NOTE

Objects placed on the parcel shelf may damage the roller sunblind while the roller sunblind is being operated. There is a risk of material damage. During operation, make sure that the area of movement of the roller sunblind is clear.

Overview



Button for the roller sunblind.

Operation



Press the button to open the closed roller sunblind or to close the opened roller sunblind.

Pressing the button again during the movement moves the roller sunblind in the opposite direction.

System limits

If the roller sunblind can no longer be moved after a number of operations in immediate succession, the overheating protection mechanism is active. The system is blocked for a limited time to prevent overheating. Allow the system to cool down.

The roller sunblind cannot be moved at low interior temperatures.

Roller sunblinds, rear side windows

Safety note

WARNING

When the roller sunblinds are closed and the windows opened, the roller sunblinds can be heavily stressed during the journey due to the air stream. The roller sunblinds can become damaged and endanger vehicle occupants. There is a risk of injury. Do not open the windows during the journey when the roller sunblinds are closed.

Pull the roller sunblind out with the loop and hang into the holder.

Electric glass roof

General

The glass roof and the sun guard are operated using the same switch.

The Glass Roof can be opened and closed from outside with the vehicle key.

With Comfort Access: The Glass Roof can be closed from outside using Comfort Access.

Safety note

WARNING

Parts of the body may become trapped when the Glass Roof is operated. There is a risk of injury. When opening and closing, make sure that the area of movement of the Glass Roof is kept clear.

Overview



Open/close the glass roof/sun guard.

Operating requirements

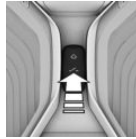
The Glass Roof and the sun guard can be operated under the following conditions.

- ▶ Standby state is switched on.
- ▶ Drive-ready state is switched on.

- ▶ For a short while after rest state has been established.

The vehicle key must be in the vehicle interior.

Raising/closing the Glass Roof

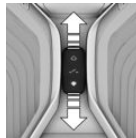


Push the switch briefly up.

- ▶ The closed glass roof is raised and the sun guard opens slightly.
- ▶ The opened Glass Roof closes to the raised position. The sun guard does not move.

- ▶ The raised Glass Roof is closed.

Opening/closing the glass roof and sun guard separately



- ▶ Push the switch in the desired direction as far as the resistance point and hold it in this position.

The sun guard continues to open for as long as the switch is pressed. The glass roof is opened if the sun guard is already fully open.

The Glass Roof closes for as long as the switch is held. If the glass roof is already closed or is in the raised position, the sun guard is closed.

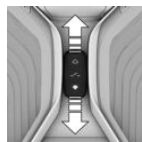
- ▶ Push the switch beyond the resistance point in the desired direction.

The sun guard is opened automatically. The glass roof is opened automatically if the sun guard is already fully open.

The Glass Roof is closed automatically. If the glass roof is already closed or is in the raised position, the sun guard is closed automatically.

Pressing the switch up stops the movement.

Opening/closing the glass roof and sun guard together



Push the switch twice in rapid succession beyond the resistance point in the desired direction.

The glass roof and the sun blind move together. Pressing the

switch up stops the movement.

Comfort position

In some models, the wind noises in the car's interior are lowest when the glass roof is not fully open. In these models, the automatic function initially only opens the glass roof as far as this comfort position.

Pressing the switch again opens the glass roof fully.

For closing when it is raining

Principle

In rest state, the open Glass Roof is automatically moved to the raised position under the following conditions:

- When it starts to rain.
- Six hours after locking.

Operating requirements

- It must be possible for rain to reach the touch control box in the area of the rear-view mirror. The touch control box may be obscured by a car port or bridge, for example.
- Vehicle must be in rest state.
- The function must be activated in the settings, see page 95.

Malfunctions

The open Glass Roof is not moved to the raised position under the following circumstances:

- The Glass Roof is blocked.
- The anti-trap mechanism is not secured.

- There is a system error, for example due to a temporary interruption in the electrical power supply. In this case, initialising the Glass Roof can help.

An error message is shown on the Control Display. No further closing is attempted.

If rain detection is not possible due to the system, the open Glass Roof is immediately moved to the raised position. An error message is shown on the Control Display.

Anti-trap mechanism

Principle

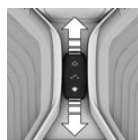
The anti-trap mechanism prevents objects or parts of the body from becoming trapped between the roof frame and Glass Roof while the Glass Roof is being closed.

General

If resistance or a blockage is detected while the Glass Roof is being closed, the closing operation is interrupted once the roof reaches the half-open position or it is stopped when closing from the raised position.

Closing without the anti-trap mechanism from an open position

If an external hazard or ice prevents you from closing the windows normally, proceed as follows:



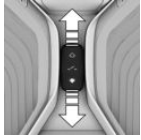
1. Close all doors.
2. Slide the switch forwards beyond the resistance point and hold it in this position.

The Glass Roof is closed with limited anti-trap function. If the closing force exceeds a certain level, the closing operation is interrupted.

3. Press the switch forwards once again beyond the resistance point and hold until the Glass Roof closes with no anti-trap function. Ensure that the closing area is clear.

Closing without the anti-trap mechanism from a raised position

If an external hazard or ice prevents you from closing the windows normally, proceed as follows:



- ▶ If the Glass Roof is closed, it opens, then closes again.
- ▶ If the Glass Roof is open, it first closes, then opens and closes again.

Initialisation is complete once the Glass Roof and sun guard have opened then closed again.

1. Close all doors.
2. Slide the switch forwards beyond the resistance point and hold it in this position.

Initialising after a power failure

General

If a power failure occurs while the Glass Roof is opening or closing, it may only have limited functionality afterwards. In this case, initialising the system can help.

The system can be initialised under the following conditions:

- ▶ The vehicle is parked on level ground.
- ▶ In drive-ready state.
- ▶ The outside temperature is above 5 °C/41 °F.

During initialisation, the Glass Roof closes with no antitrap mechanism.

Ensure that the closing area is clear.

Initialising the system



Press the switch up and hold until initialisation is complete:

Initialisation begins within 15 seconds.

Seats, mirrors and steering wheel

Vehicle equipment

This chapter describes all standard, country-specific and special equipment available for the model series. It may therefore describe equipment and functions which are not installed in your vehicle, for example on account of the optional equipment selected or the country variant. This also applies to safety-relevant functions and systems. Please comply with the relevant laws and regulations when using the corresponding functions and systems.

Safe seating position

A seating position that suitably reflects the requirements of the occupants is essential for relaxed driving with minimum fatigue.

In an accident, the correct seating position plays an important role. Comply with the notes in the following chapters:

- Seats, see page 103.
- Seat belts, see page 105.
- Head restraints, see page 109.
- Airbags, see page 175.

Seats

Safety notes

WARNING

Adjusting the seat during a journey could cause the seat to move unexpectedly. You could lose control of the vehicle. There is a risk of accident. Only adjust the seat on the driver's side when at a standstill.

WARNING

If the backrest is angled back too far, the protective function of the seat belt will no longer be guaranteed. There is a risk of sliding under the seat belt in the event of an accident. There is a risk of injury or even death. Adjust the seat before starting the journey. Adjust the backrest to the most upright position possible, and do not change it during the journey.

WARNING

There is a risk of entrapment when the seats are moved. There is a risk of injury or material damage. Before making any adjustment, make sure that the area of movement of the seat is clear.

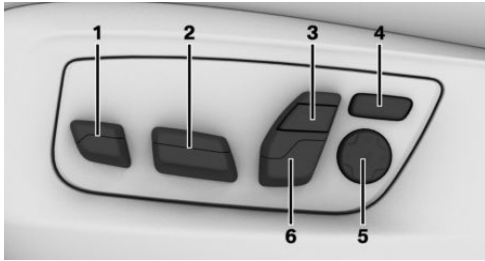
Electrically adjustable seats

General

The driver's seat setting is saved for the current profile. If a driver profile is selected, the saved position is called up automatically.

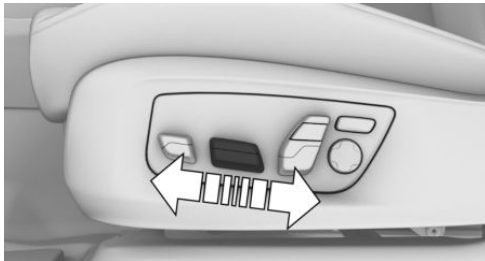
The current seat position can be saved using the memory function.

Overview



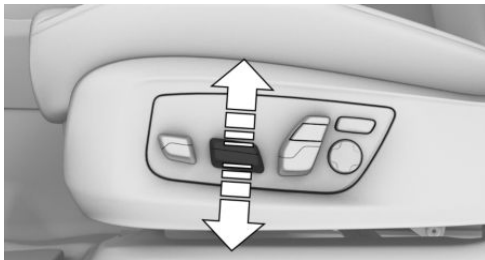
- 1 Thigh support
- 2 Forward/back, height, seat angle
- 3 Shoulder support
- 4 Backrest width
- 5 Lumbar support
- 6 Backrest tilt, head restraint

Forward/back



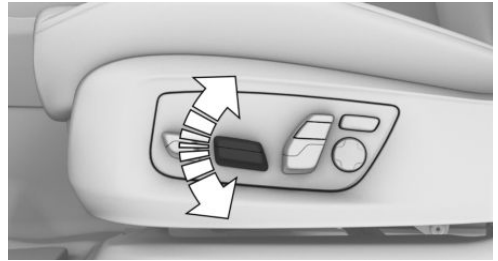
Press the switch forwards or backwards.

Height



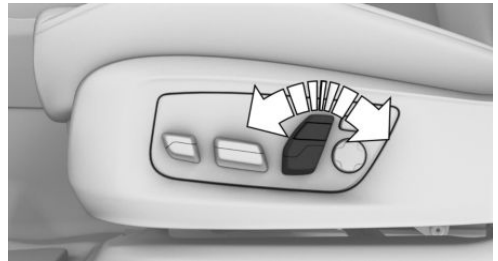
Press the switch up or down.

Seat angle



Tilt the switch up or down.

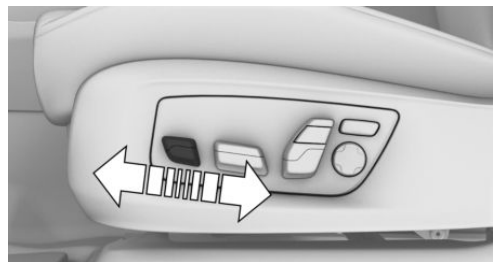
Backrest angle



Tilt the switch forwards or backwards.

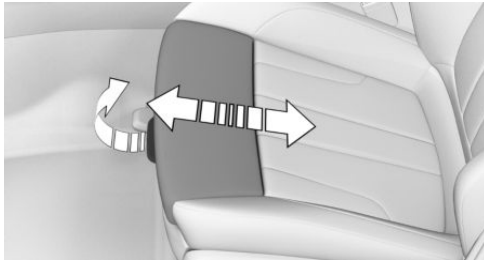
Thigh support

Multifunction seat



Press the switch forwards or backwards.

Sport seat



Pull the lever on the front of the seat and adjust the thigh support forwards or backwards.

Lumbar support

Principle

The curvature of the backrest can be changed to provide support for the lumbar region, or lordosis. The upper edge of the pelvis and the spinal column are supported to encourage an upright posture.

To adjust



- ▷ Press the button at the front/rear:
The curvature is increased/decreased.
- ▷ Press the button at the top/bottom:
The curvature is shifted upwards/downwards.

Backrest width

Principle

To adjust the backrest width can improve lateral support when taking corners.

General

To change the width of the backrest, the side cushions of the backrest can be adjusted.

To adjust



- ▷ Press the button at the front:
Backrest width is reduced.
- ▷ Press the button at the rear:
Backrest width is increased.

Shoulder support

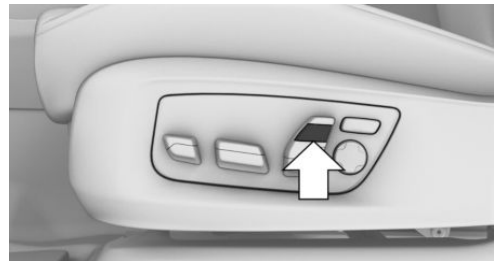
Principle

The shoulder support supports the back in the shoulder region. When adjusted correctly, it ensures a relaxed seating position, and reduces strain on the shoulder muscles.

General

If the driver's door is opened when drive-ready state is switched off, the shoulder support moves into the standard position.

To adjust



- ▷ Press the button at the front:
The shoulder support is tilted forwards.
- ▷ Press the button at the rear:
The shoulder support is tilted backwards.

Seat belts

Number of seat belts and belt buckles

For the safety of the vehicle occupants, the vehicle is equipped with five seat belts. However,

they can only provide effective protection when worn correctly.

The two outer belt buckles on the rear seats are intended for those sitting on the left and right.

The inner belt buckle on the rear seats is intended for the person sitting in the middle.

General

Before each journey, always make sure that all occupants have fastened their seat belts. The airbags supplement the seat belts as an additional safety device. The airbags are not a substitute for the seat belts.

The belt anchorage is suitable for adults of any stature if the seat is adjusted correctly.

Safety notes

WARNING

If a seat belt is used by more than one person at the same time, the protective function of the seat belt is no longer guaranteed. There is a risk of injury or even death. Only one person should use each seat belt at any one time. Do not allow infants and children to travel on the lap of another occupant. Instead, secure the infant or child in a child restraint system intended for this purpose.

WARNING

The protective function of the seat belts may be limited or may even fail completely if the seat belts are worn incorrectly. If a seat belt is not worn correctly, additional injuries can be caused, for example in the event of an accident or when braking or carrying out evasive manoeuvres. There is a risk of injury or even death. Make sure that all vehicle occupants have fastened their seat belts correctly.

WARNING

Seat belts are designed to bear upon the bony structure of the body and should be worn low across the front of the pelvis, or the pelvis, chest and shoulders, as applicable. Wearing the lap section of the belt across the abdominal area must be avoided.

Seat belts should be adjusted as firmly as possible, consistent with comfort, to provide the protection for which they have been designed. A slack belt will greatly reduce the protection afforded to the wearer.

Care should be taken to avoid contamination of the webbing by polishes, oils and chemicals and particularly battery acid. Cleaning may safely be carried out using a mild soap and water solution. The belt should be replaced if webbing becomes frayed, contaminated or damaged. Seat belts should not be worn with straps twisted. Each seat belt assembly must only be used by one occupant; it is forbidden to put a belt around a child being carried on the occupant's lap.

It is essential to replace the entire assembly after it has been worn in a severe impact even if damage to the assembly is not obvious.

WARNING

No modifications or additions should be made by the user that will either prevent the seat belt adjusting devices from operating to remove slack, or prevent the seat belt assembly from being adjusted to remove slack.

WARNING

If the rear backrest is not locked, the protective effect of the middle seat belt is not ensured. There is a risk of injury or even death. Lock the wider rear seat backrest when using the middle seat belt.

⚠ WARNING

The protective function of the seat belts may be limited or may even fail completely in the following situations:

- If the seat belts or belt buckles are damaged, dirty or have been modified in another way.
- If the belt tensioners or belt retractors have been modified.

Seat belts can be damaged in an accident without the damage necessarily being apparent. There is a risk of injury or even death. Do not modify seat belts, belt buckles, belt tensioners, belt retractors and belt anchor points and ensure that they are kept clean. After an accident, have the seat belts inspected at a Service Partner of the manufacturer or another qualified Service Partner or a specialist workshop.

Correct seat belt use

- Place the seat belt tightly over the pelvis and shoulder, close to the body and without twisting.
- Make sure that the seat belt is positioned low at the hips in the area of the pelvis. The seat belt must not press on the abdomen.
- The seat belt must not be rubbed on sharp edges, be routed over solid or breakable objects or be trapped.
- Avoid wearing bulky clothing.
- Keep the seat belt taut by occasionally pulling upwards on the upper section.

Adjustment for automatic retracting seat belts

- Draw the buckle tongue attached to the seat belt across the body and press it into the buckle catch until a 'click' is heard.
- Adjustment of the belt length is very important. To adjust the lap belt and check whether the buckle has locked correctly, pull

upwards on the shoulder strap until the lap belt fits tightly.

- The length of the diagonal shoulder strap adjusts itself automatically to allow freedom of movement.
- To release the seat belt, press the button on the buckle catch unit.

Fastening the seat belt

1. When fastening the seat belt, guide it slowly over the shoulder and pelvis.
2. Insert the seat belt tongue in the belt buckle. The seat belt buckle must be heard to engage.



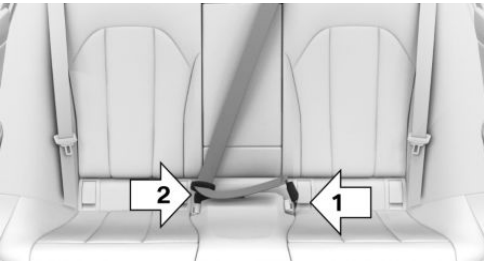
If fastened, the driver's and front passenger's seat belts are automatically tensioned when driving off.

Unfastening the seat belt

1. Hold the seat belt firmly.
2. Press the red button on the belt buckle.
3. Guide the seat belt back up to the reel mechanism.

Middle seat belt in the rear

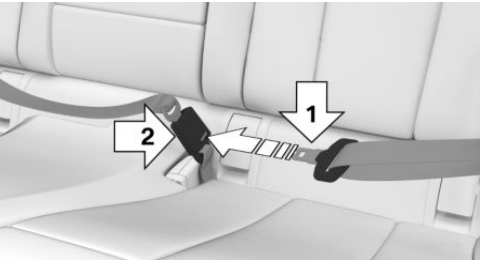
Fastening the seat belt



- 1. Pull the seat belt tongue at the end of the belt out of the bracket on the parcel shelf.
 - 2. Insert the lower seat belt tongue in the belt lock, arrow 1.
 - 3. Insert upper seat belt tongue in belt lock, arrow 2.
- Belt locks must engage audibly.

Unfastening the seat belt

- 1. Hold the seat belt firmly.
- 2. Press the red button on the belt buckle.
- 3. Use the seat belt tongue, arrow 1, to open the second belt buckle, arrow 2.



- 4. Guide the seat belt to the bracket on the parcel shelf.

Seat belt reminder for driver and front passenger seat

General

The seat belt reminder is activated when the seat belt on the driver's side is not fastened.

On some country variants, the seat belt reminder is also active if the front passenger seat belt is not fastened and heavy objects are on the front passenger seat.

Display in the instrument cluster



A Check Control message is shown. Check whether the seat belt has been fastened correctly.

Seat belt reminder for rear seats

General

The seat belt reminder is automatically activated every time the engine starts.

The seat belt reminder will also be activated if a rear seat belt is unfastened during the journey.

Display in the instrument cluster

The indicator lamp in the instrument cluster is illuminated after the engine starts.

Symbol	Description
	Green: seat belt fastened on the corresponding rear seat.
	Red: seat belt not fastened on the corresponding rear seat.

Safety function

In critical driving situations, for example full braking, the front seat belts are tensioned automatically.

If the situation passes without an accident, the belt tension is slackened again.

If the belt tension does not loosen automatically, stop the vehicle and unfasten the seat belt by pressing the red button in the belt buckle. Fasten the seat belt again before continuing your journey.

Front head restraints

General

The current head restraint position can be saved with the memory function.

Safety notes

WARNING

If the head restraints are removed or incorrectly adjusted, they cannot provide protection as intended and head and neck injuries may result. There is a risk of injury.

- Before a journey, re-install any removed head restraints on all occupied seats.
- Adjust the head restraint so that its centre supports the back of the head at eye level where possible.
- Adjust the distance so that the head restraint is as close as possible to the back of the head. If necessary, adjust the distance by adjusting the backrest angle.

WARNING

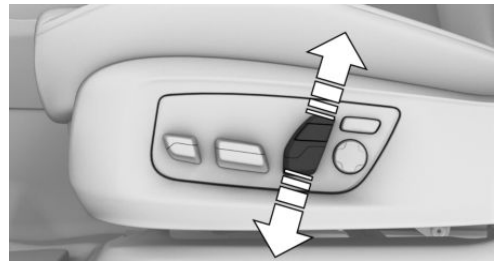
Parts of the body can become trapped when the head restraints are moved. There is a risk of injury. When moving the head restraint, make sure that the area of movement is kept clear.

WARNING

Objects on the head restraint impair the protective function of the head restraint in the head and neck area. There is a risk of injury.

- Do not fit any covers on the seats or head restraints.
- Do not hang objects such as coat hangers directly on the head restraint.
- Only use accessories that have been classified as safe for attaching to the head restraint.
- Do not use any accessories, for example cushions, during the journey.

Adjusting the height



Press the switch up or down.

Adjusting the distance: sport seat



- Back: press the button and slide the head restraint towards the rear.
 - Forward: pull the head restraint forwards.
- After adjusting the distance, make sure that the head restraint engages correctly.

Adjusting the distance: M multifunction seat

The head restraint is moved automatically on adjusting the shoulder support.

Removing

The head restraints cannot be removed.

Rear head restraints

Safety notes

WARNING

If the head restraints are removed or incorrectly adjusted, they cannot provide protection as intended and head and neck injuries may result. There is a risk of injury.

- ▷ Before a journey, re-install any removed head restraints on all occupied seats.
- ▷ Adjust the head restraint so that its centre supports the back of the head at eye level where possible.
- ▷ Adjust the distance so that the head restraint is as close as possible to the back of the head. If necessary, adjust the distance by adjusting the backrest angle.

WARNING

Parts of the body can become trapped when the head restraints are moved. There is a risk of injury. When moving the head restraint, make sure that the area of movement is kept clear.

WARNING

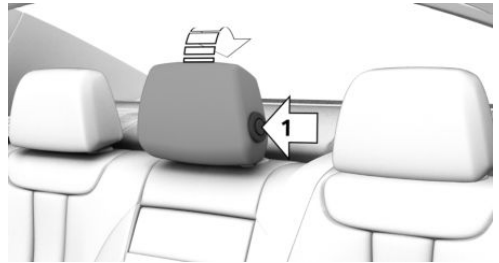
Objects on the head restraint impair the protective function of the head restraint in the head and neck area. There is a risk of injury.

- ▷ Do not fit any covers on the seats or head restraints.

- ▷ Do not hang objects such as coat hangers directly on the head restraint.
- ▷ Only use accessories that have been classified as safe for attaching to the head restraint.
- ▷ Do not use any accessories, for example cushions, during the journey.

Folding down the middle head restraint

The middle head restraint can be folded back to improve the view to the back. Only fold down the head restraint if no one will be sitting on the middle seat.



- ▷ Backward: press the button, arrow 1, and fold back the head restraint.
- ▷ Forwards: fold the head restraint forwards as far as it will go. Ensure that the head restraint engages correctly.

Adjusting the height



The outer head restraints can be adjusted in height.

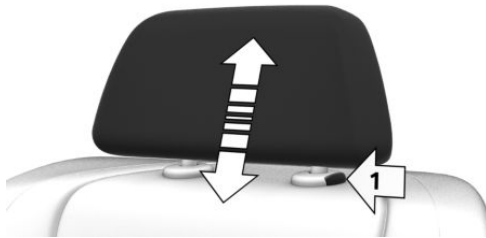
- Down: press the button, arrow 1, and slide the head restraint downwards.
- Up: push the head restraint upwards.

After adjusting the height, make sure that the head restraint engages correctly.

Removing

With through-loading system:

The outer head restraints can be removed. Only remove the head restraint if no-one is intending to sit in the seat in question.



1. Fold down the corresponding rear backrest, see page 292.
2. Push the head restraint up until resistance is felt.
3. Press the button, arrow 1, and pull the head restraint fully out.

Installing

Proceed in the reverse order to install the head restraint.

After installation, make sure that the head restraint engages correctly.

Exterior mirror

General

The mirror setting is saved for the current driver profile. If a driver profile is selected, the saved position is called up automatically.

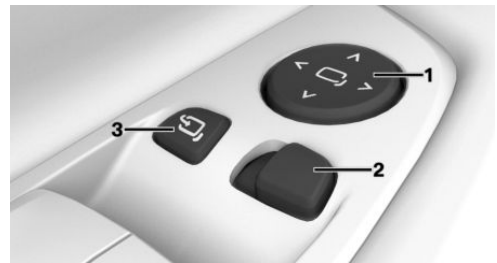
The current exterior mirror position can be saved with the memory function.

Safety note

WARNING

Objects reflected in the mirror are closer than they appear. The distance to road users behind the vehicle could be incorrectly estimated, for example when changing lane. There is a risk of accident. Look over your shoulder to estimate the distance from following traffic.

Overview



- 1 To adjust
- 2 To select a mirror, automatic parking function
- 3 Folding in and out

Electrical adjustment



Press the button.

The selected mirror moves in response to the button movement.

Selecting a mirror



To switch to the other mirror:

Push the switch.

Malfunction

In the event of an electrical fault, press the edges of the mirror glass to adjust the mirror.

Folding in and out

NOTE

Because of its width, the vehicle could sustain damage in car washes. There is a risk of material damage. Before washing, fold the mirrors in manually or with the button.



Press the button.

Folding in is possible up to a speed of approx. 20 km/h, 15 mph.

Folding the mirrors in and out is useful in the following situations:

- ▷ In car washes.
- ▷ In narrow streets.

Folded-in mirrors automatically fold out when the vehicle reaches a speed of approx. 40 km/h, 25 mph.

Automatic heating

If required, both exterior mirrors are automatically heated when drive-ready state is switched on.

Automatically dimming

The exterior mirror on the driver's side is automatically dimmed. Photocells in the rear-view mirror, see page 112, control this function.

Automatic parking function, exterior mirror

Principle

When reverse gear is engaged, the passenger-side mirror is tilted downwards. This improves the view of the kerb or other obstacles near the ground, for example when parking.

Activating



1. Push the switch to the driver's mirror position.

2. Engage selector lever position R.

The automatic parking function is deactivated when the trailer socket is in use.

Deactivating

Push the switch to the passenger-side mirror position.

Rear-view mirror

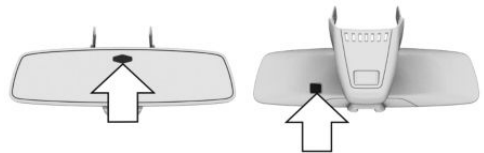
General

The rear-view mirror is dimmed automatically.

The function is controlled by photocells:

- ▷ In the mirror glass.
- ▷ On the back of the mirror.

Overview



Operating requirements

- ▷ Keep the photocells clean.
- ▷ Do not obstruct the zone between the rear-view mirror and the windscreen.

Steering wheel

Safety note

WARNING

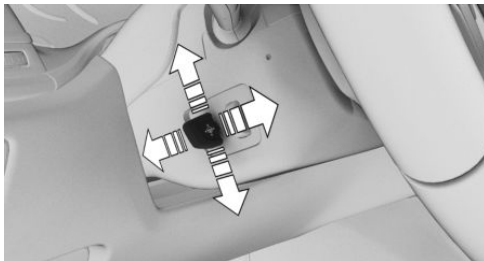
Adjusting the steering wheel while driving may cause the steering wheel to move unexpectedly. You could lose control of the vehicle. There is a risk of accident. Only adjust the steering wheel when the vehicle is at a standstill.

Electrical steering wheel adjustment

General

The steering wheel setting is saved for the current driver profile. If a driver profile is selected, the position that applies when the drive-ready state is switched on is called up automatically. The current steering wheel position can be saved with the memory function.

To adjust



Press the switch to adjust the steering wheel to the correct fore/aft position and height for your seating position.

Easy entry/exit

The steering wheel temporarily moves to its highest position to facilitate entry and exit.

Steering wheel heating

Overview



Button for steering wheel heating

Switching on/off



Press the button.

A Check Control message is shown.

If a journey is resumed within about 15 minutes following a temporary stop, the steering wheel heating is activated automatically again, provided that the function was switched on at the end of the last journey.

Memory function

Principle

The memory function enables the following settings to be stored and retrieved when required:

- ▷ Seat position.
- ▷ Exterior mirror position.
- ▷ Steering wheel position.
- ▷ Height of the Head-Up Display.

General

For each driver profile, two memory slots can be assigned with different settings.

The following settings are not saved:

- ▷ Backrest width.
- ▷ Lumbar support.

Safety notes

WARNING

Using the memory function while driving may cause the seat or steering wheel to move unexpectedly. You could lose control of the vehicle. There is a risk of accident. Only call up the memory function when the vehicle is at standstill.

WARNING

There is a risk of entrapment when the seats are moved. There is a risk of injury or material damage. Before making any adjustment, make sure that the area of movement of the seat is clear.

Overview



The memory buttons are on the front doors.

Saving

1. Set the desired position.
2.  Press the button. The lettering in the button is illuminated.
3. Press the desired button 1 or 2 while the lettering is illuminated. A signal sounds.

Recalling

Press the desired button 1 or 2.

The saved position is called up.

The operation is halted when you press a seat adjustment switch or press one of the memory buttons again.

Once underway, adjustment of the seat position on the driver's side is disabled after a short while.

Massage function

Principle

Depending on the program, the massage function helps to relax the muscles and improve blood flow, and is able to avoid feelings of fatigue.

General

Eight different massage programs can be selected:

- ▷ Pelvic activation.
- ▷ Upper-body activation.
- ▷ Whole-body activation.
- ▷ Back massage.
- ▷ Shoulder massage.
- ▷ Lumbar massage.
- ▷ Upper-body training.
- ▷ Whole-body training.

Overview



Massage function

Switching on



Press the button once for each intensity level.

The highest intensity level is selected if the three LEDs are illuminated.

Switching off



Press and hold the button until the LEDs are extinguished.

Selecting the massage program

Via iDrive:

1. "CAR"
2. "Settings"
3. "Seat comfort"
4. Select the desired seat.
5. "Seat massage"
6. Select the desired setting.

Seat heating

Overview

Front



Seat heating

Rear



Seat heating

Switching on



Press the button once for each temperature level.

The highest level is selected if the three LEDs are illuminated.

If you stop the vehicle temporarily and then resume your journey within approximately 15 minutes, the seat heating is automatically re-activated at the last setting.

Switching off



Press and hold the button until the bar display on the climate display no longer illuminates.

Seat heating distribution

The heat distribution between the seat cushion and the backrest can be varied.

Via iDrive:

1. "CAR"
2. "Settings"
3. "Climate comfort"
4. Select the desired menu item.
5. Select the desired seat.
6. Press and turn the Controller to adjust the seat heating distribution.

Active seat ventilation

Principle

Integrated fans in the seat and backrest surfaces ensure that the seat is pleasant to sit on.

Overview



Active seat ventilation

Switching on



Press the button once for each ventilation level.

The highest level is selected if the three LEDs are illuminated.

After a short time, the system automatically switches down one level.

Switching off



Press and hold the button until the bar display on the climate display no longer illuminates.

Individual activation

Principle

Some heating and cooling functions can be activated automatically depending on the outside temperature.

General

The outside temperature from which the functions are to be activated automatically can be set using iDrive.

Activation is performed if the outside temperature exceeds or falls below the set temperature in the first 2 minutes after drive-ready state has been switched on. A new alignment is carried out after the settings have been changed.

Depending on the equipment version, the following functions can be activated automatically:

- ▷ Seat heating.
- ▷ Steering wheel heating.
- ▷ Seat ventilation.

If the journey is continued within about 15 minutes after a temporary stop, the functions are automatically activated with the most recent settings.

Operating requirements

The seat belt of the corresponding seat is fastened.

Activating/deactivating

Via iDrive:

1. "CAR"
2. "Settings"
3. "Climate comfort"
4. Select a menu item:
 - ▷ "Steering wheel heating"
 - ▷ "Seat heating"
 - ▷ "Seat and steering wheel heating"
 - ▷ "Seat climate control"
 - ▷ "Seat climate/steer. wheel heating"
5. Select the desired seat.
6. Select the menu item of the desired function.
7. Set the outside temperature from which the function is to be activated.
8. If applicable, set the desired level.

Carrying children safely

Vehicle equipment

This chapter describes all standard, country-specific and special equipment available for the model series. It may therefore describe equipment and functions which are not installed in your vehicle, for example on account of the optional equipment selected or the country variant. This also applies to safety-relevant functions and systems. Please comply with the relevant laws and regulations when using the corresponding functions and systems.

Important considerations

Safety notes

WARNING

Unsupervised children or pets in the vehicle can set the vehicle in motion and endanger themselves or other road users, for example by the following actions:

- Pressing the start/stop button.
- Releasing the parking brake.
- Opening and closing doors or windows.
- Engaging selector lever position N.
- Operating vehicle equipment.

There is a risk of accidents or injury. Do not leave children or pets unsupervised in the vehicle. When leaving the vehicle, take the vehicle key with you and lock the vehicle.

WARNING

Hot vehicles can have fatal consequences, in particular for children and pets. There is a risk of injury or even death. Do not leave anyone unsupervised in the vehicle, especially children and pets.

WARNING

Child restraint systems and their parts can get very hot when exposed to direct sunlight. Contact with hot parts can cause burns. There is a risk of injury. Do not expose the child restraint system to direct sunlight. Cover the child restraint system if necessary. It may be necessary to allow the child restraint system to cool down before strapping a child in. Do not leave children unsupervised in the vehicle.

Children always in the rear seats

General

Accident research has shown that the safest place for children is on the rear seat.

Children younger than 12 years old or under 150 cm, 5 ft tall are only allowed to be transported in the rear using child restraint systems appropriate for their age, weight and stature. Children aged 12 years and older must be secured with a seat belt as soon as a suitable child restraint system is no longer appropriate due to their age, weight or stature.

Safety note

WARNING

Children under 150 cm, 5 ft tall cannot wear the seat belt correctly without using additional child restraint systems. The protective function of the seat belts may be limited or may even fail completely if the seat belts are worn incorrectly. If a seat belt is not worn correctly, additional injuries can be caused, for example in the event of an accident or when braking or carrying out evasive manoeuvres. There is a risk of injury or even death. Children under 150 cm, 5 ft tall must be secured in suitable child restraint systems.

Not for Australia/New Zealand: Children on the front passenger seat

General

When using a child restraint system on the front passenger seat, make sure that the front and side airbags on the passenger side are deactivated. Front passenger airbags can only be deactivated with the key switch for front passenger airbags, see page 177. If the front passenger airbags cannot be deactivated, do not carry children on the front passenger seat, even in suitable child restraint systems.

Safety note

WARNING

Active front passenger airbags can injure a child in a child restraint system if they are deployed. There is a risk of injury. Make sure that the front passenger airbags are deactivated and the PASSENGER AIRBAG OFF indicator lamp is illuminated.

Fitting child restraints

General

Please comply with the operating and safety instructions provided by the child restraint system manufacturer when selecting, attaching and using child restraint systems.

Safety notes

WARNING

If child restraint systems and their attachment systems have been damaged or subjected to stresses in an accident, their protective function may be limited or may fail completely. A child might not be adequately restrained, for example in the event of an accident, braking or evasive manoeuvres. There is a risk of injury or even death.

Child restraint systems that are damaged or have been subjected to stresses in an accident must not be used further.

If attachment systems have been damaged or subjected to stresses in an accident, have them checked and replaced by a Service Partner of the manufacturer, another qualified Service Partner or a specialist workshop.

WARNING

If the seat is not adjusted properly or the child seat has been installed incorrectly, the child restraint system may have limited stability or may not be stable at all. There is a risk of injury or even death. Make sure that the child restraint system rests firmly against the backrest. Wherever possible, adapt the backrest angle of all the relevant seat backrests and adjust the seats correctly. Make sure that the seats and their backrests are correctly engaged or locked. If possible, adjust the height of the head restraints, or remove them.

For Australia/New Zealand: installation of child restraints

Please note the following warning because your vehicle has been equipped with a front airbag for the front passenger's seat that cannot be deactivated:



It is recommended not to use any kind of child restraint system on the front passenger's seat.



Extreme hazard

Do not use a rearward facing child restraint on a seat protected by an airbag in front of it.

Not for Australia/New Zealand: On the front passenger seat

Deactivating airbags



WARNING

Active front passenger airbags can injure a child in a child restraint system if they are deployed. There is a risk of injury. Make sure that the front passenger airbags are deactivated and the PASSENGER AIRBAG OFF indicator lamp is illuminated.

Before fitting a child restraint on the front passenger seat, make sure that the front and side airbags on the passenger side are disabled. If the airbag cannot be deactivated, do not fit child restraint systems.

Deactivating the front passenger airbags with key switch, see page 177.

Rear-facing child restraint systems



DANGER

If triggered, active front passenger airbags can fatally injure a child in a child restraint system which is mounted facing backwards. There is a risk of injury or even death. Make sure that the front passenger airbags are deactivated and the PASSENGER AIRBAG OFF indicator lamp is illuminated.



Follow the information on the front passenger sun visor.

Never use a rearward-facing child restraint on a seat protected by an active airbag in front of it, as death or serious injury to the child can occur.

Seat position and height

Before installing a universal child restraint system, move the front passenger seat as far back as it will go and adjust to a mid-height position. This seat position and height achieves the best possible routing of the belt and protection in the event of an accident.

If the upper attachment point of the seat belt is located ahead of the child seat's belt guide, carefully move the front passenger seat forwards until the best possible belt guidance is achieved.

Backrest width

With adjustable backrest width: before fitting a child restraint system on the front passenger seat, fully open the backrest width. Do not

change the backrest width from this point on and do not call up a memory position.

ISOFIX child seat mountings

General

Note for Australia: ISOFIX child seats are not permitted for road use in Australia at the time of printing. However, also since a change of the respective regulations is also expected in the future, lower ISOFIX anchorages are supplied in line with applicable ADRs also for Australia.

Please comply with the operating and safety instructions provided by the child restraint system manufacturer when selecting, attaching and using ISOFIX child restraint systems.

Suitable ISOFIX child restraint systems

Only certain ISOFIX child restraints may be used in the seats intended for this purpose. The corresponding size class and size category are denoted by a letter or ISO reference on a plate on the child seat.

For information about which child restraint systems can be used on the seats in question and if the child restraint systems are suitable for or comply with ISOFIX, see: Suitable seats for child restraint systems, see page 122.

Brackets for lower ISOFIX anchors

Safety note

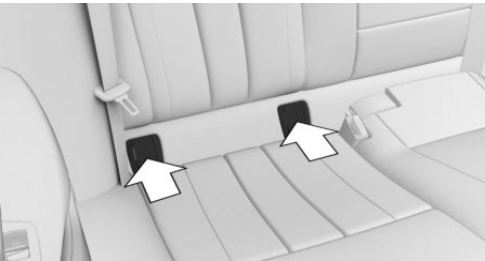
WARNING

If the ISOFIX child restraint systems are not engaged correctly, the protective function of the ISOFIX child restraint systems may be limited. There is a risk of injury or even death. Make sure the lower anchor point has engaged cor-

rectly and the ISOFIX child restraint system rests firmly against the backrest.

Position

Symbol	Meaning
	The corresponding symbol shows the brackets for the lower ISOFIX anchors.



The fixtures for the lower ISOFIX anchors are located behind the marked covers.

Before fitting ISOFIX child restraints

Pull the seat belt away from the area of the child seat mountings.

Fitting ISOFIX child restraint systems

1. Install the child restraint system, see the manufacturer's instructions.
2. Make sure that both ISOFIX anchors are engaged correctly.

i-Size child restraint systems

General

i-Size is a regulation for child restraint systems, which is used for the approval of child restraint systems.

Symbol	Meaning
	If this symbol is seen in the vehicle, the vehicle has also been approved in accordance with i-Size. The symbol shows the mounts for the system's lower anchors. The lower anchors meet the European i-Size requirements.
	The corresponding symbol shows the mounting point for the upper retaining strap.

Fixtures for the upper retaining strap

Safety notes

WARNING

If the upper retaining strap is used incorrectly with the child restraint system, the protective function may be reduced. There is a risk of injury. Make sure that the upper retaining strap is not twisted and is not routed to the upper mounting point over sharp edges.

WARNING

If the rear backrest is not locked, the protective effect of the child restraint system is limited or non-existing. The rear backrest can fold forward in certain situations, for example braking manoeuvre or accident. There is a risk of injury or even death. Make sure that the rear backrests are locked.

NOTE

The mounting points for the upper retaining straps of child restraint systems are only intended for these retaining straps. The mounting points can be damaged if other objects are attached. There is a risk of material damage. Only attach child restraint systems to the upper mounting points.

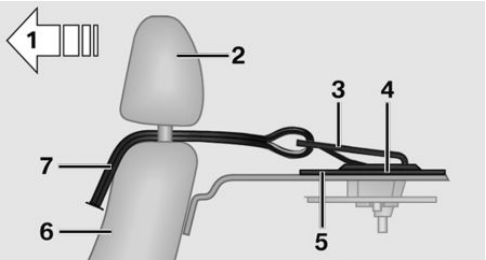
Mounting points

Symbol	Meaning
	The corresponding symbol shows the mounting point for the upper retaining strap.



Depending on the equipment version, there are two or three mounting points for the upper retaining strap of ISOFIX child restraint systems.

Routing the retaining strap



- 1 Direction of travel
- 2 Head restraint
- 3 Hook for the upper retaining strap
- 4 Mounting point
- 5 Rear parcel shelf

- 6 Seat backrest
- 7 Upper retaining strap

Attaching the upper retaining strap to the mounting point

- 1. Open the cover of the mounting point.
- 2. Raise the head restraint.
- 3. Guide the upper retaining strap between the mounts or along both sides of the head restraint to the mounting point.
- 4. Attach the hook of the retaining strap to the mounting point.
- 5. Tighten the retaining strap by pulling it firmly down.
- 6. Lower and engage the head restraint as necessary.

Suitable seats for child restraint systems

Overview

General

The legal provisions determining which child seat is permitted for which age and body size may vary from country to country. Please comply with the relevant national legal provisions.

Additional information is available from a Service Partner of the manufacturer or another qualified Service Partner or a specialist workshop.

Left-hand drive vehicles: Which child restraint systems can be used on the seats

Information about which child restraint systems can be used on the seats in question in accordance with the ECE-R 16 and ECE-R 129 standard.

Seat position	1	3 – a)	4 – b)	5 – c, d)	6 – b)
Seat position suitable for universal fastening with a belt.	No	Yes	Yes	Yes	Yes
i-Size seat position.	No	No	Yes	No	Yes
Seat position suitable for side mounting: L1/L2.	No	No	Yes	No	Yes

Seat position	1	3 – a)	4 – b)	5 – c, d)	6 – b)
Largest rear-facing mounting: R1/R2X/R2/R3.	No	No	R3	No	R3
Largest front-facing mounting: F2X/F2/F3.	No	No	F3	No	F3
Largest suitable booster mount: B2/B3.	No	No	B3	No	B3

a) Adapt the front/back position of the front passenger seat and, if necessary, move it to the highest position to achieve the best possible routing of the belt.

b) When using child seats on the rear seats, adjust the front/back position of the front seat if necessary, and also adjust the head restraint of the rear seat or remove it.

c) Only occupy the outer seats if the belt buckles are easily accessible.

d) The seat is not suitable for child seats with a support stand.

Not compatible with i-Size seat position with a support stand: cannot be used.

Seat position with lower ISOFIX anchors, but without Top Tether: cannot be used.

Seat belt buckles for adults are located on the side between the two lower ISOFIX anchors: cannot be used.

Seat number	Position in the vehicle	Seat number	Position in the vehicle
1	Front left	6	2nd seat row right
2	Front centre	7	3rd seat row left
3	Front right	8	3rd seat row centre
4	2nd seat row left	9	3rd seat row right
5	2nd seat row centre		

Right-hand drive vehicles: which child restraint systems can be used on which seats

Seat position	1 – a)	3	4 – b)	5 – c, d)	6 – b)
Seat position suitable for universal fastening with a belt.	Yes	No	Yes	Yes	Yes
i-Size seat position.	No	No	Yes	No	Yes
Seat position suitable for side mounting: L1/L2.	No	No	Yes	No	Yes

Seat position	1 – a)	3	4 – b)	5 – c, d)	6 – b)
Largest rear-facing mounting: R1/R2X/R2/R3.	No	No	R3	No	R3
Largest front-facing mounting: F2X/F2/F3.	No	No	F3	No	F3
Largest suitable booster mount: B2/B3.	No	No	B3	No	B3

- a) Adapt the front/back position of the front passenger seat and, if necessary, move it to the highest position to achieve the best possible routing of the belt.
- b) When using child seats on the rear seats, adjust the front/back position of the front seat if necessary, and also adjust the head restraint of the rear seat or remove it.
- c) Only occupy the outer seats if the belt buckles are easily accessible.
- d) The seat is not suitable for child seats with a support stand.

Not compatible with i-Size seat position with a support stand: cannot be used.

Seat position with lower ISOFIX anchors, but without Top Tether: cannot be used.

Seat belt buckles for adults are located on the side between the two lower ISOFIX anchors: cannot be used.

Seat number	Position in the vehicle	Seat number	Position in the vehicle
1	Front left	6	2nd seat row right
2	Front centre	7	3rd seat row left
3	Front right	8	3rd seat row centre
4	2nd seat row left	9	3rd seat row right
5	2nd seat row centre		

Suitable seats for child restraint systems with a belt

Information about which child restraint systems can be used on the seats in question in accordance with the ECE-R 16 standard.

Group	Weight of child	Approximate age	Front passenger seat, air-bag ON	Front passenger seat, air-bag OFF-a)	Rear seats, outer	Rear seat, middle – b, c)
0	Up to 10 kg	Up to 9 months	X	U, L	U, L	U
0+	Up to 13 kg	Up to 18 months	X	U, L	U, L	U
I	9 – 18 kg	Up to 4 years	X	U, L	U, L	U
II	15 – 25 kg	Up to 7 years	X	U	U, L	U
III	22 – 36 kg	7 years and over	X	U	U, L	U

U: suitable for Universal-category child restraint systems approved for use in this weight group.

L: suitable for child restraint systems in the Semi-Universal category if the vehicle and the seat are listed in the list of vehicle models from the manufacturer of the child restraint system.

X: unsuitable for Universal-category child restraint systems approved for use in this weight group.

a) Adapt the front/back position of the front passenger seat and, if necessary, move it to the highest position to achieve the best possible routing of the belt.

b) Only occupy the outer seats if the belt buckles are easily accessible.

c) The seat is not suitable for child seats with a support stand.

Suitable seats for ISOFIX child restraint systems

The following ISOFIX child restraint systems may be used on the seats designated as appropriate for this purpose. The corresponding size class

and size category are denoted by a letter or ISO reference on a plate on the child seat.

Group	Weight of child	Approximate age	Class/category	Front passenger seat, airbag ON	Front passenger seat, airbag OFF	Rear seats, outer – a)	Rear seat, middle
Carrycot			F - ISO/L1	X	X	IL	X
			G - ISO/L2	X	X	IL	X
0	Up to 10 kg	Approximately 9 months	E - ISO/R1	X	X	IL	X
0+	Up to 13 kg	Approximately 18 months	E - ISO/R1	X	X	IL	X
			D - ISO/R2	X	X	IL	X
			C - ISO/R3	X	X	IL	X
I	9 - 18 kg	Up to approximately 4 years	D - ISO/R2	X	X	IL	X
			C - ISO/R3	X	X	IL	X
			B - ISO/F2	X	X	IL, IUF	X
			B1 - ISO/F2X	X	X	IL, IUF	X
			A - ISO/F3	X	X	IL, IUF	X

a) When using child seats on the rear seats, adapt the front/back and height position of the front seat if necessary, and also adjust the head restraint of the rear seat or remove it.

IL: suitable for ISOFIX child restraint systems in the Semi-Universal category if the vehicle and the seat are listed in the list of vehicle models provided by the manufacturer of the child restraint system.

IUF: suitable for forward-facing ISOFIX child restraint systems in the Universal category that have been approved for use in this weight class.

X: the seat is not approved or equipped with mounting points for the ISOFIX system.

Suitable seats for i-Size child restraint systems

Information on the suitability of the different vehicle seats for the installation of child restraint systems suitable for i-Size or meeting i-Size requirements - in accordance with standard ECE-R 129:

Group	Front passenger seat, airbag ON	Front passenger seat, airbag OFF	Rear seats, outer 2nd seat row	Rear seat, middle 2nd seat row

i-Size

X

X

i-U

X

i-U, suitable for rearward and forward-facing i-Size child restraint systems.

X: not suitable for i-Size child restraint systems.

Recommended child seats

Please comply with the operating and safety instructions provided by the child restraint system manufacturer when selecting, attaching and using child restraint systems.

The manufacturer of the vehicle recommends the following child restraint systems:

- Maxi Cosi CabrioFix.
- Maxi Cosi FamilyFix base.
- Römer DUO PLUS.
- Römer KIDFIX XP.

For Australia/New Zealand: Child restraints

General

In accordance with ADR 34/02, provisions have been made to allow installation of a child restraint at each rear seating position.

The anchoring hooks which belong to the upper restraining strap of the child restraint - AS 1754, can be applied immediately to the relevant mounting.

Please refer strictly to the installation instructions supplied with the child restraint system.

Each seating position is fitted with a head rest.

Safety notes

WARNING

Child restraint anchorages are designed to withstand only those loads imposed by correctly fitted child restraints. Under no circumstances are they to be used for adult seat belts, harnesses or for attaching other items or equipment to the vehicle. After using and removing child restraints, fold away the anchor brackets if necessary.

WARNING

If the rear backrest is not locked, the protective effect of the child restraint system is limited or non-existing. The rear backrest can fold forward in certain situations, for example braking manoeuvre or accident. There is a risk of injury or even death. Make sure that the rear backrests are locked.

WARNING

If the upper retaining strap is used incorrectly with the child restraint system, the protective function may be reduced. There is a risk of injury. Make sure that the upper retaining strap is not twisted and is not routed to the upper mounting point over sharp edges.

Mounting points

Symbol

Meaning

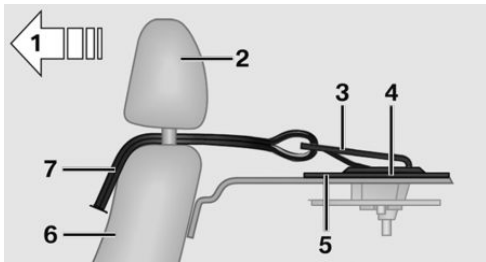


The corresponding symbol shows the mounting point for the upper retaining strap.



Depending on the equipment fitted in the vehicle, there are two outer mounting points or three other mounting points for child restraints with tether straps.

Routing the retaining strap



- 1 Direction of travel
- 2 Head restraint
- 3 Hook for the upper retaining strap
- 4 Mounting point
- 5 Rear parcel shelf
- 6 Seat backrest
- 7 Upper retaining strap

Attaching the upper retaining strap to the mounting point

1. Open the cover of the mounting point.
2. Push the head restraint up or remove it.
3. Guide the upper retaining strap between the head restraint mounts.
On the middle seat, guide the strap over the head restraint as needed.
4. Attach the hook of the retaining strap to the mounting point.
5. Tighten the retaining strap by pulling it firmly down.
6. Push the head restraint down if necessary and engage it in place.

Securing doors and windows in the rear

General

In certain situations, for example when carrying children, it may be advisable to secure the rear doors and windows.

Doors



Push up the locking levers on the rear doors.

The door in question can now only be opened from the outside.

Safety switch for the rear



Press the button on the driver's door.

Various functions are disabled and cannot be operated in the rear. Safety switch, see page [99](#).

Driving

Vehicle equipment

This chapter describes all standard, country-specific and special equipment available for the model series. It may therefore describe equipment and functions which are not installed in your vehicle, for example on account of the optional equipment selected or the country variant. This also applies to safety-relevant functions and systems. Please comply with the relevant laws and regulations when using the corresponding functions and systems.

Start/stop button

Principle



Drive-ready state, see page 37, is switched on and off by pressing the start/stop button.

Drive-ready state is switched on by pressing the start/stop button

while the brake pedal is depressed.

Pressing the start/stop button again switches drive-ready state off again and standby state, see page 37, is switched on.

Driving off

1. Switch on drive-ready state.
2. Apply the drive position.
3. Releasing the parking brake.
4. Drive off.

Auto Start Stop function

Principle

The Auto Start Stop function helps you to save fuel. The system stops the engine when station-

ary, for example in a traffic jam or at traffic lights. The drive-ready state remains switched on. For driving off, the engine starts automatically.

General

Each time the engine is started via the start/stop button, the Auto Start/Stop function is switched to standby. The function is activated from a speed of around 5 km/h, 3 mph.

Stopping the engine

Operating requirements

M Steptronic sport transmission

The engine is automatically shut down when stationary under the following conditions:

- ▷ Selector lever in selector lever position D.
- ▷ Brake pedal remains pressed while the vehicle is at a standstill or vehicle is kept stationary by Automatic Hold.
- ▷ Driver's seat belt buckled or driver's door closed.

M Steptronic sport transmission: manual engine stop

If the engine was not switched off automatically when the vehicle came to a stop, it can be switched off manually:

- ▷ Rapidly press the brake pedal from the current position.
- ▷ Engage selector lever position P.

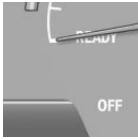
If all the operating requirements have been met, the engine is stopped.

Air conditioning system when the vehicle is parked

The air flow rate of the air conditioning system is reduced when the engine is not running.

Displays in the instrument cluster

General



The READY display in the revolution counter indicates that the Auto Start Stop function is ready for automatic engine starting.



The display indicates that the pre-conditions for an automatic engine stop are not met.

Display on the Control Display

Total time for switched-off engine

The total time for which the Auto Start Stop function has switched off the engine is shown in the journey data.

After refuelling, the total time is automatically reset.

Functional limitations

The engine is not shut down automatically in the following situations:

- ▷ On steep downward gradients.
- ▷ Brake not pressed strongly enough.
- ▷ High outside temperature and operation of the automatic air conditioning.
- ▷ Interior not heated or cooled to the desired temperature.
- ▷ Where there is a risk of condensation when the automatic air conditioning is switched on.
- ▷ Engine or other parts not at operating temperature.
- ▷ Engine cooling is required.
- ▷ Sharp steering angle or steering operation.
- ▷ Vehicle battery is heavily discharged.
- ▷ At high altitudes.
- ▷ Bonnet is unlocked.

- ▷ Park Assistant is activated.
- ▷ Stop-and-go traffic.
- ▷ Selector lever position in N or R.
- ▷ After reversing.

Engine start

Operating requirements

M Steptronic sport transmission

For driving off, the engine automatically starts under the following conditions:

- ▷ By releasing the brake pedal.
- ▷ With Automatic Hold activated: press the accelerator pedal.

Driving off

After starting the engine, accelerate as normal.

Safety function

After an automatic shut down, the engine will not restart automatically, if one of the following conditions is met:

- ▷ Driver's seat belt unbuckled and driver's door open.
- ▷ Bonnet has been unlocked.

Several indicator lamps illuminate for various lengths of time.

The engine can only be started using the start/stop button.

System limits

Even if you do not want to drive off, the engine restarts automatically in the following situations:

- ▷ Very high temperature in the interior when the cooling function is switched on.
- ▷ Very low temperature in the interior when the heating is switched on.
- ▷ Where there is a risk of condensation when the automatic air conditioning is switched on.
- ▷ When the steering wheel is turned.

- ▷ Shift from selector lever position D to N or R.
- ▷ Shift from selector lever position P to N, D or R.
- ▷ Vehicle battery is heavily discharged.
- ▷ Start of an oil level measurement.

Intelligent Auto Start Stop function.

Depending on the equipment version and country version, the vehicle has various sensors to record the traffic situation. This enables the intelligent Auto Start Stop function to adapt to various traffic situations and, where necessary, behave in an anticipatory manner.

For example, in the following situations:

- ▷ If a situation is detected in which the duration of the stop is likely to be very short, the engine is not stopped automatically. Depending on the situation, a message is shown on the Control Display.
- ▷ If a situation is detected in which the vehicle should drive off immediately, the stopped engine is started automatically.

The function may be limited if the navigation data is invalid, outdated or not available, for example.

Deactivating/activating the system manually

Principle

The engine is not switched off automatically. During an automatic engine stop, the engine is started.

Using the button



 Press the button.

Display

- ▷ LED illuminates: Auto Start Stop function is deactivated.
- ▷ The LED is extinguished: Auto Start Stop function is activated.

Parking the vehicle during automatic engine stop

General

With automatic engine stop, the vehicle can be parked safely, for example in order to leave it.

M Steptronic sport transmission

1. Press the start/stop button.
 - ▷ When drive-ready state is switched off.
 - ▷ Standby state is switched on.
 - ▷ Selector lever position P is automatically engaged.
2. Apply the parking brake.

Automatic deactivation

General

In certain situations the Auto Start Stop function is deactivated automatically for safety reasons, for example if the absence of the driver is detected.

Malfunction

The Auto Start Stop function no longer shuts down the engine automatically. A Check Control message is shown. It is possible to keep driving. Have the system checked by a Service Partner of the manufacturer or another qualified Service Partner or a specialist workshop.

Parking brake

Principle

The parking brake is used to prevent the vehicle from rolling when it is parked.

Safety notes

WARNING

An unsecured vehicle can start moving and rolling away. There is a risk of accident. Before leaving the vehicle, secure it to prevent it from rolling away.

Observe the following to ensure that the vehicle is secured against rolling away:

- Apply the parking brake.
- Turn the front wheels towards the kerb on upward or downward gradients.
- Additionally secure the vehicle on upward or downward gradients, for example with a chock.

WARNING

Unsupervised children or pets in the vehicle can set the vehicle in motion and endanger themselves or other road users, for example by the following actions:

- Pressing the start/stop button.
- Releasing the parking brake.
- Opening and closing doors or windows.
- Engaging selector lever position N.
- Operating vehicle equipment.

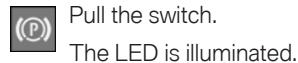
There is a risk of accidents or injury. Do not leave children or pets unsupervised in the vehicle. When leaving the vehicle, take the vehicle key with you and lock the vehicle.

Overview



Engaging

When the vehicle is stationary

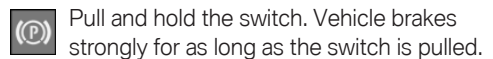


The indicator lamp in the instrument cluster is illuminated red. The parking brake is engaged.

While the vehicle is in motion

General

Use during the journey serves as an emergency brake.



The indicator lamp in the instrument cluster is illuminated red, a signal sounds and the brake lights illuminate.

A Check Control message is shown.

Apply the parking brake when the vehicle is stationary.

Releasing

Releasing manually

1. Switch on drive-ready state.
2.  Press the switch with the brake pedal depressed or selector lever position P engaged.
LED and indicator lamp turn off.
The parking brake is released.

Automatic release

The parking brake is automatically released on driving off.

LED and indicator lamp turn off.

Automatic Hold

Principle

This system provides assistance by automatically applying and releasing the brake, for example in stop-and-go traffic.

The vehicle is held automatically when at a standstill.

On upward gradients, it prevents the vehicle from rolling back when driving off.

General

The parking brake is automatically applied in the following conditions:

- ▷ When drive-ready state is switched off.
- ▷ When the driver's door is opened with the vehicle at a standstill.
- ▷ If the vehicle is brought to a standstill with the parking brake during a journey.

Display



The indicator lamp changes from green to red.

Safety notes

WARNING

An unsecured vehicle can start moving and rolling away. There is a risk of accident. Before leaving the vehicle, secure it to prevent it from rolling away.

Observe the following to ensure that the vehicle is secured against rolling away:

- ▷ Apply the parking brake.
- ▷ Turn the front wheels towards the kerb on upward or downward gradients.
- ▷ Additionally secure the vehicle on upward or downward gradients, for example with a chock.

WARNING

Unsupervised children or pets in the vehicle can set the vehicle in motion and endanger themselves or other road users, for example by the following actions:

- ▷ Pressing the start/stop button.
- ▷ Releasing the parking brake.
- ▷ Opening and closing doors or windows.
- ▷ Engaging selector lever position N.
- ▷ Operating vehicle equipment.

There is a risk of accidents or injury. Do not leave children or pets unsupervised in the vehicle. When leaving the vehicle, take the vehicle key with you and lock the vehicle.

NOTE

Automatic Hold applies the parking brake when the vehicle is stationary and prevents the vehicle from rolling in car washes. There is a risk of material damage. Deactivate Automatic Hold before driving into the car wash.

Overview



 Automatic Hold

Establishing operational readiness of Automatic Hold

1. Switch on drive-ready state.

2.  Press the button.

The LED is illuminated.

The indicator lamp illuminates green.
 Automatic Hold is ready to operate.

When the vehicle is restarted, the last selected setting is retained.

Automatic Hold holds the vehicle

Operational readiness is established and the driver's door is closed.

When the brake is pressed, for example when stopped at traffic lights, the vehicle is automatically secured to prevent it from rolling away.

The indicator lamp illuminates green.


Driving off

To drive off, press the accelerator pedal.

The brake is released automatically and the indicator lamp for the parking brake is no longer illuminated.

Automatic activation of the parking brake

The parking brake is automatically applied when the vehicle is being held by Automatic Hold and drive-ready state is switched off or the vehicle is exited.

 The indicator lamp changes from green to red.

The parking brake is not applied automatically if drive-ready state was switched off while the vehicle was still rolling. Automatic Hold is switched off in this case.

Switching off operational readiness

 Press the button.
The LED is extinguished.

The indicator lamp extinguishes.



Automatic Hold is switched off.

If the vehicle is being kept stationary by Automatic Hold, also depress the brake pedal when switching off.

Malfunction

If the parking brake has failed or malfunctioned, secure the vehicle to prevent it from rolling away before leaving the vehicle.

A Check Control message is shown.

After getting out, secure the vehicle to prevent it from rolling away, for example with a chock.

After a power failure

To restore parking brake functionality after a power failure:

1. Switch on standby state.
2.  Pull the switch with the brake pedal depressed or selector lever position P engaged and then press it.

The procedure can take a few seconds. Any sounds that occur are normal.



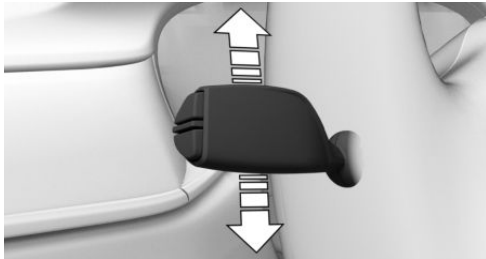
The indicator lamp no longer illuminates as soon as the parking brake is once again operational.

Turn indicator

Turn indicator in exterior mirror

Do not fold in the exterior mirrors while driving or while operating the turn indicators or hazard warning lights to ensure that the turn indicators in the exterior mirrors are well recognisable.

Indicating



Press the lever beyond the resistance point.

Triple turn signal

Briefly press the lever up or down.

The duration of the triple turn signal can be set.

Via iDrive:

1. "CAR"
2. "Settings"
3. "Exterior lighting"
4. "One-touch turn signal"
5. Select the desired setting.

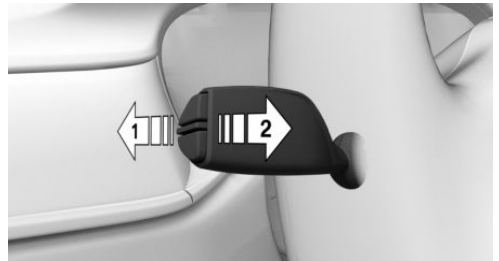
The setting is saved for the current driver profile.

Indicating a turn briefly

Press the lever as far as the resistance point and hold it there for as long as you wish to indicate a turn.

High-beam headlights, headlight flasher

Push the lever forwards or pull it back.



- ▶ High-beam headlights on, arrow 1.
The high-beam headlights are illuminated when the low-beam headlights are switched on.
- ▶ High-beam headlights off/headlight flasher, arrow 2.

Wiper system

General

Do not use the wipers on a dry windscreen, otherwise the wiper blades will wear or become damaged more quickly.

Safety notes

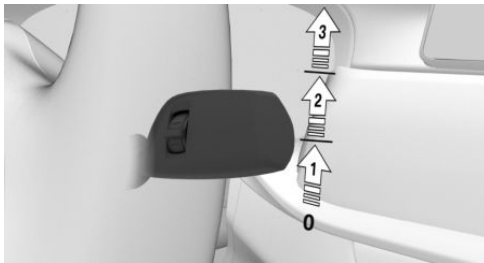
WARNING

If the wipers start moving when they are folded away from the windscreen, parts of the body may become trapped or the vehicle may be damaged. There is a risk of injury or material damage. Make sure that the vehicle is switched off when the wipers are folded away from the windscreen, and that the wipers are in contact with the windscreen when switching on.

NOTE

If the wipers are frozen to the windscreen, switching them on may cause the wiper blades to tear off and the wiper motor to overheat. There is a risk of material damage. Defrost the windscreen before switching on the wipers.

Switching on



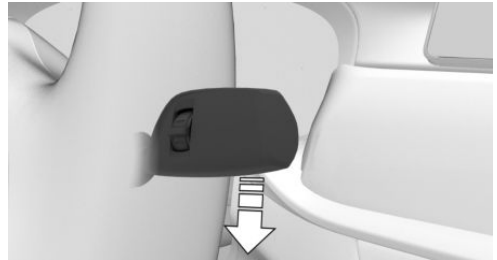
Press the lever upwards to the desired position.

- Rest position of the wipers, position 0.
- Rain sensor, position 1.
When the vehicle is at a standstill, the wipers switch to intermittent operation.
- Normal wiper speed, position 2.
When the vehicle is at a standstill, the wipers switch to normal speed.

If a journey is interrupted with the wiper system switched on: when the journey is resumed, the

wipers continue operating at the previously set level.

Switching off and flick-wiping



Press the lever down.

- To switch off: press the lever downwards to the home position.
- To flick-wipe: press the lever downwards from the home position.

The lever returns to the home position when released.

Rain sensor

Principle

The rain sensor automatically controls the wiper operation depending on the level of rainfall.

General

The sensor is mounted on the windscreen, directly in front of the rear-view mirror.

Safety note

NOTE

In car washes, the wipers may inadvertently start moving if the rain sensor is activated. There is a risk of material damage. Deactivate the rain sensor in car washes.

Activating



Press the lever upwards once from the home position, arrow 1.

Wiping is started.

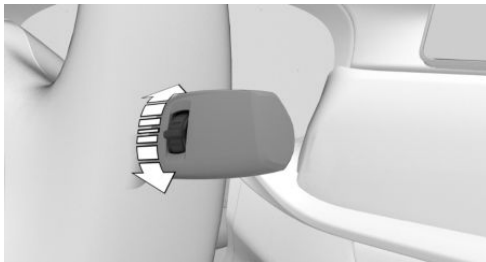
The LED in the wiper lever is illuminated.

If there is frost, wiping may not start.

Deactivating

Press the lever back to the home position.

Setting the sensitivity of the rain sensor



Turn the knurled wheel to set the sensitivity of the rain sensor.

Upwards: high sensitivity of the rain sensor.

Downwards: low sensitivity of the rain sensor.

Windscreen washer

Safety notes

⚠ WARNING

At low temperatures, the washer fluid can freeze onto the windscreen and restrict visibility. There is a risk of accident. Only use the washer systems if there is no possibility of the washer fluid freezing. Use antifreeze if required.

⚠ NOTE

If the washer fluid reservoir is empty, the washer pump cannot operate as intended. There is a risk of material damage. Do not use the washer system with the washer fluid reservoir empty.

Cleaning the windscreen



Pull the lever.

Fluid from the washer fluid reservoir is sprayed onto the windscreen and the wipers are operated briefly.

Windscreen washer jets

The windscreen washer jets are automatically heated when standby state is switched on.

Fold-out position of the wipers

Principle

In the fold-out position, the wipers can be folded away from the windscreen.

General

This is necessary for example when replacing the wiper blades or to keep them away from the windscreen when there is frost.

Safety notes

WARNING

If the wipers start moving when they are folded away from the windscreen, parts of the body may become trapped or the vehicle may be damaged. There is a risk of injury or material damage. Make sure that the vehicle is switched off when the wipers are folded away from the windscreen, and that the wipers are in contact with the windscreen when switching on.

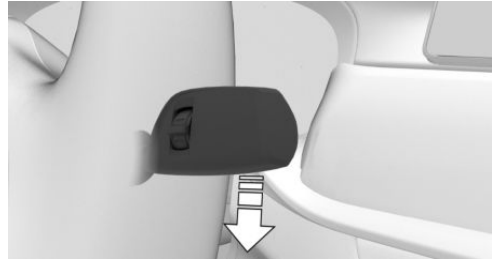
NOTE

If the wipers are frozen to the windscreen, switching them on may cause the wiper blades to tear off and the wiper motor to overheat. There is a risk of material damage. Defrost the windscreen before switching on the wipers.

Folding out the wipers

1. Switch on standby state.

2. Press the wiper lever down and hold until the wipers stop in an approximately vertical position.



3. Lift the wipers completely away from the windscreen.



Folding in the wipers

After folding the wipers in, the wiper system must be reactivated.

1. Fold the wipers fully down onto the windscreen.
2. Switch on standby state and press and hold the wiper lever down again.
3. The wipers move back to the rest position and are operational once again.

M Steptronic sport transmission

General

The M Steptronic Sport transmission is operated using the selector lever or the two shift paddles on the steering wheel.

The following functions are available:

- ▷ Various driving programmes: drive mode or sequential mode.
- ▷ Low Speed Assistant.
- ▷ Various Drivelogic programmes.
- ▷ Launch Control.
- ▷ Shift Lights.

Safety note

 WARNING

An unsecured vehicle can start moving and rolling away. There is a risk of accident. Before leaving the vehicle, secure it to prevent it from rolling away, for example by applying the parking brake.

Overview

Selector lever



Selector lever functions

Symbol	Function
	Drivelogic programmes
R	Reverse gear.
N	Neutral.
	Centre position, forward setting.
-	Downshift, manual.
+	Upshift, manual.

Symbol	Function
D/S	Drive mode or sequential mode.
P	Park.

Selector lever positions

D Drive mode

Selector lever position for driving. All gears for forward driving are selected automatically.

S Sequential mode

Selector lever position for driving. All gears for forward driving must be shifted manually.

R Reverse

Only engage selector lever position R when the vehicle is stationary.

N Neutral

In selector lever position N, the vehicle can be pushed or can roll without power from the engine, for example in car washes.

P Park

Selector lever position for parking the vehicle, for example. In selector lever position P, the transmission blocks the drive wheels.

Only engage selector lever position P when the vehicle is stationary.

Selector lever position P is automatically engaged in the following situations, for example:

- ▷ After switching off drive-ready state or standby state if selector lever position D/S or R is engaged.
- ▷ After switching off standby state if selector lever position N is engaged.
- ▷ If the driver's seat belt is unfastened, the driver's door is opened and the brake pedal is not depressed while the vehicle is at a standstill and selector lever position D/S or R is engaged.

Engaging selector lever position

General

Apply the brakes until you are ready to drive off, otherwise the vehicle will move when a drive position is selected.

The engaged selector lever position is shown in the instrument cluster and on the selector lever.

Operating requirements

The selector lever will only move from position P to another selector lever position if drive-ready state is switched on and the brake pedal is depressed.

Engaging selector lever positions D, N, R



With your seat belt fastened, depress the brake pedal and push or pull the selector lever in the appropriate direction. The selector lever returns to the middle position when released.

The selector lever engages into position R.

Engaging selector lever position P



Press button P.

Rolling or pushing the vehicle

General

In some situations, the vehicle may need to be rolled a short distance without power, for example in a car wash, or may need to be pushed.

Engaging selector lever position N

1. Switch on drive-ready state while pressing the brake.
2. If necessary, release the parking brake.
3. If necessary, deactivate Automatic Hold, see page 134.
4. Depress the brake pedal.
5. Engage selector lever position N.
6. Switch off drive-ready state.

Standby state then remains switched on and a Check Control message is shown.

The vehicle can now roll.

NOTE

Selector lever position P is automatically engaged when standby state is switched off. There is a risk of material damage. Do not switch off standby state in car washes.

Selector lever position P is automatically engaged after approximately 35 minutes.

If there is a fault, it may not be possible to change the selector lever position.

Unlock the transmission lockout electronically if necessary, see page 146.

Kick-down

Kickdown is used to achieve maximum driving performance in Drive mode.

Press the accelerator pedal down beyond the regular full-throttle position; some resistance will be felt.

Drive mode D/S

Principle

In Drive mode, all forward gears are automatically changed.

Activating drive mode



Push the selector lever out of the centre position in the D/S direction.

Drive mode is activated. The gear engaged appears on the instrument cluster together with a D, for example 1 D.

Deactivating Drive mode

Push the selector lever out of Drive mode in the D/S direction. Sequential mode is active.

The gear engaged appears on the instrument cluster, for example 1.

Sequential mode D/S

Principle

In sequential mode, it is possible to shift gears manually using the selector lever or the shift paddles without taking your foot off the accelerator.

General

Shortly before a minimum speed depending on the gear, it automatically downshifts.

When maximum engine speed is reached, there is no automatic upshift in sequential mode and the kick-down is deactivated.

Driving off is possible even in 2nd gear on a level carriageway, for example, on icy roads.

Activating sequential mode



Push the selector lever out of Drive mode in the D/S direction, arrow 1, or shift gears via the selector lever, arrows at 2.

Sequential mode is activated. The gear engaged appears on the instrument cluster, for example 1.

Deactivating sequential mode

Push the selector lever out of the centre position in the D/S direction. Drive mode is active.

The gear engaged appears on the instrument cluster together with a D, for example 1 D.

Changing gear

Principle

In sequential mode, it is possible to shift gears manually using the shift paddles or the selector lever.

Shift paddles on steering wheel enable fast gear-shifting without taking hands off steering wheel.

General

Gearshift

Gear shifting is only carried out if the engine speed and vehicle speed are appropriate, for example, the transmission will not shift down if the engine speed is too high.

The lowest possible gear is selected by simultaneously operating the kick-down and moving the selector lever forward or actuating the left shift paddle.

Temporary sequential mode

After a shift paddle is actuated in Drive mode, the transmission temporarily switches to sequential mode.

After conservative driving in sequential mode without acceleration or shifting via the shift paddles for a certain amount of time, the M Steptronic Sport transmission switches back to Drive mode.

Permanent sequential mode

Sequential mode remains permanently active if it was active before the shift paddle was actuated.

Switching to Drive mode

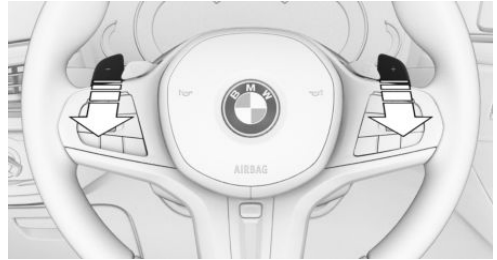
It is possible to switch to Drive mode as follows: pull and hold the right shift paddle.

Switching via the selector lever

- To shift up: pull the selector lever backwards.
- To shift down: press the selector lever forwards.

Changing in Drive mode has the effect of changing to Sequential mode.

Switching via the shift paddles



- Change up: pull right shift paddle.
- Change down: pull left shift paddle.

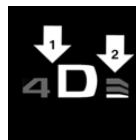
Display on the selector lever

In some situations, the actually engaged gearbox setting may be different from the selector lever position, and the display in the selector lever flashes.

In these cases, refer to the display in the instrument cluster.

Displays in the instrument cluster

Drive mode



- Engaged gear together with a D, arrow 1.
- Selected Drivelogic programme, see page 144, arrow 2.

Sequential mode



- Shift point indicator, see page 157, arrow 1.
- Engaged gear, arrow 2.
- Selected Drivelogic programme, see page 144, arrow 3.

Note

At very low outside temperatures, the display may not function. The current direction of travel can be recognised from the engaged selector lever position.

Low Speed Assistant

Principle

The Low Speed Assistant provides support at very low speeds. The vehicle drives at walking pace.

General

Use the Low Speed Assistant when manoeuvring or in stop-and-go traffic.

The Low Speed Assistant can also be used for rocking out on snow. To do this, shift between reverse gear and forward position without applying the brakes.

Activating

- 1. Switch on drive-ready state while pressing the brake.
- 2. If necessary, release the parking brake.
- 3. If necessary, deactivate Automatic Hold.
- 4. Engage selector lever position D/S or R.
- 5. Release brakes.

In 1st and 2nd gear and in reverse gear, the vehicle rolls at minimum speed.

Deactivating

Brake the vehicle until it comes to a stop.

Drivelogic

Principle

Drivelogic changes the shifting characteristics of the M Steptronic sport transmission. For example, the shifting points are changed in Drive mode and the shifting times in sequential mode.

General

3 Drivelogic programmes are available.

After each change between Sequential mode and Drive mode, the last programme selected is active.

If the drive-ready state is switched on after the vehicle has been in the rest state, programme D1 is active in Drive mode.

Programs

Programme	Drive mode	Sequential mode
 D1/S1	Efficient driving.	Comfortable gearshifts.
 D2/S2	Fast driving.	Sporty, crisp gearshifts.
 D3/S3	Sporty driving.	Maximum gearshift speed, Launch Control.

Selecting a channel

Via the rocker switch on the selector lever



Press the rocker switch until the desired programme is displayed in the instrument cluster.

Via iDrive

It is possible to configure the required program for the M1 or M2 buttons.

1. "CAR"
2.  "M setup"
3. "Configure M1" or "Configure M2"
4.  "Transmission"
5. Selecting the required program
 - ▷ "D1" to "D3": Drive mode.
 - ▷ "S1" to "S3": Sequential mode.

The setting is accepted immediately when the M1 or M2 configuration is active.

To activate the required configuration with the selected settings, press the corresponding button on the steering wheel:



Display in the instrument cluster



Selected drive programme corresponds to the number of illuminated fields.

Launch Control

Principle

When the ambient conditions are dry, Launch Control permits optimised acceleration on a road surface that offers plenty of grip.

General

Use of Launch Control causes premature component wear, as the function subjects the vehicle to very high stresses and loads.

Do not use Launch Control when running in, see page 298.

When starting with Launch Control, do not turn the steering wheel.

Operating requirements

Launch Control is available when the engine is at operating temperature. The engine is at operating temperature after an uninterrupted journey of at least 10 km, 6 miles.

Starting with Launch Control

1. Switch on drive-ready state.
2. Deactivate Dynamic Stability Control, see page 215.
3. Select sequential mode with gear 1 and Drivelogic programme S3.
4. Press the brake firmly with the left foot.
5. Press the accelerator pedal down beyond the resistance at the full-throttle position and hold, kick-down.

A flag symbol is shown in the instrument cluster.

Keep the accelerator pedal in this position.

6. The starting engine speed is adjusted. Release the brake within 3 seconds. The vehicle accelerates.

Upshifts are automatic as long as the flag symbol is displayed and the accelerator pedal is not released.

Using again during a journey

Once Launch Control has been used, the vehicle must travel a certain distance before Launch Control can be used again. Launch Control adapts to the ambient conditions when used again.

After using Launch Control

To assist driving stability, re-activate Dynamic Stability Control, DSC as soon as possible.

System limits

An experienced driver may be able to achieve better acceleration values in DSC OFF mode.

Unlocking the transmission lockout electronically

General

Unlock the transmission lockout electronically to manoeuvre the vehicle out of danger.

Unlocking is possible if the starter is able turn the engine.

Before releasing the transmission lockout, apply the parking brake to prevent the vehicle from rolling away.

Engaging selector lever position N

- 1. Apply the brakes and keep them applied.
- 2. Press the start/stop button. The starter must be heard to start turning. Press and hold the start/stop button.
- 3. With your free hand, press the selector lever to selector lever position N and hold it there until selector lever position N is displayed in the instrument cluster.

A Check Control message is shown.

- 4. Release the start/stop button and selector lever.
- 5. Release the brake as soon as the starter stops.
- 6. Manoeuvre the vehicle out of danger and then secure it against rolling away.

More information can be found in the Tow-starting and towing chapter, see page 364.

M Engine dynamics control

Principle

The M Engine Dynamics Control affects the response of the vehicle to movements of the accelerator pedal.

General

The system offers several different types of engine responsiveness:

Programme	Responsiveness
"EFFICIENT"	Efficient, comfortable. Minimised consumption. Ideal, for example, in city traffic or on snow.
"SPORT"	Sporty, dynamic.
"SPORT PLUS"	Spontaneous, direct. Maximum dynamics.

The "SPORT" and "SPORT PLUS" programmes change the sound characteristics of the exhaust system. The sound takes on a sporty nature.

Selecting a channel

Using the button



 Press the button until the desired programme is displayed in the instrument cluster.

Via iDrive

It is possible to configure the required program for the M1 or M2 buttons.

- 1. "CAR"
- 2.  "M setup"
- 3. "Configure M1" or "Configure M2"

4. "Engine"

5. Select the desired channel.

The setting is accepted immediately when the M1 or M2 configuration is active.

To activate the required configuration with the selected settings, press the corresponding button on the steering wheel:



Display in the instrument cluster



Engine dynamics control with selected program and activated display of the driving dynamics system states.

Sound control

Principle

Sound control changes the sound characteristics of the exhaust system.

General

When sound control is switched on, the sound of the exhaust system takes on a sporty nature.

When sound control is switched off, the sound is focused on comfort.

During the engine warm-up phase, see page 296, sound control does not have any effect on the sound of the exhaust system.

Selecting a channel

Using the button



Press the button to activate or deactivate sound control.

The LED illuminates when sound control is switched on.

Via iDrive

It is possible to configure the required program for the M1 or M2 buttons.

1. "CAR"
2.  "M setup"
3. "Configure M1" or "Configure M2"
4.  "Sound Control"
5. Select the desired channel.

The setting is accepted immediately when the M1 or M2 configuration is active.

To activate the required configuration with the selected settings, press the corresponding button on the steering wheel:



Displays

Vehicle equipment

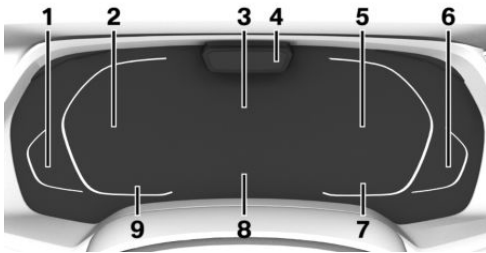
This chapter describes all standard, country-specific and special equipment available for the model series. It may therefore describe equipment and functions which are not installed in your vehicle, for example on account of the optional equipment selected or the country variant. This also applies to safety-relevant functions and systems. Please comply with the relevant laws and regulations when using the corresponding functions and systems.

Instrument cluster

General

The displays in the instrument cluster can sometimes differ from the illustrations in the Owner's Handbook.

Overview



- 1 Fuel gauge [154](#)
Range [156](#)
- 2 Speedometer
- 3 Central display area [148](#)
Service requirements [156](#)
Navigation display
- 4 Depending on the vehicle equipment: Driver Attention Camera

- 5 Revolution counter [154](#)
Selection lists [160](#)
Widgets in the instrument cluster [149](#)
Trip distance recorder, see Journey data [161](#)
Gear display with Drivelogic [155](#)
Drive dynamic systems [155](#)
- 6 Engine oil temperature [154](#)
- 7 Outside temperature [154](#)
- 8 Check Control [149](#)
- 9 Speed Limit Assist [231](#)
Speed Limit Info [158](#)
Time [61](#)

Central display area

Depending on the equipment and setting, the following is displayed in the central display area of the instrument cluster:

- Navigation displays such as the map view or, if route guidance is active, a route preview with route guidance information.
- Displays showing service requirements.

Some displays in the central display area can be configured individually.

The displays may vary depending on the equipment and country specifications.

Settings

Individual displays in the instrument cluster can be configured individually.

1. "CAR"
2. "Settings"
3. "Displays"
4. "Instrument cluster"
5. Select the desired setting.

Widgets in the instrument cluster

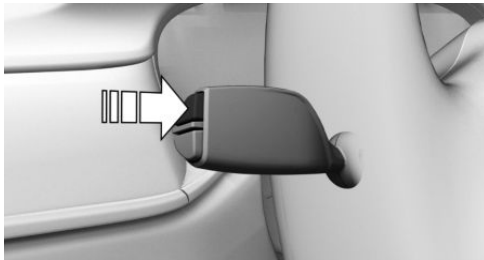
Principle

Displays for particular functions can be shown in the instrument cluster.

The following displays can be selected:

- Current entertainment source, for example radio.
- Torque and power.
- Journey data.
- Consumption display.
- Tyre data.

Selecting



Press the button on the turn indicator lever repeatedly until the desired widget is selected.

Display



Consumption display

Principle

Information on consumption can be shown as a widget in the instrument cluster, taking the form of a consumption display, for example.

Average consumption

Average consumption indicates the fuel consumption over a specific route.

Current consumption

The current consumption indicates how much fuel is currently being used. It is possible to check the economy and environmental compatibility of your driving style.

Energy recuperation

Energy recuperation involves converting the kinetic energy of the vehicle into electrical energy in overrun mode. The vehicle battery is partially charged and fuel consumption can be lowered.

Tyre data

Information on wheels and tyres can be shown as a widget in the instrument cluster.

Check Control

Principle

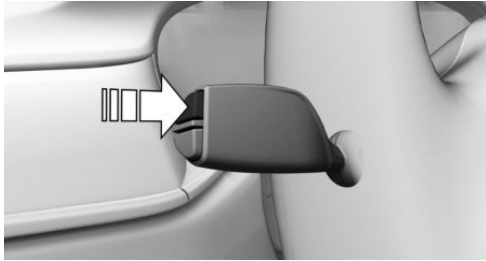
The Check Control monitors vehicle functions and alerts you to any faults in the monitored systems.

General

A Check Control message is displayed as a combination of indicator or warning lamps and text messages in the instrument cluster and, if applicable, in the Head-Up Display.

In addition, an acoustic signal is output if required and a text message is shown on the Control Display.

Hiding Check Control messages



Press the button on the turn indicator lever.

Continuous display

Some Check Control messages are displayed permanently and remain until the fault has been repaired. If a number of malfunctions have occurred at the same time, the messages are displayed in succession.

The messages can be hidden for approximately 8 seconds. Afterwards they are displayed again automatically.

Temporary display

Some Check Control messages are automatically hidden after approximately 20 seconds. The Check Control messages remain saved and can be displayed again.

Displaying saved Check Control messages

Via iDrive:

1. "CAR"
2. "Vehicle status"
3.  "Check Control messages"
4. Select a text message.

Display

Check Control



At least one Check Control message is displayed or saved.

Text messages

Text messages and symbols in the instrument cluster explain what a Check Control message means and what the indicator and warning lamps signify.

Supplementary text messages

Additional information, for example the cause of the fault and any action required, can be called up via Check Control.

If the message is urgent, the supplementary text is shown in the Control Display automatically.

It is possible to select additional assistance depending on the Check Control message.

Via iDrive:

1. "CAR"
2. "Vehicle status"
3.  "Check Control messages"
4. Select the required text message.
5. Select the desired setting.

Messages displayed at the end of a journey

Certain messages displayed when driving are displayed again when drive-ready state is switched off.

Indicator and warning lamps

Principle

Indicator and warning lamps in the instrument cluster show the status of some functions in the vehicle and indicate any malfunctions in monitored systems.

General

Indicator and warning lamps can illuminate in a variety of combinations and colours.

When drive-ready state is switched on, the functionality of some lights is checked and they illuminate briefly.

Red lights

Seat belt reminder



The driver's side seat belt is not fastened. On some country variants: the front passenger seat belt is not fastened or objects are detected on the front passenger seat.

Check whether the seat belt has been fastened correctly.

Seat belt reminder for rear seats



Seat belt on the corresponding rear seat is not fastened.

Airbag system



Airbag system and belt tensioner may be faulty.

Immediately have the vehicle checked by a Service Partner of the manufacturer or another qualified Service Partner or a specialist workshop.

Parking brake



The parking brake is engaged.

Release the parking brake, see page 134.

Brake system



Brake system malfunctioning. Continue driving at moderate speed.

Immediately have the vehicle checked by a Service Partner of the manufacturer or another qualified Service Partner or a specialist workshop.

Front-end collision warning with light braking function



Indicator lamp is illuminated: advance warning. Brake and increase the distance.

Indicator lamp flashes and an acoustic signal sounds: acute warning. Brake and perform an evasive manoeuvre, if necessary.

For further information:

Front-end collision warning with light braking function, see page 181.

Person warning with City light braking function



Indicator lamp is illuminated and an acoustic signal sounds: imminent collision with a detected pedestrian or a cyclist.

Take action yourself immediately by braking or swerving.

For further information:

Person warning with City light braking function, see page 187.

Night Vision with person and animal recognition



An infrared camera scans the area in front of the vehicle and warns of people and animals on the road.



Indicator lamp is illuminated: advance warning. Brake and perform an evasive manoeuvre, if necessary.

Indicator lamp flashes and an acoustic signal sounds: acute warning. Immediately brake or take evasive action.

For further information:

Night Vision with person and animal recognition, see page 190.

Yellow lights

Anti-lock Brake System ABS



Braking force boost may be faulty. Avoid sudden braking. Bear in mind that stopping distances will be longer.

Have the vehicle checked immediately by a Service Partner of the manufacturer or another qualified Service Partner or a specialist workshop.

Dynamic Stability Control DSC



If the indicator lamp is flashing: DSC is regulating the acceleration and braking forces. The vehicle is being stabilised.

Decrease speed and adjust driving style to the road conditions.

If the indicator lamp is illuminated: DSC has failed.

Immediately have the system checked by a Service Partner of the manufacturer or another qualified Service Partner or a specialist workshop.

DSC, see page 214.

Dynamic Stability Control DSC deactivated



DSC, see page 214, is deactivated or M Dynamic Mode MDM, see page 215, is activated.

Runflat indicator RPA



RPA reports a loss of tyre inflation pressure in a tyre.

Reduce your speed and carefully stop the vehicle. Avoid heavy braking and sudden steering manoeuvres.

Runflat indicator RPA, see page 329.

Tyre Pressure Monitor TPM



Indicator lamp illuminates: the Tyre Pressure Monitor is reporting a low tyre inflation pressure or a flat tyre. Note the information in the Check Control message.

Indicator lamp flashes and then illuminates continuously: no flat tyres or loss of tyre inflation pressure can be detected.

- ▷ Fault due to systems or devices with the same radio frequency: the system is automatically reactivated upon leaving the field of interference.
- ▷ In the case of tyres with special approval: TPM was unable to complete the reset. Re-set the system again.
- ▷ A wheel without TPM wheel electronics is fitted: if necessary have it checked by a Service Partner of the manufacturer or another qualified Service Partner or a specialist workshop.
- ▷ Malfunction: have the system checked by a Service Partner of the manufacturer or another qualified Service Partner or a specialist workshop.

Tyre Pressure Monitor TPM, see page 324.

Steering system



The steering system may be faulty. Have the system checked by a Service Partner of the manufacturer or another qualified Service Partner or a specialist workshop.

Engine warning light



Engine malfunction. Have the vehicle checked by a Service Partner of the manufacturer or another qualified Service Partner or a specialist workshop.

Socket for on-board diagnosis, see page 348.

Rear fog light



Rear fog light is switched on.

Rear fog light, see page [171](#).

Green lights

Seat belt reminder for rear seats



Seat belt on the corresponding rear seat is fastened.

Turn indicator



The turn indicator is switched on.

If the indicator bulb flashes more rapidly than usual, a turn indicator has failed.

Turn indicators, see page [136](#).

Side lights



The side lights are switched on.

Side lights/low-beam headlights, see page [168](#).

Low-beam headlights



Low-beam headlights are switched on.

Side lights/low-beam headlights, see page [168](#).

Lane Departure Warning



If the indicator lamp is illuminated: the system is switched on. At least one lane marking has been detected and warnings can be issued on at least one side of the vehicle.

Lane Departure Warning, see page [194](#).

High-beam assistance



High-beam assistance is switched on.

The high-beam headlights are switched on and off automatically according to traffic conditions.

High-beam assistance, see page [170](#).

Automatic Hold



Automatic Hold is activated. The vehicle is held automatically when at a standstill.

Automatic Hold, see page [134](#).

Manual Speed Limiter



If the indicator lamp is illuminated: the system is switched on.

If the indicator lamp is flashing: set speed limit is exceeded.

For further information:

Manual Speed Limiter, see page [220](#).

Cruise Control



Indicator lamp is illuminated: the system is active.

Cruise Control, see page [221](#).

Active Cruise Control with Stop&Go function



If the indicator lamp is illuminated: the system is switched on.

For further information:



Active Cruise Control with Stop&Go function, see page [224](#).

Blue lights

High-beam headlights



The high-beam headlights are switched on.

High-beam headlights, see page [136](#).

White lights

M xDrive: rear-wheel drive activated



The M xDrive programme 2WD is activated, see page 217. The drive forces are distributed via the rear axle.

Fuel gauge

Principle

The current fill level of the fuel tank is displayed.

General

The angle of the vehicle may cause the display to fluctuate.

For notes on refuelling, see page 312.

Display



An arrow next to the petrol pump symbol indicates on which side of the vehicle the fuel filler flap is located.

The current range is displayed as a number.

Revolution counter

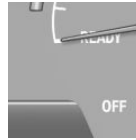
A yellow advance warning zone and a red warning zone display the permitted engine speed range. Permitted engine speed increases as engine oil temperature rises.

It is vital to avoid engine speeds in the red warning zone. In this zone, the fuel supply is interrupted to protect the engine.

Standby state and drive-ready state



OFF in the revolution counter indicates that the drive-ready state is switched off and the standby state is switched on.



The letters READY in the revolution counter indicate that the Auto Start Stop function is ready for automatic engine starting.

For more information, see Rest state, standby state and drive-ready state, see page 37.

Engine oil temperature

Display



- ▶ Cold engine: the pointer is located at a low temperature value. Drive at moderate engine and road speeds.
- ▶ Normal operating temperature: the pointer is in the middle or the bottom half of the temperature display.

- ▶ Hot engine: the pointer is located at a high temperature value. A Check Control message is also displayed.

To check the coolant level, see page 344.

Outside temperature

General

If the display drops to +3 °C/+37 °F or lower, a signal sounds.

A Check Control message is shown.

There is an increased risk of black ice.

Safety note

WARNING

Even at temperatures above +3 °C/+37 °F there may be an increased risk of black ice, for example on bridges or on shaded sections of road. There is a risk of accident. At low temperatures, adjust driving style to the weather conditions.

Digital speedometer

General

The digital tachometer is permanently displayed in the instrument cluster.

Setting unit

The unit for the digital tachometer can be set as appropriate for the country version.

1. "CAR"
2. "Settings"
3. "General settings"
4. "Units"
5. "Digital speedometer"
6. Select the desired setting.

The setting is saved for the currently used profile.

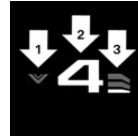
Display



The current speed is shown in the instrument cluster.

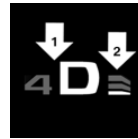
Gear display with Drivelogic

Sequential mode



- ▶ Shift point indicator, arrow 1.
- ▶ Engaged gear, arrow 2.
- ▶ Selected Drivelogic programme, arrow 3.

Drive mode



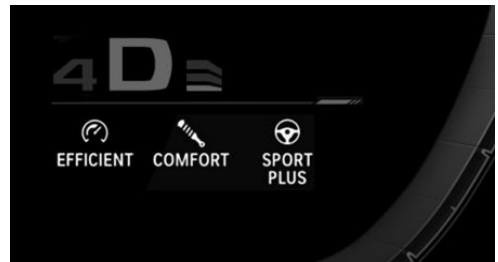
- ▶ Engaged gear together with a D, arrow 1.
- ▶ Selected Drivelogic programme, arrow 2.

Driving dynamic systems

Principle

The system states of the driving dynamics are shown in the instrument cluster.

Display



Symbols

Symbols	Description
	M engine dynamics control, see page 146.
	Adaptive M suspension, see page 260.
	Servotronic, see page 218.

Range

Principle

The range shows what distance can still be covered with the current amount of fuel in the tank.

General

The estimated range available with the remaining fuel is permanently displayed in the instrument cluster.

A Check Control message is displayed briefly if the remaining range is low. If a dynamic driving style is adopted, for example fast cornering, engine function cannot be ensured at all times.

If the range drops below approximately 50 km, 30 miles the Check Control message is displayed continuously.

Safety note

 **NOTE**

If the range drops below 50 km, 30 miles, the engine may no longer be supplied with sufficient fuel. Engine function is no longer ensured. There is a risk of material damage. Refuel in good time.

Display



The current range is displayed as a number next to the fuel gauge.

Service requirements

Principle

The function shows the current service requirements and related maintenance jobs.

General

The distance or time remaining until the next service is displayed briefly in the instrument cluster after drive-ready state is switched on.

The current service requirements can be read out from the vehicle key by a service advisor. Some information on service requirements can also be shown on the BMW display key.

Display

Detailed information on service requirements

More detailed information on the maintenance work required can be displayed on the Control Display.

Via iDrive:

1. "CAR"
2. "Vehicle status"
3.  "Service requirements"
Essential maintenance routines and any statutory inspections required are displayed.
4. Select an entry to display more detailed information.

Symbols

Sym-bols	Description
	No servicing is currently needed.
	Maintenance or a statutory inspection is due soon.
	Servicing is overdue.

Entering deadlines

Enter deadlines for statutory vehicle inspections. Ensure that the date and time are set correctly in the vehicle.

Via iDrive:

1. "CAR"
2. "Vehicle status"
3.  "Service requirements"
4. "BMW Service"
5. "Date:"
6. Select the desired setting.

Service history

Principle

Maintenance that has been performed can be displayed on the Control Display. The function is available as soon as a maintenance visit has been documented in the vehicle data.

General

Have maintenance work performed by a Service Partner of the manufacturer or another qualified Service Partner or a specialist workshop. The maintenance work carried out is documented in the vehicle data.

Displays

Via iDrive:

1. "CAR"
2. "Vehicle status"
3.  "Service requirements"
Essential maintenance routines and any statutory inspections required are displayed.
4.  "Service history"
5. Select an entry to display more detailed information.

Symbols

Symbols	Description
	Green: maintenance has been carried out on time.
	Yellow: maintenance has been carried out later than scheduled.
	Maintenance has not been carried out.

Shift point indicator

Principle

The system recommends the most efficient gear for the current driving situation.

General

The shift point indicator is active in Sequential mode of the M Steptronic sport transmission.

Displays

Symbol	Description
	Shift up into most efficient gear.
	Shift down into most efficient gear.

Speed Limit Info with overtaking restriction display

Speed Limit Info

Principle

Speed Limit Info shows the currently applicable speed limit in the instrument cluster and, if applicable, the Head-Up Display, as well as additional signs where necessary; for example, in wet conditions.

General

The camera located near the rear-view mirror detects road signs at the edge of the road as well as variable overhead signs.

Road signs with additional instructions, for example restrictions applicable in wet conditions, are taken into account and compared with internal vehicle data, for example the windscreen wiper signal. The road sign and associated additional instructions are then displayed in the instrument cluster and the Head-Up Display, if applicable, or ignored, depending on the situation. Some additional signs are taken into account for speed limit evaluation, but are not displayed in the instrument cluster.

The system takes the information saved in the navigation system into account and also displays the speed limits for sections of road with no road signs.

Speed limits for towing a trailer are not shown.

Overtaking restriction display

Principle

Overtaking restriction signs and end of restriction signs which have been detected by the camera are indicated by corresponding symbols in the instrument cluster and, if applicable, the Head-Up Display.

General

The system considers overtaking restrictions and ends of restrictions that are indicated by means of signs.

Nothing will be displayed in the following situations:

- ▶ In countries where overtaking restrictions are primarily shown by road markings.
- ▶ On routes without signs.
- ▶ In the case of railway crossings, lane markings and other situations which indicate an overtaking restriction but which are not signposted to this effect.

Overtaking restrictions for towing a trailer are not shown.

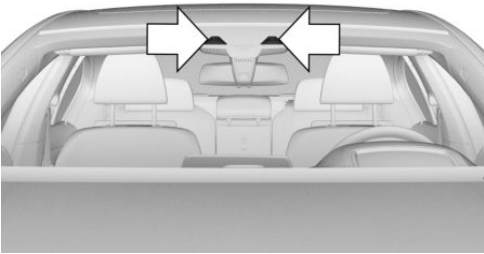
Safety note

 WARNING

The system does not relieve you of your personal responsibility to assess the visibility conditions and traffic situation correctly. There is a risk of accident. Adapt your driving style to the traffic conditions. Observe the traffic situation and intervene actively if the situation warrants it.

Overview

Camera



The camera is located near the rear-view mirror. Keep the windscreen clean and clear in this area.

Displaying Speed Limit Info

General

Depending on the equipment, Speed Limit Info is displayed permanently in the instrument cluster or via iDrive.

Activating

Via iDrive:

1. "CAR"
2. "Settings"
3. "Displays"
4. "Instrument cluster"
5. "Speed Limit Info"

Display

General

Depending on the national equipment, additional signs and overtaking restrictions are displayed together with Speed Limit Info.

Speed Limit Info



Present speed limit.



Depending on the vehicle equipment, Speed Limit Info may not be available.



Overtaking restriction display



No overtaking.



End of overtaking restriction.

Additional signs

Symbols	Description
	Speed limit with time limit.
	Speed limit only applies in wet conditions.
	Speed limit only applies in snowy conditions.
	Speed limit only applies in foggy conditions.

Symbols	Description
	Speed limit applies to exit on left.
	Speed limit applies to exit on right.

Speed Limit Info with preview

Depending on the equipment version, an additional symbol with distance information may also be displayed outside built-up areas to indicate that a change in speed limit is ahead. Depending on the vehicle equipment, temporary speed limits may also be displayed, for example speed limits at roadworks.

Temporary speed limits can only be displayed if the following services are selected in the data protection menu, see page 65, for the navigation system:

- ▷ "Learning map"
- ▷ "Map update"

Wrong-way driving warning

Depending on the equipment version, the system uses navigation data and road signs, for example no entry, roundabout or keep right/left signs, as the basis for detecting whether the vehicle is driving the wrong way on motorways, roundabouts and one-way streets.

A warning is shown in the instrument cluster and, where applicable, in the Head-Up Display and an acoustic signal sounds as soon as a road is entered in the wrong direction of travel.

System limits

Functionality may be limited or incorrect information may be displayed in some situations such as:

- ▷ In thick fog, wet conditions or snow.
- ▷ If road signs are fully or partially obscured by objects, stickers or paint.
- ▷ If the vehicle is too close to the vehicle ahead.

- ▷ In the case of bright oncoming light or strong reflections.
- ▷ If the area of windscreen in front of the rear-view mirror is covered with condensation, dirt, stickers, labels, etc.
- ▷ If the camera has overheated due to excessively high temperatures and has been temporarily deactivated.
- ▷ As a result of incorrect detection by the camera.
- ▷ If the speed limits stored in the navigation system or road data are incorrect.
- ▷ In the case of speed limits that depend on the time of day or day of the week.
- ▷ In areas not covered by the navigation system.
- ▷ If there are navigation discrepancies, for example due to changes in road layout.
- ▷ In the case of electronic road signs.
- ▷ When overtaking buses or trucks with road sign stickers.
- ▷ If traffic signs do not correspond to the standard.
- ▷ If road signs are detected that apply to a parallel road.
- ▷ In the case of country-specific signs or road layouts.
- ▷ During the camera calibration process immediately after vehicle delivery.

Selection lists

Principle

The instrument cluster or the Head-Up Display can show lists for certain functions and can be used for operation where applicable.

- ▷ Entertainment source.
- ▷ Current audio source.
- ▷ Recent calls list.

If applicable, the relevant menu is opened on the Control Display.

Display



Depending on the equipment, the list in the instrument cluster may differ from the illustration.

Displaying and using the list

Button	Function
	To change the entertainment source. Press the button again to close the list currently displayed.
	Display the last calls list.
	Turn the knurled wheel to select the desired setting. Press the knurled wheel to confirm the setting. The list that is currently selected can be displayed in the instrument cluster again by turning the knurled wheel.

Journey data

Principle

Values relating to the journey, such as the average consumption or the trip distance, are displayed.

General

The journey data can be shown on the Control Display and in the instrument cluster.

The values can be displayed and reset according to different intervals; for example, after refuelling.

Display on the Control Display

Overview

The following information is shown as a function of the set interval:

- ▷ Set interval for displaying the journey data.
- ▷ Average fuel consumption as a function of the set interval.
- ▷ Average speed.
- ▷ Total time engine is switched off by Auto Start Stop function.
- ▷ The route covered in the coasting drive state.
- ▷ Consumption history as a diagram.

Displays

Via iDrive:

1. "CAR"
2. "Driving information"
3. "Journey data"

Consumption history

The consumption history shows the average consumption in a diagram as a function of the route covered.

Display in the instrument cluster

Information about the stretch of road can be displayed as a widget in the revolution counter. Selecting and setting widgets in the instrument cluster. Further information: widgets in the instrument cluster, see page 149.

The following information is displayed:

- ▷ Total distance driven
- ▷ Set interval for displaying the journey data.

- ▷ Route covered, depending on the set interval.
- ▷ Average speed.

Configuring the journey data display

The intervals for displaying the journey data in the instrument cluster and on the Control Display can be configured.

Via iDrive:

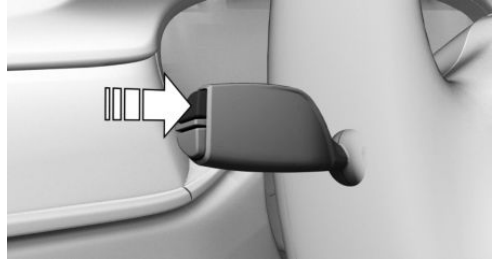
1. "CAR"
2. "Driving information"
3. "Journey data"
4. "Values since"
5. Select the desired setting:
 - ▷ "Start of journey ()": the values are reset automatically if the vehicle is at a standstill for approximately four hours.
 - ▷ "Refuel ()": the values are reset automatically after refuelling with a significant amount of fuel.
 - ▷ "Ex works": the values since leaving the factory are displayed.
 - ▷ "Individual ()": the values since the last manual reset are displayed. The values can be reset at any time.

Resetting average values manually

The following interval can be reset manually at any time: "Individual ()".

Via the button on the turn indicator lever:

1. Press the button on the turn indicator lever repeatedly until the widget for the journey data is selected.



2. Press and hold the button on the turn indicator lever.

Via iDrive:

1. "CAR"
2. "Driving information"
3. "Journey data"
4. "Values since"
5. "Reset individual"

The average values and counters are reset. Once the average values and counters have been reset, the following interval is automatically set: "Individual ()".

Sport displays

Principle

The sport displays primarily assist a sporty driving style.

Display on the Control Display

Overview

The following information is displayed:

- ▷ Torque.
- ▷ Power.

Displays

Via iDrive:

1. "CAR"
2. "Driving information"
3. "Sport displays"

Display in the instrument cluster

The sport displays can be shown as a widget in the instrument cluster, see page [149](#).

Vehicle status

General

It is possible to show the status of some systems and perform actions on them.

Calling up the vehicle status

Via iDrive:

1. "CAR"
2. "Vehicle status"

Overview of information shown

Symbols	Description
	"Flat Tyre Monitor": status of the runflat indicator RPA, see page 329 .
	"Tyre Pressure Monitor": status of the Tyre Pressure Monitor TPM, see page 324 .
	"Engine oil level": Electronic oil measurement, see page 341 .
	"Check Control messages": to display saved Check Control messages, see page 150 .
	"Service requirements": to display service requirements, see page 156 .

Head-Up Display

Principle

The system projects important information, for example the speed, into the driver's field of vision.

The driver can register this information without having to divert attention from the road.

General

Follow the instructions on cleaning the Head-Up Display.

Overview



Switching on/off

Via iDrive:

1. "CAR"
2. "Settings"
3. "Displays"
4. "Head-up display"
5. "Head-up display"

Display

Overview

The following information is displayed in the Head-Up Display:

- ▷ Speed.
- ▷ Navigation instructions.
- ▷ Check Control messages.

- ▷ Selection list in the instrument cluster.
- ▷ Driver Assistance Systems.

Some of this information is only shown briefly when needed.

Selecting displays in the Head-Up Display

Via iDrive:

1. "CAR"
2. "Settings"
3. "Displays"
4. "Head-up display"
5. Select the desired setting.

The setting is saved for the current driver profile.

M View

General

In the M view, the displays on the Head-up Display switch from the standard view to a more sporty, M-specific view.

Activating/deactivating

Via iDrive:

1. "CAR"
2.  "M setup"
3. "Configure M1" or "Configure M2"
4.  "Head-up displ."
5. Select the desired setting:
 - ▷ "M VIEW": the selected configuration always shows the M view in the Head-Up Display.
 - ▷ "STANDARD": the selected configuration always shows the standard view in the Head-Up Display.

The setting is saved for the current driver profile.

Setting the view in M Setup

In M Setup, various settings can be made for the Head-Up Display.

1. "CAR"
2.  "M setup"
3. "Configure M1" or "Configure M2"
4.  "Head-up displ."
5. Select the desired setting.

Adjusting the brightness

The brightness is automatically adapted to the ambient light.

The default setting can be adjusted manually.

Via iDrive:

1. "CAR"
2. "Settings"
3. "Displays"
4. "Head-up display"
5. "Brightness"
6. Turn the Controller until the desired brightness is obtained.
7. Press the Controller.

The brightness of the Head-Up Display can also be adjusted with the instrument lighting if the low-beam headlights are switched on.

Adjusting the height

Via iDrive:

1. "CAR"
2. "Settings"
3. "Displays"
4. "Head-up display"
5. "Height"
6. Turn the Controller until the desired height is obtained.
7. Press the Controller.

The setting is saved for the current driver profile.

The height of the Head-Up Display can also be saved with the memory function.

Adjusting the rotation

The Head-Up Display view can be rotated.

Via iDrive:

1. "CAR"
2. "Settings"
3. "Displays"
4. "Head-up display"
5. "Rotation"
6. Turn the Controller until the desired setting is reached.
7. Press the Controller.

Additional settings

Via iDrive:

1. "CAR"
2. "Settings"
3. "Displays"
4. "Head-up display"
5. Select the desired setting:
 - ▷ "Speed Assistant": call up settings for speed assistance.
 - ▷ "Display infotainment lists in": set whether the selection lists are displayed in the instrument cluster or in the Head-Up Display.
 - ▷ "Reduced height": if some of the information is not in the driver's field of view, the information can be displayed in the lower part of the Head-Up Display.

Visibility of the display

The visibility of the displays on the Head-Up Display can be affected by the following:

- ▷ Seat position.
- ▷ Objects placed on the Head-Up Display cover.

- ▷ Sunglasses with certain polarisation filters.
- ▷ Wet roads.
- ▷ Adverse lighting conditions.

If the image is distorted, have the default settings checked by a Service Partner of the manufacturer or another qualified Service Partner or a specialist workshop.

Special windscreen

The windscreen is an integral part of the system.

The shape of the windscreen enables a sharp image to be projected.

A film in the windscreen prevents the projection of double images.

Therefore if the special windscreen needs to be replaced, it is strongly recommended that this be carried out by a Service Partner of the manufacturer or another qualified Service Partner or a specialist workshop.

Shift Lights

Principle

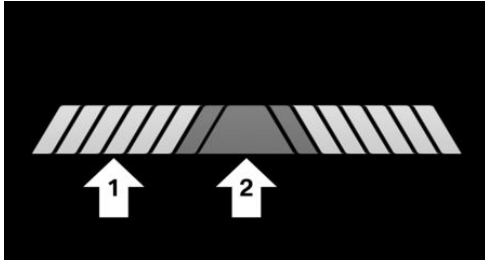
The shift lights indicate the maximum shift point at which the best possible acceleration can be achieved.

General

When the Head-Up Display is switched on, the shift lights are displayed on the Head-Up Display. Shift lights are only displayed on the Head-Up Display in the M view.

The shift lights are displayed in the instrument cluster if the Head-Up Display is switched off.

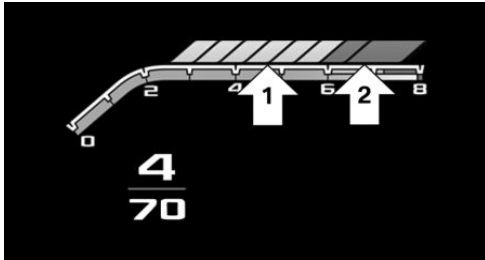
Shift Lights in the instrument cluster



- ▷ Current engine speed is shown in the revolution counter.
- ▷ Arrow 1: yellow buttons illuminating successively indicate when a gearshift is due.
- ▷ Arrow 2: buttons illuminate red. Latest point to upshift.

When the maximum engine speed is reached, the entire display flashes. The fuel supply is limited to protect the engine.

Shift Lights on the Head-Up Display



- ▷ Current engine speed is shown in the revolution counter.
- ▷ Arrow 1: yellow buttons illuminating successively indicate when a gearshift is due.
- ▷ Arrow 2: buttons illuminate red. Latest point to upshift.

When the maximum permissible engine speed is reached, the entire display flashes and the fuel supply is limited to protect the engine.

Lights

Vehicle equipment

This chapter describes all standard, country-specific and special equipment available for the model series. It may therefore describe equipment and functions which are not installed in your vehicle, for example on account of the optional equipment selected or the country variant. This also applies to safety-relevant functions and systems. Please comply with the relevant laws and regulations when using the corresponding functions and systems.

Light and lighting

Switch in the vehicle



The light switch panel is located next to the steering wheel.

Symbol	Function
	Rear fog light.
	Night Vision.
	Lights off. Automatic driving lights control. Daytime driving lights.

Symbol	Function
	Side lights.
	Automatic driving lights control. Adaptive light functions.
	Low-beam headlights.
	Instrument lighting.
	Parking light, right.
	Parking light, left.

Automatic driving lights control

Principle

Depending on ambient light conditions, the system switches the low-beam headlights on or off automatically, for example in a tunnel, at twilight and in rain or snow.

General

The headlights may also come on when the sun is low against a blue sky.

Activating

Switch position: 0 , 

The indicator lamp in the instrument cluster is illuminated when the low-beam headlights are switched on.

System limits

The automatic driving lights control is no substitute for using your own judgement to assess the light conditions.

The sensors are unable, for example, to recognise fog or hazy weather. In such situations, switch on the lights manually.

Side lights, low-beam headlights and parking light

General

Switch position:  ,  , 

If the driver's door is opened when drive-ready state is switched off, the exterior lights are switched off automatically after a given time.

Side lights

Switching on

Switch position:   

The vehicle is illuminated all round.

Do not leave the side lights on for extended periods of time, since the vehicle battery could discharge and it may no longer be possible to switch on drive-ready state.

Low-beam headlights

Switching on

Switch position: 

The low-beam headlights illuminate if drive-ready state is switched on.

Parking lights

When parking the vehicle, it is possible to switch on a parking light on one side.

Button	Function
	Parking light, right on/off.
	Parking light, left on/off.

Welcome lights

General

Depending on the equipment version, the exterior lights of the vehicle can be individually adjusted.

Activating/deactivating

Switch position:  , 

Via iDrive:

- "CAR"
- "Settings"
- "Exterior lighting"
- Select the desired setting:
 - "Welcome and goodbye"

When the vehicle is unlocked, individual light functions are switched on for a limited time.

Headlight courtesy delay feature

General

If the high-beam headlights are activated after switching off drive-ready state, the low-beam headlights stay illuminated for a certain amount of time.

Setting the duration

Via iDrive:

1. "CAR"
2. "Settings"
3. "Exterior lighting"
4. "Home lights"
5. Select the desired setting.
6. "OK"

Daytime driving lights

General

Switch position: **0** , 

The daytime driving lights illuminate if drive-ready state is switched on.

Activating/deactivating

In some countries, daytime driving lights are compulsory, in which case the daytime driving lights cannot be deactivated.

Via iDrive:

1. "CAR"
2. "Settings"
3. "Exterior lighting"
4. Depending on national-market version:
"Daytime driving lights" or "Daytime driving lights rear"

The setting is saved for the current driver profile.

Adaptive light functions

Principle

Adaptive light functions makes it possible to illuminate the road responsively.

General

The adaptive light functions consist of one system or multiple systems, depending on the equipment version:

- ▷ Adaptive Headlights.
- ▷ Variable light distribution.
- ▷ Cornering light.
- ▷ Roundabout light.

Activating

Switch position: 

The adaptive light functions are active when drive-ready state is switched on.

Adaptive Headlights

General

The headlight beams follow the road ahead in response to the steering angle and other parameters.

To prevent dazzling oncoming vehicles, the Adaptive Headlights do not swivel to the opposite side of the road when stationary.

If the headlights are converted, see page [172](#), the Adaptive Headlights may only function to a limited extent.

Variable light distribution

Principle

Variable light distribution illuminates the road even more effectively.

General

The light distribution is automatically adapted to the speed.

If equipment includes a navigation system, the light distribution is automatically adapted depending on the navigation data and speed.

City light

The light beam from the low-beam headlights is extended at the sides.

Motorway beam pattern

The range of the low-beam headlights is increased.

Cornering light

In sharp turns up to a specified speed, for example in hairpin bends or when turning off, a cornering light is added to illuminate the inside area of the bend.

The cornering light is activated automatically depending on the steering angle or use of the turn indicators, where applicable.

When reversing, the cornering light may be activated automatically irrespective of the steering angle.

Roundabout light

Shortly before driving onto a roundabout, the cornering light on both sides is switched on. The edge of the road is illuminated more effectively. Shortly before leaving a roundabout, the cornering light on both sides is switched off again.

Adaptive headlight beam throw adjustment

Adaptive headlight beam throw adjustment compensates for acceleration and braking manoeuvres and vehicle load conditions to prevent oncoming vehicles from being dazzled. Illumination of the road is optimised.

High-beam assistance

Principle

High-beam assistance detects other road users in good time and activates or deactivates the high beam depending on the traffic situation.

General

High-beam assistance ensures that the high-beam headlights are switched on when the traffic situation allows. The high-beam headlights are not switched on by the system at low speeds.

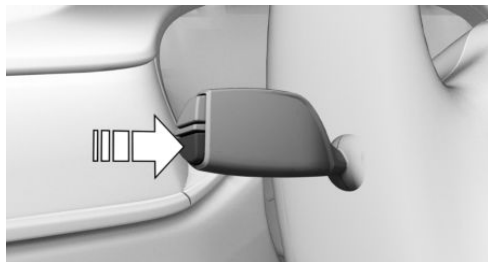
The system responds to the lights from oncoming traffic and traffic driving ahead of you, and to ambient lighting, for example in built-up areas.

The high-beam headlights can be switched on and off manually at any time.

If no-dazzle high-beam assistance is installed, the high-beam headlights are not switched off for oncoming vehicles or vehicles driving ahead of you; instead, the system masks those areas of the beam which would otherwise dazzle oncoming traffic or traffic driving ahead. In this case, the blue indicator lamp continues to illuminate.

If the headlights are converted, see page [172](#), high-beam assistance may only function to a limited extent.

Activating



Switch position: 

Press the button on the turn indicator lever.



The indicator lamp in the instrument cluster is illuminated when the low-beam headlights are switched on.

The system will switch automatically between low-beam and high-beam headlights.

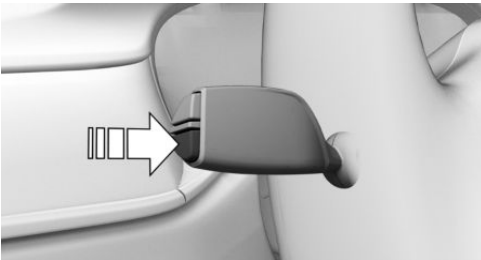


The blue indicator lamp in the instrument cluster illuminates if the high beam is switched on by the system.

The high-beam assistant is deactivated by switching the high beams on and off manually.

To reactivate high-beam assistance, press the button on the turn indicator lever.

Deactivating



Press the button on the turn indicator lever.

System limits

High-beam assistance cannot replace the driver's own judgement as to when to use the high-beam headlights. Therefore activate the dipped headlights manually if the situation requires it.

In the following situations, the system will not operate or its operation will be impaired and your intervention may be required:

- ▷ In extremely adverse weather conditions such as fog or heavy precipitation.
- ▷ When detecting poorly lit road users such as pedestrians, cyclists or horse riders or carriages and when trains or ships are close to the road, or when animals are crossing the road.

- ▷ On tight bends, on steep brows or hollows of hills, when there is crossing traffic or if the view of oncoming vehicles on a motorway is obstructed.
- ▷ In poorly lit towns or where there are highly reflective signs.
- ▷ If the area of windscreen in front of the rear-view mirror is covered with condensation, dirt, stickers, labels, etc.

Laser high-beam headlights

Principle

The beam throw of the high-beam headlights is increased for even better illumination of the road surface.

General

When high-beam headlights are switched on, laser high-beam headlight is switched on automatically in addition to LED high-beam headlight from a speed of approximately 60 km/h, 37 mph.

Depending on the country variant, additional information can be found on the laser information notice on the headlights.

Fog lights

Rear fog light

Operating requirements

The low-beam headlights must be switched on before the rear fog light can be activated.

Switching on/off



Press the button.



The yellow indicator lamp in the instrument cluster is illuminated when the rear fog light is switched on.

If automatic driving lights control has been activated, the low-beam headlights switch on automatically when the rear fog light is switched on.

Left-hand/right-hand traffic

General

When driving in countries where vehicles drive on the opposite side of the road to your vehicle's country of registration, you will need to prevent your headlights from dazzling oncoming vehicles.

Adaptive LED headlights

Converting the headlights

Via iDrive:

1. "CAR"
2. "Settings"
3. "Exterior lighting"
4. "Right/left-hand traffic"
5. Select the desired setting.

System limits

High-beam assistance may only function to a limited extent.

The availability of the adaptive light functions might be restricted.

Instrument lighting

Operating requirements

The brightness can only be adjusted when the side lights or the low-beam headlights are switched on.

To adjust



The brightness can be adjusted using the knurled wheel.

Interior light

General

Depending on the equipment, the interior light, the footwell lights, door entry lighting, ambient lighting and loudspeaker lighting are controlled automatically.

Overview

Buttons in the vehicle



Interior light



Reading lights

Switching the interior light on/off



Press the button.

To switch off permanently: press and hold the button for approximately 3 seconds.

The interior light in the rear can be switched on and off independently. The button is located on the roof lining in the rear.

Switching the reading lights on/off



Press the button.

Depending on the equipment version, there are reading lights located at the front and in the rear beside the interior light.

Ambient lighting

General

Depending on the equipment, the lighting for some of the interior lights can be adjusted.

Switching on/off

The ambient lighting is switched on when the vehicle is unlocked and switched off when the vehicle is locked.

If the ambient light was deactivated using iDrive, it is not switched on when the vehicle is unlocked.

Via iDrive:

1. "CAR"
2. "Settings"
3. "Interior lighting"
4. "Ambient light"

The selected setting is saved for the current driver profile.

Selecting the colour scheme

Via iDrive:

1. "CAR"
2. "Settings"
3. "Interior lighting"
4. "Colour"
5. Select the desired setting.

Adjusting the brightness

Via iDrive:

1. "CAR"
2. "Settings"
3. "Interior lighting"
4. "Brightness"
5. Select the desired setting.

Dimmed during the journey

The lighting in the interior is dimmed for certain lights during journeys in the dark.

Via iDrive:

1. "CAR"
2. "Settings"
3. "Interior lighting"
4. "Dimmed for night driving"

The selected setting is saved for the current driver profile.

Bowers & Wilkins Diamond Surround Sound System

General

Some speakers in the vehicle are illuminated. The brightness can be set individually.

The loudspeaker lighting is switched off when the loudspeakers are muted.

Switching on/off

The loudspeaker lighting is switched on when the vehicle is unlocked and switched off when the vehicle is locked.

Via iDrive:

1. "CAR"
2. "Settings"
3. "Interior lighting"
4. "Bowers & Wilkins"

The selected setting is saved for the current driver profile.

Adjusting the brightness

Via iDrive:

1. "CAR"
2. "Settings"
3. "Interior lighting"
4. "Bowers & Wilkins"
5. "Brightness"
6. Select the desired setting.

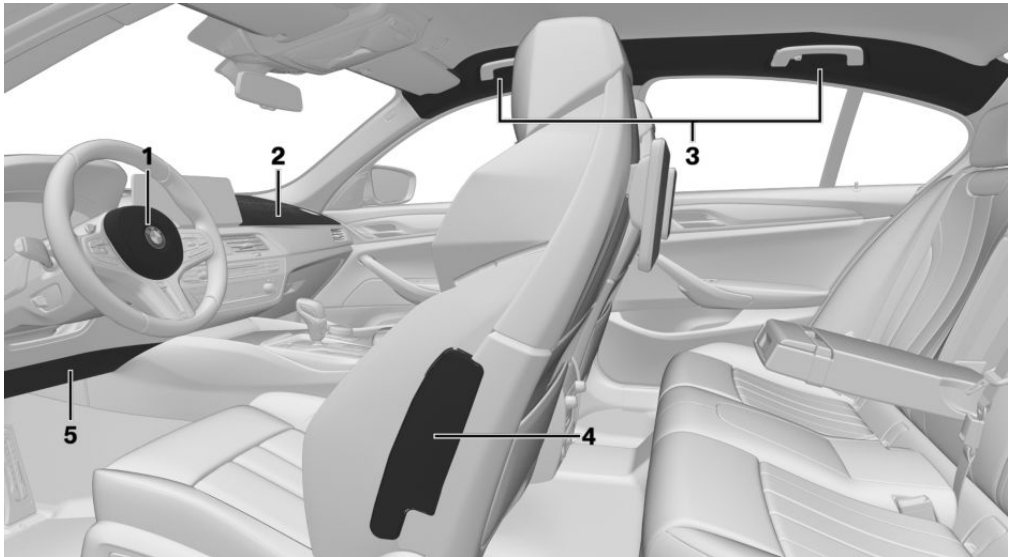
Safety

Vehicle equipment

This chapter describes all standard, country-specific and special equipment available for the model series. It may therefore describe equipment and functions which are not installed in

your vehicle, for example on account of the optional equipment selected or the country variant. This also applies to safety-relevant functions and systems. Please comply with the relevant laws and regulations when using the corresponding functions and systems.

Airbags



1 Front airbag, driver	4 Side airbag
2 Front airbag, front passenger	5 Knee airbag
3 Head airbag	

Front airbags

Front airbags protect the driver and front passenger in the event of a head-on collision where the protection of the seat belts alone would no longer be sufficient.

Side airbag

In a side-on crash, the side airbag protects the side of the body in the chest and pelvic area.

Head airbag

The head airbag protects the head in the event of a side-on crash.

Knee airbag

Depending on the equipment version:

The knee airbag protects the legs in the event of a head-on crash.

Protective function

General

Airbags are not activated in every collision, for example, in minor accidents.

Information for optimum airbag effectiveness

WARNING

If the seat position is incorrect or the deployment area of the airbag is restricted, the airbag system cannot provide the intended level of protection or may cause additional injuries when it deploys. There is a risk of injury or even death. Observe the following to achieve optimum protective function.

- ▷ Keep a distance from the airbags.
- ▷ Always grip the steering wheel at the steering wheel rim. Place your hands in the 3 o'clock and 9 o'clock positions to minimise the risk of injury to hands or arms when the airbag deploys.
- ▷ Make sure that the front-seat passenger is sitting correctly, i.e. with their feet and legs in the footwell, not resting on the dashboard.
- ▷ Make sure that vehicle occupants keep their head away from the side airbag.
- ▷ Do not place any other persons, pets or objects between the airbags and occupants.
- ▷ Keep the dashboard and windscreen area on the passenger side clear, for example do not attach adhesive foil or covers and do not fit brackets for navigation devices or mobile telephones.

- ▷ Do not glue the airbag covers and do not cover or modify them in any way.
- ▷ Do not use the front airbag cover on the front passenger's side as a tray.
- ▷ Do not install seat covers, cushions or other objects on the front seats if they are not specifically designed for use on seats with integral side airbags.
- ▷ Do not hang items of clothing for example coats or jackets over the backrests.
- ▷ Do not modify individual components of the system or its wiring. This also applies to the covers of the steering wheel, the dashboard and seats.
- ▷ Do not dismantle the airbag system.

Even if all this information is observed, injuries resulting from contact with the airbag cannot be entirely ruled out in some circumstances.

The noise caused by the deployment of an airbag may lead to temporary hearing loss in vehicle occupants sensitive to noise.

Operational readiness of the airbag system

Safety notes

WARNING

Individual components of the airbag system may be hot after airbag deployment. There is a risk of injury. Do not touch individual components.

WARNING

Work carried out incorrectly can lead to a failure, malfunction or accidental deployment of the airbag system. If there is a malfunction, the airbag system might not deploy as intended in an accident, even if the impact is of the appropriate severity. There is a risk of injury or even death. Have the airbag system tested, repaired or removed and disposed of by a Service Part-

ner of the manufacturer or another qualified Service Partner or a specialist workshop.

Display in the instrument cluster



When drive-ready state is switched on, the warning lamp in the instrument cluster illuminates briefly to indicate that the entire airbag system and the belt tensioners are operational.

Malfunction



- ▶ The warning lamp does not illuminate after drive-ready state is switched on.
- ▶ The warning lamp is permanently illuminated.

Have the system checked.

Key switch for front passenger airbags

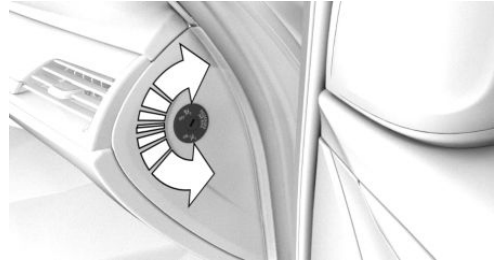
Principle

When a child restraint system is used on the front passenger seat, the front and side airbags on the front passenger side can be deactivated using the key switch for front passenger airbags.

General

The front and side airbags for the front passenger can be deactivated and reactivated using the integrated key from the vehicle key.

Overview



The key switch for front passenger airbags is located on the outside of the dashboard.

Deactivating the front passenger airbags



1. Insert the key and press inwards where necessary.
2. While the key is pressed inwards, turn it to the OFF position as far as it will go. Once the stop position has been reached, remove the key.
3. Make sure that the key switch is in the end position so that the airbags are deactivated.

The front passenger airbags are deactivated. The driver's airbags remain active.

If a child restraint system is no longer fitted in the front passenger seat, reactivate the front passenger airbags so that they are triggered as intended in the event of an accident.

The airbag status is displayed by the indicator lamp on the roof lining.

Activating the front passenger airbags



1. Insert the key and press inwards where necessary.
2. While the key is pressed inwards, turn it to the ON position as far as it will go. Once the stop position has been reached, remove the key.
3. Make sure that the key switch is in the end position so that the airbags are activated.

The front passenger airbags are reactivated and can deploy correctly if the need arises.

Indicator lamp for front passenger airbags

The indicator lamp for the front passenger airbags in the roof lining shows the operating status of the front passenger airbags.

After switching on the drive-ready state, the light illuminates briefly and then shows whether the airbags are activated or deactivated.

Display	Function
	If the front passenger airbag is activated, the indicator lamp illuminates for a short period and then extinguishes.
	When front passenger airbags are deactivated, the indicator lamp remains illuminated.

Active pedestrian protection

Principle

The active pedestrian protection system raises the bonnet if the vehicle's front end collides with a pedestrian. Sensors underneath the bumper are used for detection.

General

When triggered, the pedestrian protection system creates deformation space underneath the bonnet in readiness for the subsequent head impact.

Safety notes

**WARNING**

The system may trigger inadvertently if contact is made with individual components of the hinges and bonnet locks. There is a risk of injury or material damage. Do not touch individual components of the hinges and bonnet locks.

**WARNING**

Modifications to the pedestrian protection system can lead to a failure, a malfunction or accidental triggering of the pedestrian protection system. There is a risk of injury or even death. Do not modify the pedestrian protection system, its individual components or its wiring. Do not dismantle the system.

**WARNING**

Work carried out incorrectly can lead to a failure, malfunction or accidental triggering of the system. If there is a malfunction, the system might not trigger as intended in an accident, even if the impact is of the appropriate severity. There is a risk of injury or even death. Have the

system tested, repaired or removed and disposed of by a Service Partner of the manufacturer or another qualified Service Partner or a specialist workshop.

WARNING

If the system has triggered or is damaged, its functions will be restricted, or it may no longer work at all. There is a risk of injury or even death.

If the system has triggered or is damaged, have it checked and renewed at a Service Partner of the manufacturer or another qualified Service Partner or a specialist workshop.

NOTE

Opening the bonnet when the pedestrian protection system has triggered may damage the bonnet or the pedestrian protection system. There is a risk of material damage. Do not open the bonnet after the Check Control message is displayed. Have the system checked by a Service Partner of the manufacturer or another qualified Service Partner or a specialist workshop.

System limits

The active pedestrian protection system is only triggered at speeds between approximately 30 km/h, 18 mph and 55 km/h, 34 mph.

For safety reasons, the system may also trigger in rare instances where impact with a pedestrian cannot be excluded beyond all doubt, for example in the following situations:

- ▶ Collision with objects such as a skip or a boundary post.
- ▶ Collision with animals.
- ▶ Stone impact.
- ▶ Driving into a snow drift.

Malfunction



A Check Control message is shown.

The system has been triggered or is faulty.

Immediately drive at moderate speed to a Service Partner of the manufacturer or another qualified Service Partner or a specialist workshop to have the system checked and repaired.

Intelligent Safety

Principle

Intelligent Safety enables the Driver Assistance Systems to be operated centrally.

General

Depending on the equipment, Intelligent Safety consists of one or more systems which can help to avoid the risk of a collision.

- ▶ Front-end collision warning with braking function.
- ▶ Avoidance assistant.
- ▶ Person warning with City braking function.
- ▶ Night Vision with person and animal recognition.
- ▶ Lane Departure Warning.
- ▶ Lane Change Warning.
- ▶ Side collision warning.
- ▶ Road priority warning.

Safety notes

WARNING

The system does not relieve you of your personal responsibility to assess the visibility conditions and traffic situation correctly. There is a risk of accident. Adapt your driving style to the traffic conditions. Observe the traffic situation and intervene actively if the situation warrants it.

 WARNING

Displays and warnings do not relieve you of your personal responsibility. System limitations can mean that warnings or system responses are not issued or are issued too late, incorrectly or without justification. There is a risk of accident. Adapt your driving style to the traffic conditions. Observe the traffic situation and intervene actively if the situation warrants it.

 WARNING

Due to system limitations, individual functions may not work properly when tow-starting/towing with activated Intelligent Safety Systems. There is a risk of accident. Switch off all Intelligent Safety Systems before tow-starting/towing.

Overview

Button in the vehicle



 Intelligent Safety

Switching on/off

Some Intelligent Safety Systems are automatically active at the start of each journey. Some Intelligent Safety Systems are activated depending on their last setting.

Button	Status
	Button illuminates green: all Intelligent Safety Systems are switched on.
	Button illuminates orange: some Intelligent Safety Systems are switched off or are currently not available.
	Button does not illuminate: all Intelligent Safety Systems are switched off.

 Press the button.
The menu for the Intelligent Safety Systems is shown.

If all Intelligent Safety Systems were switched off, all systems are now switched on.
"Configure INDIVIDUAL": depending on the equipment, the Intelligent Safety Systems can be configured individually. The individual settings are activated and saved for the current driver profile. As soon as a setting is changed in the menu, all settings in the menu are activated.

 Press the button repeatedly. The setting switches between the following:
"ALL ON": all Intelligent Safety Systems are switched on. Basic settings are activated for the sub-functions, for example the setting for warning time.
"INDIVIDUAL": the Intelligent Safety Systems are switched on according to the individual settings.
Some Intelligent Safety Systems cannot be switched off individually.

 Press and hold the button.
All Intelligent Safety Systems are switched off.

Front-end collision warning with light braking function

Principle

The system can help avoid accidents. If an accident cannot be avoided, the system helps to reduce the collision speed.

The system warns of the possible risk of collision and brakes automatically, as necessary.

General

The system is controlled using the following sensors, depending on the equipment:

- Camera in the area of the rear-view mirror.
- Radar sensor in front bumper.

Junction warning if radar sensors are fitted: an additional warning is given at junctions and T-junctions if there is a risk of collision with cross-junction traffic.

The front-end collision warning is operational even if Cruise Control is disabled.

When deliberately moving closer to a vehicle, the front-end collision warning and braking intervention are activated later to avoid unwarranted system responses.

From speeds of approximately 5 km/h, 3 mph, the system provides a two-stage warning of any possible risk of collision with vehicles. The timing of these warnings may vary depending on the current driving situation.

Safety notes

WARNING

The system does not relieve you of your personal responsibility to assess the visibility conditions and traffic situation correctly. There is a risk of accident. Adapt your driving style to the traffic conditions. Observe the traffic situation and intervene actively if the situation warrants it.

WARNING

Displays and warnings do not relieve you of your personal responsibility. System limitations can mean that warnings or system responses are not issued or are issued too late, incorrectly or without justification. There is a risk of accident. Adapt your driving style to the traffic conditions. Observe the traffic situation and intervene actively if the situation warrants it.

WARNING

Due to system limitations, individual functions may not work properly when tow-starting/towing with activated Intelligent Safety Systems. There is a risk of accident. Switch off all Intelligent Safety Systems before tow-starting/towing.

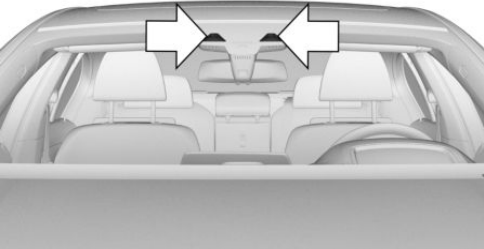
Overview

Button in the vehicle



 Intelligent Safety

Camera



The camera is located near the rear-view mirror. Keep the windscreen clean and clear in this area.

With radar sensor



The radar sensor is in the lower area of the front bumper. Keep the radar sensor clean and unobstructed.

Switching on/off

Automatic activation

The system is automatically activated at the start of each journey.

Switching on manually

 Press the button. The menu for the Intelligent Safety Systems is shown. If all Intelligent Safety Systems were switched off, all systems are now switched on. "Configure INDIVIDUAL": depending on the equipment, the Intelligent Safety Systems can be

configured individually. The individual settings are activated and saved for the current driver profile. As soon as a setting is changed in the menu, all settings in the menu are activated.

 Press the button repeatedly. The setting switches between the following: "ALL ON": all Intelligent Safety Systems are switched on. Basic settings are activated for the sub-functions. "INDIVIDUAL": the Intelligent Safety Systems are switched on according to the individual settings. Some Intelligent Safety Systems cannot be switched off individually.

Switching off manually

 Press and hold the button. All Intelligent Safety Systems are switched off.

Button	Status
	Button illuminates green: all Intelligent Safety Systems are switched on.
	Button illuminates orange: some Intelligent Safety Systems are switched off or are currently not available.
	Button does not illuminate: all Intelligent Safety Systems are switched off.

Setting the warning time

Via iDrive:

- "CAR"
- "Settings"
- "Driver assistance"
- "Safety and warnings"
- "Front-collision warning"
- Select the desired setting:
 - "Early"

- ▷ "Medium"
- ▷ "Late": only acute warnings are displayed.

The selected time is saved for the current driver profile.

Warning with braking function

Display

If there is a risk of collision with a detected vehicle, a warning symbol is shown in the instrument cluster and in the Head-Up Display.

Symbol	Measure
	Symbol illuminates red: advance warning. Brake and increase the distance.
	Symbol flashes red and an acoustic signal sounds: acute warning. Brake and perform an evasive manoeuvre, if necessary.
	Crossing traffic warning: Symbol flashes red and an acoustic signal sounds: acute warning in the case of vehicles crossing your own direction of travel.
	Brake and perform an evasive manoeuvre, if necessary.

Advance warning

An advance warning is given for example if there is an impending risk of collision or the distance from the vehicle ahead is too short.

The driver must intervene personally if there is an advance warning.

Acute warning with braking function

An acute warning is given when the vehicle is approaching another object at a high differential speed and there is an immediate risk of a collision.

The driver must intervene personally if there is an acute warning. Where required, the system can assist by braking the vehicle automatically if there is a risk of a collision.

An acute warning can be triggered even without a previous advance warning.

Brake intervention, City braking function

The warning prompts the driver to take action. If the brake is operated during a warning, maximum braking force will be applied. Braking assistance requires that the brake pedal is depressed sufficiently quickly and firmly beforehand.

The system can also assist by braking the vehicle automatically if there is a risk of a collision.

At low speeds, the vehicle can be braked to a stop.

Brake intervention is performed at speeds up to approximately 80 km/h, 50 mph.

The brakes are only applied if driving stability has not been impaired, for example by deactivation of Dynamic Stability Control DSC.

A brake intervention can be discontinued either by depressing the accelerator pedal or by actively moving the steering wheel.

Object detection may be limited. Take into account the detection range limits and the functional limitations.

With radar sensor: brake intervention

The warning prompts the driver to take action. If the brake is operated during a warning, maximum braking force will be applied. Braking assistance requires that the brake pedal is depressed sufficiently quickly and firmly beforehand.

The system can also assist by braking the vehicle automatically if there is a risk of a collision.

The vehicle can be braked to a stop.

The brakes are only applied if driving stability has not been impaired, for example by deactivation of Dynamic Stability Control DSC.

At speeds above approx. 210 km/h, 130 mph, the brake intervention takes the form of a brief jolt. There is no automatic deceleration.

A brake intervention can be discontinued either by depressing the accelerator pedal or by actively moving the steering wheel.

Junction warning: if vehicles are crossing, there is no brake intervention.

Object detection may be limited. Take into account the detection range limits and the functional limitations.

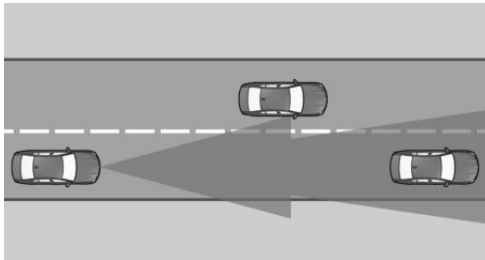
System limits

Safety note

WARNING

The system may not respond at all, or may respond too late, incorrectly or without justification due to system limitations. There is a risk of accidents or material damage. Observe the information on the system limits and intervene actively if necessary.

Detection range



The detection ability of the system is limited. Only objects detected by the system are taken into account.

For this reason, the system may fail to respond or only respond after a delay.

For example it is possible that the following may not be detected:

- ▶ Slow-moving vehicle when approaching it at high speed.
- ▶ Vehicles suddenly cutting in or braking heavily.
- ▶ Vehicles with an unusual rear appearance.
- ▶ Two-wheeled vehicles ahead.
- ▶ With junction warning: crossing vehicles if their speed is higher than your own.

Upper speed limit

The system is temporarily disabled at speeds over approx. 250 km/h, 155 mph. Once the speed drops back below this threshold, the system becomes responsive again according to its settings.

Junction warning: the system reacts to crossing vehicles if your own speed is below approx. 65 km/h, 40 mph.

Functional limitations

The system may have limited functionality in the following situations, for example:

- ▶ In thick fog, wet conditions or snow.
- ▶ On sharp bends.
- ▶ When Driving Stability Control Systems are limited or deactivated, for example DSC OFF.
- ▶ If the field of view of the camera or the windscreen in front of the rear-view mirror is soiled or covered.
- ▶ If the camera has overheated due to excessively high temperatures and has been temporarily deactivated.
- ▶ Up to 10 seconds after starting the engine using the start/stop button.
- ▶ During the camera calibration process immediately after vehicle delivery.
- ▶ If there is sustained glare due to oncoming light, for example if the sun is low in the sky.
- ▶ In the dark.
- ▶ Depending on the vehicle equipment: if the radar sensors are soiled or covered.

- Depending on the vehicle equipment: after work performed incorrectly on the vehicle paintwork near to the radar sensors.

Attaching any objects, for example stickers or decals, in the area of the radar beam will also restrict radar sensor operation and may even cause them to fail.

Sensitivity of the warnings

The higher the sensitivity of the warning settings, for example warning time, the more warnings are displayed. As a result, there may also be an increased number of premature or unjustified warnings and responses.

Avoidance assistant

Principle

The system supports the driver in certain situations when there is a need to avoid something, for example obstacles that appear suddenly.

General

The system issues warnings and intervenes to provide support if there is a possibility to perform an evasive manoeuvre to the side. Sensors monitor and detect the space around the vehicle. The system then utilises the detected free space to perform the evasive manoeuvre by steering the vehicle safely and precisely in the direction specified by the driver.

Safety notes

WARNING

The system does not relieve you of your personal responsibility to assess the visibility conditions and traffic situation correctly. There is a risk of accident. Adapt your driving style to the traffic conditions. Observe the traffic situation and intervene actively if the situation warrants it.

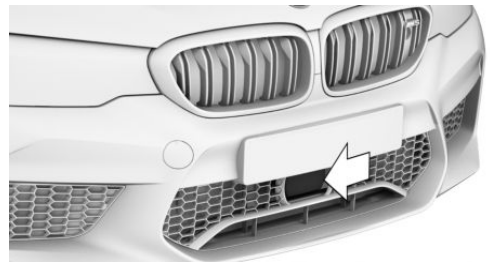
WARNING

Displays and warnings do not relieve you of your personal responsibility. System limitations can mean that warnings or system responses are not issued or are issued too late, incorrectly or without justification. There is a risk of accident. Adapt your driving style to the traffic conditions. Observe the traffic situation and intervene actively if the situation warrants it.

Overview

Radar sensors

The radar sensors are in the bumpers.



Front bumper in middle.

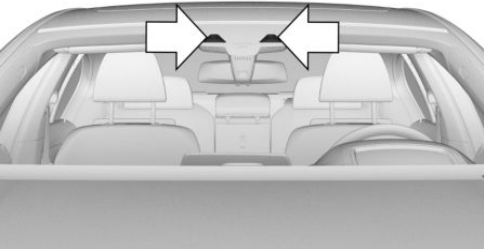


Front bumper at side.



Rear bumper.
Keep the bumpers clean and unobstructed in the area of the radar sensors.

Camera



The camera is located near the rear-view mirror.
Keep the windscreen clean and clear in this area.

Operating requirements

- ▶ Front-end collision warning with light braking function, see page 181, is switched on.
- ▶ The sensors detect adequate space around the vehicle.

Switching on/off

The system is automatically activated at the start of each journey.

Warning with avoidance assistance

Display in the instrument cluster

If there is a risk of collision with a detected vehicle, a warning symbol is shown in the instrument cluster and in the Head-Up Display.

Symbol	Measure
	Symbol illuminates red: advance warning. Brake and increase the distance.
	Symbol flashes red and an acoustic signal sounds: acute warning. Brake and perform an evasive manoeuvre, if necessary.

Acute warning with avoidance assistance

An acute warning is given when the vehicle is approaching another object at a high differential speed and there is an immediate risk of a collision.

The driver must intervene personally if there is an acute warning. The system provides support for the driver's evasive manoeuvres if there is a risk of collision.

An acute warning can be triggered even without a previous advance warning.

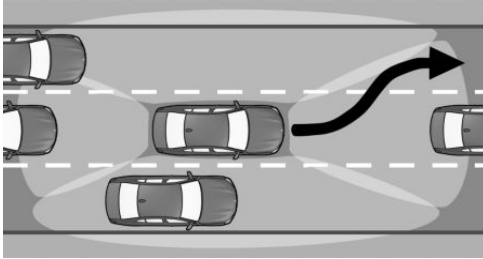
System limits

Safety note

 **WARNING**

The system may not respond at all, or may respond too late, incorrectly or without justification due to system limitations. There is a risk of accidents or material damage. Observe the information on the system limits and intervene actively if necessary.

Detection range



The detection ability of the system is limited.

Only objects detected by the system are taken into account.

For this reason, the system may fail to respond or only respond after a delay.

For example it is possible that the following may not be detected:

- ▷ Slow-moving vehicle when approaching it at high speed.
- ▷ Vehicles suddenly cutting in or braking heavily.
- ▷ Vehicles with an unusual rear appearance.
- ▷ Two-wheeled vehicles ahead.

Functional limitations

The system may have limited functionality in the following situations, for example:

- ▷ In thick fog, wet conditions or snow.
- ▷ On sharp bends.
- ▷ When Driving Stability Control Systems are limited or deactivated, for example DSC OFF.
- ▷ If the field of view of the camera or the windscreen in front of the rear-view mirror is soiled or covered.
- ▷ If the camera has overheated due to excessively high temperatures and has been temporarily deactivated.
- ▷ Up to 10 seconds after starting the engine using the start/stop button.
- ▷ During the camera calibration process immediately after vehicle delivery.

- ▷ If there is sustained glare due to oncoming light, for example if the sun is low in the sky.
- ▷ In the dark.
- ▷ Depending on the vehicle equipment: if the radar sensors are soiled or covered.
- ▷ Depending on the vehicle equipment: after work performed incorrectly on the vehicle paintwork near to the radar sensors.

Attaching any objects, for example stickers or decals, in the area of the radar beam will also restrict radar sensor operation and may even cause them to fail.

Person warning with City light braking function

Principle

The system can help to avoid accidents with pedestrians. The system warns of the possible risk of collision with pedestrians in the urban speed range and also has a light braking function.

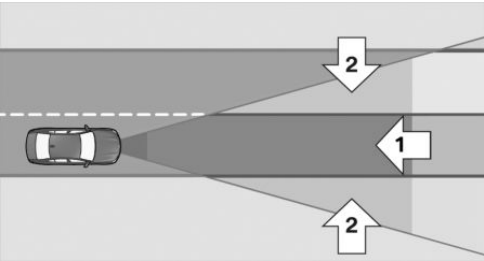
General

The system is only active at speeds between approximately 5 km/h, 3 mph, up to approximately 65 km/h, 40 mph.

Persons are taken into account if they are located within the detection range of the system.

The system is controlled by the camera located near the rear-view mirror.

Detection range



The detection zone in front of the vehicle consists of two parts:

- Central zone, arrow 1, directly in front of the vehicle.
- Extended zone, arrows 2, to the right and left of the central area.

There is a risk of collision if persons are in the central zone. A warning is only given of persons in the extended zone if they are moving towards the central zone.

Safety notes

WARNING

The system does not relieve you of your personal responsibility to assess the visibility conditions and traffic situation correctly. There is a risk of accident. Adapt your driving style to the traffic conditions. Observe the traffic situation and intervene actively if the situation warrants it.

WARNING

Displays and warnings do not relieve you of your personal responsibility. System limitations can mean that warnings or system responses are not issued or are issued too late, incorrectly or without justification. There is a risk of accident. Adapt your driving style to the traffic conditions. Observe the traffic situation and intervene actively if the situation warrants it.

WARNING

Due to system limitations, individual functions may not work properly when tow-starting/ towing with activated Intelligent Safety Systems. There is a risk of accident. Switch off all Intelligent Safety Systems before tow-starting/ towing.

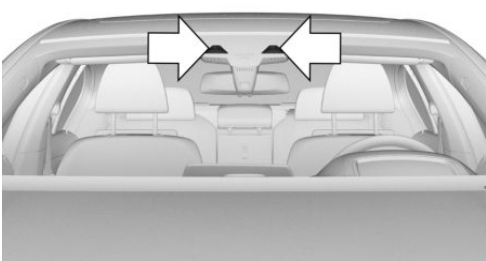
Overview

Button in the vehicle



 Intelligent Safety

Camera



The camera is located near the rear-view mirror. Keep the windscreen clean and clear in this area.

Switching on/off

Automatic activation

The system is automatically activated at the start of each journey.

Switching on manually



Press the button.

The menu for the Intelligent Safety Systems is shown.

If all Intelligent Safety Systems were switched off, all systems are now switched on.

"Configure INDIVIDUAL": depending on the equipment, the Intelligent Safety Systems can be configured individually. The individual settings are activated and saved for the current driver profile. As soon as a setting is changed in the menu, all settings in the menu are activated.



Press the button repeatedly.

The setting switches between the following:

"ALL ON": all Intelligent Safety Systems are switched on. Basic settings are activated for the sub-functions.

"INDIVIDUAL": the Intelligent Safety Systems are switched on according to the individual settings.

Some Intelligent Safety Systems cannot be switched off individually.

Switching off manually



Press and hold the button.

All Intelligent Safety Systems are switched off.

Button Status



Button illuminates green: all Intelligent Safety Systems are switched on.



Button illuminates orange: some Intelligent Safety Systems are switched off or are currently not available.



Button does not illuminate: all Intelligent Safety Systems are switched off.

Warning with braking function

Display

If there is a risk of collision with a detected person, a warning symbol is shown in the instrument cluster and in the Head-Up Display, if applicable.



A red symbol is displayed and an acoustic warning sounds.

Take action yourself immediately by braking or swerving.

Brake intervention

The warning prompts the driver to take action. If the brake is operated during a warning, maximum braking force will be applied. Braking force assistance requires that the brake pedal is depressed sufficiently quickly and firmly beforehand.

In addition, the system can assist with a brake intervention if there is the risk of a collision.

At low speeds, the vehicle can be braked to a stop.

The brakes are only applied if driving stability has not been impaired, for example by deactivation of Dynamic Stability Control DSC.

A brake intervention can be discontinued either by depressing the accelerator pedal or by actively moving the steering wheel.

Object detection may be limited. Take into account the detection range limits and the functional limitations.

System limits

Safety note



WARNING

The system may not respond at all, or may respond too late, incorrectly or without justification due to system limitations. There is a risk of accidents or material damage. Observe the in-

formation on the system limits and intervene actively if necessary.

Detection range

The detection ability of the system is limited.

As a result, the system may fail to give warnings or may give warnings late.

For example it is possible that the following may not be detected:

- ▶ Partially concealed pedestrians.
- ▶ Pedestrians who are not detected as such due to the viewing angle or outline.
- ▶ Pedestrians outside the detection range.
- ▶ Pedestrians less than approximately 80 cm, 32 in tall.

Functional limitations

The system may have limited functionality in some situations, for example:

- ▶ In thick fog, wet conditions or snow.
- ▶ On sharp bends.
- ▶ If vehicle stability control systems are deactivated, for example DSC OFF.
- ▶ If the field of view of the camera or the wind-screen in front of the rear-view mirror is soiled or covered.
- ▶ If the camera has overheated due to excessively high temperatures and has been temporarily deactivated.
- ▶ Up to 10 seconds after starting the engine using the start/stop button.
- ▶ During the camera calibration process immediately after vehicle delivery.
- ▶ If there is sustained glare due to oncoming light, for example if the sun is low in the sky.
- ▶ In the dark.

Night Vision with person and animal recognition

Principle

Night Vision with person and animal recognition is a night vision system.

An infrared camera scans the area in front of the vehicle and warns of people and animals on the road. Warm objects with a shape similar to human beings or animals are detected by the system. The thermal image can be shown on the Control Display as needed.

Depending on the equipment, the detected objects are illuminated with the Dynamic Marker Light for better detection.

General

Thermal image



The heat radiated by objects in the camera's field of view is shown.

Warm objects are shown light and cold objects dark.

Recognition depends on the temperature differential relative to the background and on the amount of heat radiated by the object. Objects with a low temperature difference in relation to the environment or which are only radiating low levels of heat can therefore only be detected to a limited degree.

For safety reasons, the image is only shown at speeds greater than 5 km/h, approx. 3 mph and

in low ambient light conditions if the low-beam headlights are switched on.

A still image is intermittently displayed for a fraction of a second.

Person and animal recognition



The object detection and warning system only operates in the dark.

Objects with a shape similar to a human and which are radiating sufficient levels of heat are detected.

The system also detects animals of a certain size, for example deer.

The Control Display shows the following when the thermal image function is active:

- ▶ Persons detected by the system: in light yellow.
- ▶ Animals detected by the system: in dark yellow.

Object detection range in good ambient conditions:

- ▶ Person recognition: up to approximately 100 m, 330 ft.
- ▶ Recognition of larger animals: up to approximately 150 m, 490 ft.
- ▶ Recognition of medium-sized animals: up to approximately 70 m, 230 ft.

Environmental conditions can restrict the availability of object detection.

If the vehicle systems detect that the vehicle is in a built-up area, animal detection is temporarily switched off.

Safety notes

WARNING

The system does not relieve you of your personal responsibility to assess the visibility conditions and traffic situation correctly. There is a risk of accident. Adapt your driving style to the traffic conditions. Observe the traffic situation and intervene actively if the situation warrants it.

WARNING

Displays and warnings do not relieve you of your personal responsibility. System limitations can mean that warnings or system responses are not issued or are issued too late, incorrectly or without justification. There is a risk of accident. Adapt your driving style to the traffic conditions. Observe the traffic situation and intervene actively if the situation warrants it.

Overview

Buttons in the vehicle



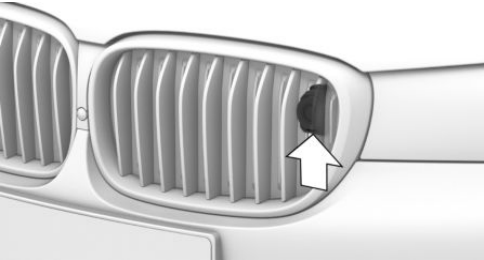
 Intelligent Safety





Thermal image

Camera



At low outside temperatures, the camera is automatically heated.

If the vehicle lights are on, the camera lens will be cleaned periodically when the windscreen washer system is operated.

Switching on

Automatic activation

When it's dark, the system is automatically activated at the start of each journey.

Switching on the thermal image

In addition to the warning function, the thermal image of the Night Vision camera can be displayed on the Control Display. This function has no effect on object detection.



Press the button.

The camera image is displayed on the Control Display.

Adjusting the thermal image

When the thermal image is switched on, it is possible to adjust the brightness and contrast.

Via iDrive:

1. Select brightness or contrast:
 - ▷  "Brightness".
 - ▷  "Contrast".
2. Set the desired value.

Warning function

Display

Symbol	Meaning
	Person warning.
	Animal warning.
System illuminates red.	Advance warning.
Symbol flashes red and an acoustic signal sounds.	Acute warning.

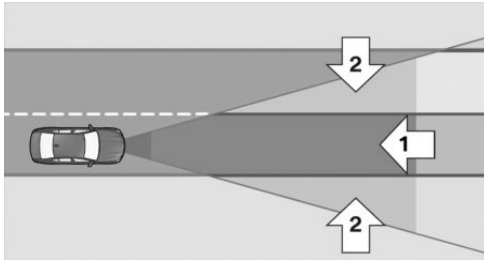
The displayed symbol may vary and shows the side of the carriageway on which the person or animal has been detected.

Warning for persons or animals in danger

If there is a risk of collision with a detected person or animal, a warning symbol is shown in the instrument cluster and in the Head-Up Display.

Although the shape and heat radiation are evaluated, false alarms cannot be ruled out.

Warning zone in front of the vehicle



The warning zone for person warning consists of two parts:

- ▶ Central zone, arrow 1, directly in front of the vehicle.
- ▶ Extended zone, arrows 2, to the right and left of the central area.

For animal warnings, no distinction is made between the central or extended zone.

The entire zone follows the direction of the vehicle based on steering angle and changes with vehicle speed. As vehicle speed increases, the range becomes longer and wider, for example.

Advance warning

An advance warning for persons is displayed if a person is detected in the central zone directly in front of the vehicle or to the right and left in the extended zone.

Advance warning for animals is displayed if an animal is detected in front of the vehicle.

In the event of an advance warning, brake or take evasive action.

Acute warning

Acute warning is displayed if a person or an animal is detected in the immediate vicinity of the vehicle.

In the event of an acute warning, immediately brake or take evasive action.

Display in the Head-Up Display

The warning is displayed simultaneously in the Head-Up Display and in the instrument cluster.

System limits

Basic limits

The system may have limited functionality in some situations, for example:

- ▶ On steep brows or hollows of hills and on tight bends.
- ▶ If the camera is dirty or damaged.
- ▶ In thick fog, wet conditions or snow.
- ▶ At very high outside temperatures.

Limits of person and animal recognition

In some situations, it is possible that persons are recognised as animals and animals as persons.

Small animals are not detected by object recognition, even if they can be clearly seen in the image.

Detection may be limited in the following circumstances, for example:

- ▶ If persons or animals, particularly their head, are partly or wholly concealed.
- ▶ If persons are not standing upright, for example if they are lying down.
- ▶ If there are cyclists on non-conventional cycles, for example recumbent cycles.
- ▶ If the system has been physically damaged, for example after an accident.

Dynamic Marker Light

General



In addition to the warning, detected objects are illuminated with the Dynamic Marker Light.

The Dynamic Marker Light is available from a speed of approx. 20 km/h, 12 mph.

The object is illuminated until it moves out of the warning zone.

The indicator lamp for the high-beam headlights is illuminated when the Dynamic Marker Light is activated.

The Dynamic Marker Light is a component of the LED headlights.

Operating requirements

- ▷ Automatic driving lights control is active.
- ▷ Low-beam headlights or high-beam headlights are switched on.
- ▷ No light sources or illuminated road users in the warning zone.

Activating/deactivating

Via iDrive:

1. "CAR"
2. "Settings"
3. "Driver assistance"
4. "Safety and warnings"
5. "Dynamic Marker Light"

Switching off temporarily

Operate the headlight flasher while the Dynamic Marker Light is activated. The Dynamic Marker Light is switched off for the current warning.

Lane Departure Warning

Principle

The Lane Departure Warning issues a warning if the vehicle leaves its lane on a road with lane markings.

General

This camera-based system warns once a minimum speed has been reached.

The minimum speed is country-specific and is displayed in the menu for the Intelligent Safety Systems.

Warnings are issued in the form of steering wheel vibrations. The strength of the steering wheel vibration can be adjusted.

The timing of this warning may vary depending on the current driving situation.

The system does not issue a warning if the driver indicates before leaving the driving lane.

Vehicles with side collision warning: if a lane marking is crossed in the speed range up to 210 km/h, 130 mph, the system intervenes not only by vibrating but also with a brief active steering intervention. The system thereby helps to keep the vehicle in lane.

Safety notes

WARNING

The system does not relieve you of your personal responsibility to assess the course of the road and the traffic situation. There is a risk of accident. Adapt your driving style to the traffic conditions. Observe the traffic situation and intervene actively if the situation warrants it. In

the event of a warning, do not move the steering wheel unnecessarily abruptly.

WARNING

Displays and warnings do not relieve you of your personal responsibility. System limitations can mean that warnings or system responses are not issued or are issued too late, incorrectly or without justification. There is a risk of accident. Adapt your driving style to the traffic conditions. Observe the traffic situation and intervene actively if the situation warrants it.

Operating requirements

For Lane Departure Warning to be active, the camera must be able to detect the lane markings.

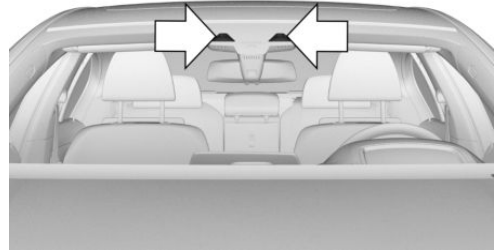
Overview

Button in the vehicle



 Intelligent Safety

Camera



The camera is located near the rear-view mirror. Keep the windscreen clean and clear in this area.

Switching on/off

Automatic activation

Lane Departure Warning is activated automatically at the start of a journey if the function was switched on the last time the engine was stopped.

Switching on manually

 Press the button.
The menu for the Intelligent Safety Systems is shown.

If all Intelligent Safety Systems were switched off, all systems are now switched on.

"Configure INDIVIDUAL": depending on the equipment, the Intelligent Safety Systems can be configured individually. The individual settings are activated and saved for the current driver profile. As soon as a setting is changed in the menu, all settings in the menu are activated.

 Press the button repeatedly.
The setting switches between the following:

"ALL ON": all Intelligent Safety Systems are switched on. Basic settings are activated for the sub-functions.

"INDIVIDUAL": the Intelligent Safety Systems are switched on according to the individual settings.

Some Intelligent Safety Systems cannot be switched off individually.

Switching off manually



Press and hold the button.

All Intelligent Safety Systems are switched off.

Button Status



Button illuminates green: all Intelligent Safety Systems are switched on.



Button illuminates orange: some Intelligent Safety Systems are switched off or are currently not available.



Button does not illuminate: all Intelligent Safety Systems are switched off.

Setting the warning time

Via iDrive:

1. "CAR"
2. "Settings"
3. "Driver assistance"
4. "Safety and warnings"
5. "Lane departure warning"
6. Select the desired setting:
 - ▷ "Always": the system issues a warning whenever a hazardous situation is detected.
 - ▷ "Reduced": depending on the situation, some warnings are suppressed, for example during overtaking manoeuvres without using turn indicators or when deliberately crossing lane markings on bends.
 - ▷ "Off": no warnings are given.

The selected setting is saved for the current driver profile.

Adjusting the strength of the steering wheel vibration

Via iDrive:

1. "CAR"
2. "Settings"
3. "Driver assistance"
4. "Feedback via steering wheel"
5. "Vibration intensity"
6. Select the desired setting.

The setting is accepted for all Intelligent Safety Systems and saved for the current driver profile.

Vehicles with side collision warning: switching steering intervention on/off

Steering intervention can be separately switched on and off for Lane Change Warning or Lane Departure Warning.

Via iDrive:

1. "CAR"
2. "Settings"
3. "Driver assistance"
4. "Safety and warnings"
5. "Lane departure warning"
6. "Steering intervention"

The selected setting is saved for the current driver profile.

Display in the instrument cluster



The symbol is illuminated green: at least one lane marking has been detected and warnings can be issued.

Warning function

When leaving the lane

If the vehicle leaves the lane and the lane marking is detected, the steering wheel vibrates in ac-

cordance with the steering wheel vibration setting.

If the turn indicator is switched on before changing lanes, no warning is issued.

With side collision warning

If a lane marking is crossed in the speed range up to 210 km/h, 130 mph, the system intervenes not only by vibrating but also with a brief active steering intervention. The steering intervention helps to keep the vehicle in lane. Steering intervention can be felt at the steering wheel, and can be overridden manually at any time.

Warning signal

Depending on the equipment, if the system executes an active steering intervention multiple times within 3 minutes without the driver touching the steering wheel, an acoustic warning is emitted. A short warning signal sounds on the second steering intervention. A longer warning signal sounds from the third steering intervention onwards.

A Check Control message is also displayed.

The warning signal and Check Control message tell the driver to pay more attention to the lane.

When towing a trailer

There is no steering intervention when the trailer socket is in use, for example when operating with a trailer or bicycle carrier.

Cancellation of the warning

For example, the warning is cancelled in the following situations:

- ▷ Automatically after approximately 3 seconds.
- ▷ On returning to the correct lane.
- ▷ If the vehicle is braking heavily.
- ▷ On indicating.
- ▷ If Dynamic Stability Control DSC intervenes.

System limits

Safety note

WARNING

The system may not respond at all, or may respond too late, incorrectly or without justification due to system limitations. There is a risk of accidents or material damage. Observe the information on the system limits and intervene actively if necessary.

Functional limitations

The system may have limited functionality in the following situations, for example:

- ▷ In thick fog, wet conditions or snow.
- ▷ If there are missing, worn, poorly visible, merging/separating or ambiguous boundary lines, for example at road works.
- ▷ If boundary lines are covered by snow, ice, dirt or water.
- ▷ On sharp bends or narrow roads.
- ▷ If the boundary lines are not white.
- ▷ If boundary lines are obscured.
- ▷ If the vehicle is too close to the vehicle ahead.
- ▷ If there is sustained glare due to oncoming light, for example if the sun is low in the sky.
- ▷ If the field of view of the camera or the windscreen in front of the rear-view mirror is soiled or covered.
- ▷ If the camera has overheated due to excessively high temperatures and has been temporarily deactivated.
- ▷ Up to 10 seconds after starting the engine using the start/stop button.
- ▷ During the camera calibration process immediately after vehicle delivery.

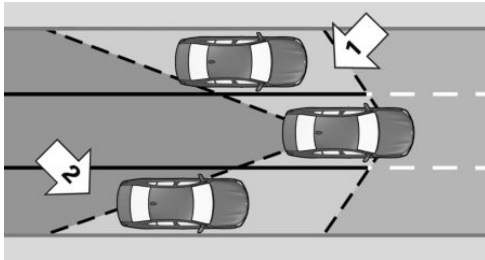
A Check Control message may be displayed in the event of limited functionality.

Lane Change Warning

Principle

Lane Change Warning detects vehicles in the blind spot, or if vehicles are approaching from behind in the adjacent lane. Different levels of warning are given in these situations.

General



Operational from a minimum speed, two radar sensors in the rear bumper monitor the area behind and next to the vehicle.

The minimum speed is country-specific and is displayed in the menu for the Intelligent Safety Systems.

The system indicates when vehicles are in the blind spot, arrow 1, or are approaching from the rear in an adjacent lane, arrow 2.

The light in the exterior mirror illuminates at a dimmed level.

Before changing lanes with the turn indicator switched on, the system issues a warning in the above situations.

The light in the exterior mirror flashes and the steering wheel vibrates.

Vehicles with side collision warning: at speeds between 70 km/h, 45 mph, and 210 km/h, 130 mph, the system can respond with a brief active steering intervention and thus help to return the vehicle to its lane.

Safety notes

WARNING

The system does not relieve you of your personal responsibility to assess the visibility conditions and traffic situation correctly. There is a risk of accident. Adapt your driving style to the traffic conditions. Observe the traffic situation and intervene actively if the situation warrants it.

WARNING

Displays and warnings do not relieve you of your personal responsibility. System limitations can mean that warnings or system responses are not issued or are issued too late, incorrectly or without justification. There is a risk of accident. Adapt your driving style to the traffic conditions. Observe the traffic situation and intervene actively if the situation warrants it.

Overview

Button in the vehicle



 Intelligent Safety

Radar sensors



The radar sensors are located in the rear bumper.

Keep the bumpers clean and unobstructed in the area of the radar sensors.

Switching on/off

Automatic activation

The Lane Change Warning is reactivated automatically at the start of a journey if the function was switched on the last time the engine was stopped.

Switching on manually



Press the button.

The menu for the Intelligent Safety Systems is shown.

If all Intelligent Safety Systems were switched off, all systems are now switched on.

"Configure INDIVIDUAL": depending on the equipment, the Intelligent Safety Systems can be configured individually. The individual settings are activated and saved for the current driver profile. As soon as a setting is changed in the menu, all settings in the menu are activated.



Press the button repeatedly.

The setting switches between the following:

"ALL ON": all Intelligent Safety Systems are switched on. Basic settings are activated for the sub-functions.

"INDIVIDUAL": the Intelligent Safety Systems are switched on according to the individual settings.

Some Intelligent Safety Systems cannot be switched off individually.

Switching off manually



Press and hold the button.

All Intelligent Safety Systems are switched off.

Button Status



Button illuminates green: all Intelligent Safety Systems are switched on.



Button illuminates orange: some Intelligent Safety Systems are switched off or are currently not available.



Button does not illuminate: all Intelligent Safety Systems are switched off.

Setting the warning time

Via iDrive:

1. "CAR"
2. "Settings"
3. "Driver assistance"
4. "Safety and warnings"
5. "Lane change warning"
6. Select the desired setting:
 - ▷ "Early"
 - ▷ "Medium"
 - ▷ "Late"
 - ▷ "Off": no warning is output for this setting.

The setting is saved for the current driver profile.

Adjusting the strength of the steering wheel vibration

Via iDrive:

1. "CAR"
2. "Settings"

3. "Driver assistance"
4. "Feedback via steering wheel"
5. "Vibration intensity"
6. Select the desired setting.

The setting is accepted for all Intelligent Safety Systems and saved for the current driver profile.

Vehicles with side collision warning: steering intervention on/off

Steering intervention can be separately switched on and off for Lane Change Warning or Lane Departure Warning.

Via iDrive:

1. "CAR"
2. "Settings"
3. "Driver assistance"
4. "Safety and warnings"
5. "Lane change warning"
6. "Steering intervention"

The setting is saved for the current driver profile.

Warning function

Light in the exterior mirror



Advance warning

The dimmed light in the exterior mirror indicates when vehicles are in the blind spot or are approaching from the rear.

Acute warning

If the turn indicator is switched on while a vehicle is in the critical area, the steering wheel vibrates briefly and the light in the exterior mirror flashes brightly.

The warning is terminated when the turn signal is cancelled or the other vehicle has left the critical area.

Vehicles with side collision warning

At speeds between 70 km/h, 45 mph and 210 km/h, 130 mph, if there is no response to the steering wheel vibrating and a lane marking is crossed, the system responds with a brief active steering intervention. The steering intervention helps to return the vehicle to its lane. Steering intervention can be felt at the steering wheel, and can be overridden manually at any time.

Flashing of light

A flashing light when the vehicle is unlocked indicates that the system is performing a self-test.

System limits

Safety note

WARNING

The system may not respond at all, or may respond too late, incorrectly or without justification due to system limitations. There is a risk of accidents or material damage. Observe the information on the system limits and intervene actively if necessary.

Upper speed limit

The system is temporarily disabled at speeds over approx. 250 km/h, 155 mph.

At speeds below approx. 250 km/h, 155 mph, the system once again responds according to the setting.

Functional limitations

The system may have limited functionality in the following situations, for example:

- If the speed of the approaching vehicle is significantly higher than the driver's own speed.
- In thick fog, wet conditions or snow.
- On sharp bends or narrow roads.
- If the bumper is dirty, iced up or covered, for example by stickers.
- After work performed incorrectly on the vehicle paintwork.
- When a projecting load is being transported.

Attaching any objects, for example stickers or decals, in the area of the radar beam will also impair radar sensor operation and may even cause them to fail.

In vehicles with side collision warning, the steering intervention may be limited in the following situations, for example:

- If there are missing, worn, poorly visible, merging/separating or ambiguous boundary lines, for example at road works.
- If boundary lines are covered by snow, ice, dirt or water.
- If the boundary lines are not white.
- If boundary lines are obscured.
- If the vehicle is too close to the vehicle ahead.
- If there is sustained glare due to oncoming light, for example if the sun is low in the sky.
- If the field of view of the camera or the windscreen in front of the rear-view mirror is soiled or covered.
- If the camera has overheated due to excessively high temperatures and has been temporarily deactivated.
- Up to 10 seconds after starting the engine using the start/stop button.
- During the camera calibration process immediately after vehicle delivery.

A Check Control message is displayed in the event of limited functionality.

The system cannot be switched on when the trailer socket is in use, for example when operating with a trailer or bicycle carrier. A Check Control message is shown.

Warning displays

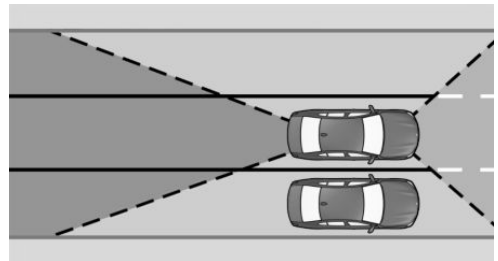
Depending on the selected setting for warnings, for example the warning time, it is possible that more or fewer warnings will be displayed. As a result, there may also be an increased number of premature warnings about critical situations.

Side collision warning

Principle

The system helps to avoid potential side collisions.

General



In the speed range from approximately 70 km/h, 45 mph to approximately 210 km/h, 130 mph, four radar sensors in the bumpers monitor the area adjacent to the vehicle.

A front camera detects the position of the lane markings.

If another vehicle is detected adjacent to the vehicle, for example with the potential of a side collision, the system helps the driver to avoid a collision with a steering intervention.

Safety notes

**WARNING**

The system does not relieve you of your personal responsibility to assess the visibility conditions and traffic situation correctly. There is a risk of accident. Adapt your driving style to the traffic conditions. Observe the traffic situation and intervene actively if the situation warrants it.

**WARNING**

Displays and warnings do not relieve you of your personal responsibility. System limitations can mean that warnings or system responses are not issued or are issued too late, incorrectly or without justification. There is a risk of accident. Adapt your driving style to the traffic conditions. Observe the traffic situation and intervene actively if the situation warrants it.

Operating requirements

The lane markings must be detected by the camera in order for the side collision warning to be active.

Overview

Button in the vehicle





Intelligent Safety

Radar sensors

The radar sensors are in the bumpers.



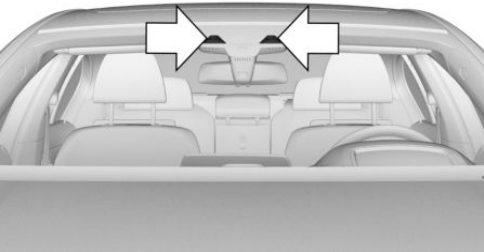
Front bumper.



Rear bumper.

Keep the bumpers clean and unobstructed in the area of the radar sensors.

Camera



The camera is located near the rear-view mirror. Keep the windscreen clean and clear in this area.

Switching on/off

Automatic activation

The side collision warning is activated automatically at the start of a journey if the function was switched on the last time the engine was stopped.

Switching on manually



Press the button.

The menu for the Intelligent Safety Systems is shown.

If all Intelligent Safety Systems were switched off, all systems are now switched on.

"Configure INDIVIDUAL": depending on the equipment, the Intelligent Safety Systems can be configured individually. The individual settings are activated and saved for the current driver profile. As soon as a setting is changed in the menu, all settings in the menu are activated.



Press the button repeatedly.

The setting switches between the following:

"ALL ON": all Intelligent Safety Systems are switched on. Basic settings are activated for the sub-functions.

"INDIVIDUAL": the Intelligent Safety Systems are switched on according to the individual settings.

Some Intelligent Safety Systems cannot be switched off individually.

Switching off manually



Press and hold the button.

All Intelligent Safety Systems are switched off.

Button Status



Button illuminates green: all Intelligent Safety Systems are switched on.



Button illuminates orange: some Intelligent Safety Systems are switched off or are currently not available.



Button does not illuminate: all Intelligent Safety Systems are switched off.

Adjusting the strength of the steering wheel vibration

Via iDrive:

1. "CAR"
2. "Settings"
3. "Driver assistance"
4. "Feedback via steering wheel"
5. "Vibration intensity"
6. Select the desired setting.

The setting is accepted for all Intelligent Safety Systems and saved for the current driver profile.

Warning function

Light in the exterior mirror



Acute warning

In the event of imminent collision danger, the light in the exterior mirror flashes and the steering wheel starts vibrating. A Check Control message is displayed at the same time.

Subsequently, an active steering intervention may be executed to avoid the collision and to keep the vehicle safely within its driving lane.

Steering intervention can be felt at the steering wheel, and can be overridden manually at any time.

System limits

Safety note

WARNING

The system may not respond at all, or may respond too late, incorrectly or without justification due to system limitations. There is a risk of accidents or material damage. Observe the information on the system limits and intervene actively if necessary.

Functional limitations

The system may have limited functionality in the following situations, for example:

- ▶ If the speed of the approaching vehicle is significantly higher than the driver's own speed.
- ▶ In thick fog, wet conditions or snow.
- ▶ On sharp bends or narrow roads.
- ▶ If the bumper is dirty, iced up or covered, for example by stickers.
- ▶ After work performed incorrectly on the vehicle paintwork.
- ▶ When a projecting load is being transported.
- ▶ If there are missing, worn, poorly visible, merging/separating or ambiguous boundary lines, for example at road works.
- ▶ If boundary lines are covered by snow, ice, dirt or water.
- ▶ If the boundary lines are not white.
- ▶ If boundary lines are obscured.
- ▶ If the vehicle is too close to the vehicle ahead.

- ▶ If there is sustained glare due to oncoming light, for example if the sun is low in the sky.
- ▶ If the field of view of the camera or the wind-screen in front of the rear-view mirror is soiled or covered.
- ▶ If the camera has overheated due to excessively high temperatures and has been temporarily deactivated.
- ▶ Up to 10 seconds after starting the engine using the start/stop button.
- ▶ During the camera calibration process immediately after vehicle delivery.

Attaching any objects, for example stickers or decals, in the area of the radar beam will also impair radar sensor operation and may even cause them to fail.

A Check Control message is displayed in the event of limited functionality.

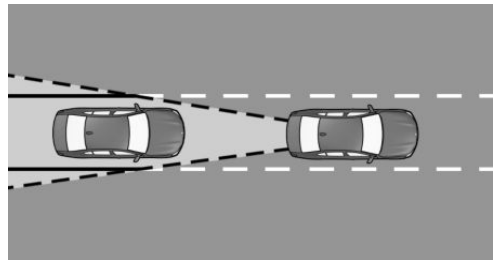
The system cannot be switched on when the trailer socket is in use, for example when operating with a trailer or bicycle carrier. A Check Control message is shown.

Prevention of rear collision

Principle

The system responds to vehicles approaching from behind.

General



Two radar sensors in the rear bumper monitor the area behind the vehicle.

If a vehicle is approaching from behind at a relevant speed, the system responds as follows:

- ▶ The hazard warning lights are switched on to warn the traffic behind if there is a risk of a rear collision.
- ▶ Active Protection: if a collision appears unavoidable, PreCrash functions are triggered.

Safety notes

WARNING

The system does not relieve you of your personal responsibility to assess the visibility conditions and traffic situation correctly. There is a risk of accident. Adapt your driving style to the traffic conditions. Observe the traffic situation and intervene actively if the situation warrants it.

WARNING

Displays and warnings do not relieve you of your personal responsibility. System limitations can mean that warnings or system responses are not issued or are issued too late, incorrectly or without justification. There is a risk of accident. Adapt your driving style to the traffic conditions. Observe the traffic situation and intervene actively if the situation warrants it.

Overview

Radar sensors



The radar sensors are located in the rear bumper.

Keep the bumpers clean and unobstructed in the area of the radar sensors.

Switching on/off

The system is automatically activated at the start of each journey.

The system is deactivated in the following situations:

- ▶ When reversing.
- ▶ If the trailer socket is occupied, for example when operating with a trailer or bicycle carrier.

System limits

The system may have limited functionality in the following situations:

- ▶ If the speed of the approaching vehicle is significantly higher than the driver's own speed.
- ▶ If the approaching vehicle is travelling slowly.
- ▶ In thick fog, wet conditions or snow.
- ▶ On sharp bends or narrow roads.
- ▶ If the bumper is dirty, iced up or covered, for example by stickers.
- ▶ If the sensors' field of view is obscured, for example due to garage walls, hedges or mounds of snow.
- ▶ When a projecting load is being transported.

Road priority warning

Principle

The system provides support in situations where the signs indicate that the driver must give way.

General

The system uses a camera to evaluate the road signs.

The navigation system forwards information regarding the route to the system.

A warning is given if a right-of-way is about to be violated in the following traffic situations, for example:

- ▷ At a junction.
- ▷ At a T-junction.
- ▷ On a slip road.
- ▷ At a roundabout.

The system warns in the road speed range of 10 km/h, 6 mph to 65 km/h, 40 mph.

Safety notes

WARNING

The system does not relieve you of your personal responsibility to assess the visibility conditions and traffic situation correctly. There is a risk of accident. Adapt your driving style to the traffic conditions. Observe the traffic situation and intervene actively if the situation warrants it.

WARNING

Displays and warnings do not relieve you of your personal responsibility. System limitations can mean that warnings or system responses are not issued or are issued too late, incorrectly or without justification. There is a risk of accident. Adapt your driving style to the traffic con-

ditions. Observe the traffic situation and intervene actively if the situation warrants it.

Operating requirements

The road priority situation must be unambiguously indicated with road signs.

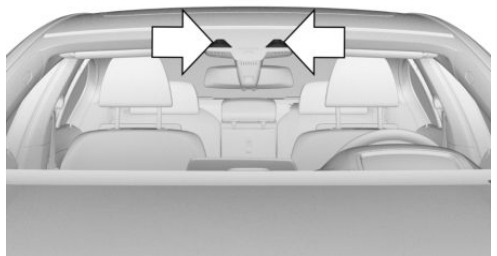
Overview

Button in the vehicle



 Intelligent Safety

Camera



The camera is located near the rear-view mirror. Keep the windscreen clean and clear in this area.

Switching on/off

Automatic activation

The road priority warning is activated automatically at the start of a journey if the function was switched on the last time the engine was stopped.

Switching on manually



Press the button.

The menu for the Intelligent Safety Systems is shown.

If all Intelligent Safety Systems were switched off, all systems are now switched on.

"Configure INDIVIDUAL": depending on the equipment, the Intelligent Safety Systems can be configured individually. The individual settings are activated and saved for the current driver profile. As soon as a setting is changed in the menu, all settings in the menu are activated.



Press the button repeatedly.

The setting switches between the following:

"ALL ON": all Intelligent Safety Systems are switched on. Basic settings are activated for the sub-functions.

"INDIVIDUAL": the Intelligent Safety Systems are switched on according to the individual settings.

Some Intelligent Safety Systems cannot be switched off individually.

Switching off manually



Press and hold the button.

All Intelligent Safety Systems are switched off.

Button Status



Button illuminates green: all Intelligent Safety Systems are switched on.



Button illuminates orange: some Intelligent Safety Systems are switched off or are currently not available.



Button does not illuminate: all Intelligent Safety Systems are switched off.

Setting the warning time

Via iDrive:

1. "CAR"
2. "Settings"
3. "Driver assistance"
4. "Safety and warnings"
5. "Give way warning"
6. Select the desired setting:
 - ▷ "Early"
 - ▷ "Medium"
 - ▷ "Late": only acute warnings are displayed.
 - ▷ "Off": no warnings are displayed.

The selected setting is saved for the current driver profile.

Warning function

General

The system warns in two stages:

- ▷ Advance warning: visually by means of a warning symbol in the instrument cluster.
- ▷ Acute warning: visually by means of a warning symbol in the instrument cluster and with an additional acoustic signal.

The timing of the warnings may vary depending on the current driving situation and the set warning time.

The following road signs are taken into account for the road priority warning:

Signs

Meaning



Give way signs:
These signs trigger an advance warning.



Stop signs.
These signs trigger an advance warning and an acute warning.

Advance warning

If there is a risk that road priority is about to be ignored, one of the following symbols appears in the instrument cluster:

Symbol	Meaning
	Give way.
	Stop.

When a prior warning is issued, intervene as appropriate for the situation; for example, by braking.

Acute warning

If there is a serious risk that road priority is about to be ignored, an acoustic signal sounds and the following symbol is displayed in the instrument cluster:

Symbol	Meaning
	Stop.

When an acute warning is issued, immediately intervene as appropriate for the situation; for example, by braking.

Display in the Head-Up Display

Depending on the equipment version, the warning is displayed in the Head-Up Display at the same time as in the instrument cluster.

System limits

Safety note

WARNING

The system may not respond at all, or may respond too late, incorrectly or without justification due to system limitations. There is a risk of accidents or material damage. Observe the information on the system limits and intervene actively if necessary.

No Warning

The system provides no warning in the following situations, for example:

- ▶ In road priority situations without “Give Way” or “Stop” signs.
- ▶ At junctions with active light signal systems, for example traffic lights.

Function restriction

The system may have limited functionality in the following situations, for example:

- ▶ If the road signs are ambiguous.
- ▶ If the road signs are fully or partially covered or soiled.
- ▶ If the road signs are poorly visible or twisted.
- ▶ If the road signs are too small or too large.
- ▶ In thick fog, wet conditions or snow.
- ▶ At steep crests/hilltops or dips.
- ▶ In tight bends.
- ▶ If the field of view of the camera or the wind-screen in front of the rear-view mirror is soiled or covered.
- ▶ If the camera has overheated due to excessively high temperatures and has been temporarily deactivated.
- ▶ Up to 10 seconds after starting the engine using the start/stop button.

- During the camera calibration process immediately after vehicle delivery.
- If there is sustained glare due to oncoming light, for example if the sun is low in the sky.
- In the case of navigation data that is invalid, outdated or not available.
- It may not be possible to use the system in all countries.

Dynamic brake lights

Principle

The brake lights flash to warn road users behind the vehicle that an emergency braking manoeuvre is being performed. This can reduce the risk of a rear-end collision.

General



- Normal braking: brake lights illuminate.
- Heavy braking: brake lights flash.

Shortly before the vehicle comes to a standstill, the hazard warning lights are activated.

To switch off the hazard warning lights:

- Accelerate.
- Press the hazard warning lights button.

Active Protection

Principle

In critical driving or collision situations, Active Protection prepares the vehicle occupants and the vehicle for a potential imminent accident.

General

Active Protection consists of different PreCrash functions which may vary depending on the equipment installed.

The system detects critical driving situations which could potentially lead to an accident. Such situations include:

- Full braking.
- Severe understeer.
- Severe oversteer.

Certain functions of some systems installed in the vehicle can – within the system's limits – cause Active Protection to trigger:

- Front-end collision warning with light braking function: automatic brake application.
- Front-end collision warning with light braking function: braking force assistance.
- Night Vision with person and animal recognition: braking force assistance.
- Prevention of rear collision: detection of potential rear collisions.

Safety note

WARNING

The system does not relieve you of your personal responsibility. System limitations may mean that critical situations are not detected reliably or in good time. There is a risk of accident. Adapt your driving style to the traffic conditions. Observe the traffic situation and intervene actively if the situation warrants it.

Function

If fastened, the driver's and front passenger's seat belts are automatically tensioned when driving off.

In critical accident situations, the following individual functions become active as required:

- ▷ Automatic pre-tensioning of the front seat belts.
- ▷ Automatic closing of the windows, leaving just a small gap.
- ▷ Automatic closing of the glass roof, including the sun guard.

If the critical driving situation passes without an accident occurring, the tension in the front seat belts is released again.

If the belt tension does not slacken automatically, stop the vehicle and unfasten the seat belt by pressing the red button on the buckle. Fasten the seat belt again before continuing your journey.

All other systems can be restored to the desired setting.

PostCrash – iBrake

Principle

The system can automatically bring the vehicle to a standstill in certain accident situations without the involvement of the driver. The risk of a further collision and its consequences can thereby be reduced.

At a standstill

Once the vehicle has come to a halt, the brake is released automatically.

Harder vehicle braking

In certain situations, it may be necessary to bring the vehicle to a standstill more quickly than is possible with automatic braking.

To do so, brake quickly and firmly. For a brief period, the braking pressure will be higher than that achieved with the automatic braking function. Automatic braking is interrupted.

Cancelling automatic braking

In certain situations, it may be necessary to cancel automatic braking, for example for an evasive manoeuvre.

Cancel automatic braking:

- ▷ By depressing the brake pedal.
- ▷ By depressing the accelerator pedal.

Attentiveness assistant

General

The system can detect decreasing attentiveness or the onset of fatigue in the driver on long monotonous journeys, for example on motorways. In such situations, the system recommends taking a break.

Safety note

WARNING

The system does not relieve you of your personal responsibility to assess your physical condition correctly. Increasing inattention or fatigue might not be detected, or may not be detected in good time. There is a risk of accident. Make sure that you, as the driver, are rested and alert. Adapt your driving style to the traffic conditions.

Function

The system is switched on every time drive-ready state is switched on.

After commencement of the journey, the system adapts to the driver so that any decrease in attention or fatigue can be detected.

This process considers the following criteria:

- ▷ Personal driving style, for example steering.
- ▷ Driving conditions, for example time of day, duration of journey.
- ▷ Depending on the vehicle equipment: attentiveness of the driver through the Driver Attention Camera.

The system is active from approx. 70 km/h, 43 mph and can also display a recommendation to take a break.

Break recommendations

To adjust

The attentiveness assistant is automatically active every time drive-ready state is switched on and can thus display break recommendations.

Break recommendations can also be switched on or off and adjusted via iDrive.

Via iDrive:

1. "CAR"
2. "Settings"
3. "General settings"
4. "Attentiveness Assistant"
5. Select the desired setting:
 - ▷ "Standard": the break recommendation is given with a defined value.
 - ▷ "Sensitive": the break recommendation is given earlier.
 - ▷ "Off": no break recommendation is given.

Display

If the driver shows signs of decreasing attention or of fatigue, a message is shown on the Control Display with the recommendation to take a break.

The following settings can be selected during the display.

After a break, another break recommendation cannot be displayed until after approximately 45 minutes at the earliest.

System limits

The system may have limited functionality in situations such as the following and an incorrect warning, or no warning at all, may be given:

- ▷ If the time is set incorrectly.
- ▷ When the speed is predominantly below approx. 70 km/h, 43 mph.
- ▷ If a sporty driving style is adopted, for example sharp acceleration or fast cornering.
- ▷ In active driving situations, for example frequent lane changes.
- ▷ In poor road conditions.
- ▷ In strong crosswinds.

The system is reset approximately 45 minutes after the vehicle is stopped, for example when taking a break during a long motorway journey.

Driving Stability Control Systems

Vehicle equipment

This chapter describes all standard, country-specific and special equipment available for the model series. It may therefore describe equipment and functions which are not installed in your vehicle, for example on account of the optional equipment selected or the country variant. This also applies to safety-relevant functions and systems. Please comply with the relevant laws and regulations when using the corresponding functions and systems.

Anti-lock Brake System ABS

ABS prevents the wheels from locking when the brakes are applied.

Steering control is retained even during full braking, which enhances active road safety.

ABS is operational each time the engine is started.

Brake assist

When the brake pedal is depressed quickly, the system automatically applies maximum braking power. This keeps the stopping distance as short as possible in full braking situations. The advantages offered by the Anti-lock Brake System ABS can also be utilised to the full.

The pressure on the brake should be maintained for the duration of the full-braking process.

Adaptive brake assist

In conjunction with Active Cruise Control ACC, this system ensures that the brake responds

even more quickly when braking in critical situations.

Drive-off assistant

Principle

The system provides support when driving off on upward gradients.

Driving off

1. Hold the vehicle in place by depressing the foot brake.
2. Release the foot brake and drive off without delay.

The vehicle is held for approximately 2 seconds after the foot brake has been released.

Depending on the vehicle's load or when towing a trailer, the vehicle may roll backwards a little.

M Setup

Principle

The M1 and M2 buttons on the steering wheel can be used to store individual settings for the vehicle and call them up again when required.

General

The buttons are set in the configuration that is appropriate for the vehicle and can be individually adjusted.

If the drive-ready state is switched on after the vehicle has been in the rest state, an efficient vehicle state is active. Configuration via the buttons is deactivated.

Safety note

WARNING

Depending on the settings, DSC may only be available to a limited extent or not at all when the M1 or M2 button is activated. There is a risk of accidents or material damage. Observe the settings for DSC in iDrive and react actively if necessary. Adjust the driving style and react if necessary.

Settings

The settings for the following systems can be stored for the M1 or M2 buttons:

Sym- bol	Meaning
	"Engine": programs of M Engine Dynamics Control, see page 146.
	"Transmission": Drivelogic, see page 144: switching modes and Drivelogic programmes.
	"Chassis": programs of Adaptive M suspension, see page 260.
	"Steering": programmes of Servotronic, see page 218.
	"Head-up displ.": views of the Head-Up Display, see page 163.
	"DSC": Dynamic Stability Control DSC, see page 214, and M Dynamic Mode MDM, see page 214.
	"M xDrive": programs of M xDrive, see page 217.
	"Auto Start/Stop": Auto Start Stop function, see page 130.
	"Sound Control": sound control, see page 147.

Overview

Buttons in the vehicle



But- tons	Function
	Dynamic Stability Control DSC, M Dynamic Mode MDM.
	M engine dynamics control.
	Adaptive M suspension.
	Servotronic.
	Drivelogic.
	M "M setup".

Buttons on the steering wheel

Button	Function
	M1.
	M2.

Configuring

Via buttons

1. Set the required function using the corresponding button on the centre console. This

will deactivate the configuration that is currently active, if applicable.

- 2. Press and hold down the M1 or M2 button on the steering wheel.

The settings are saved.

Via iDrive

- 1. "CAR"
- 2.  "M setup"
- 3. "Configure M1" or "Configure M2"
- 4. Select the desired setting.
- 5. Select the desired channel.

The individual settings are saved for the configuration that is currently being used.

When the M1 or M2 configuration is active, any changes to the setting are applied immediately.

Activating

Press the relevant button on the steering wheel:

- ▷  Activate M1.
- ▷  Activate M2.

If DSC OFF or MDM is set in "Configure M1" or "Configure M2", a message appears in the instrument cluster. This message is operated by pressing the button again.

Deactivating

Press the relevant button on the steering wheel again.

Resetting the configuration

Individual settings can be reset to default values.

Via iDrive:

- 1. "CAR"
- 2.  "M setup"
- 3. "Configure M1" or "Configure M2"
- 4. "Reset"
- 5. "Yes"

To interrupt resetting: "No"

Display in the instrument cluster

Symbol	Description
	Symbol illuminated: corresponding configuration is activated.
	
	Symbol illuminated and additional lettering "Cannot be activated" appears: configuration cannot be activated due to the current dynamic driving situation.
	
	Reactivate the configuration once the lettering disappears.

Dynamic Stability Control DSC

Principle

The system reduces engine power output and applies the brakes on individual wheels thereby helping, within the limits imposed by the laws of physics, to keep the vehicle safely on course.

General

DSC detects the following unstable driving conditions, for example:

- ▷ Loss of traction at the rear which can lead to oversteer.
- ▷ Loss of grip at the front wheels which can lead to understeer.

Safety notes

WARNING

The system does not relieve you of your personal responsibility to assess the traffic situation correctly. Due to system limitations, it cannot respond independently and appropriately in all traffic conditions. There is a risk of accident. Adapt your driving style to the traffic conditions. Observe the traffic situation and intervene actively if the situation warrants it.

WARNING

When driving with a roof load, for example with a roof rack, the higher centre of gravity can mean that driving safety is no longer guaranteed in critical driving situations. There is a risk of accidents or material damage. Do not deactivate Dynamic Stability Control DSC when driving with a roof load.

Overview

Button in the vehicle



DSC OFF

Deactivate/activate DSC

General

Driving stability during acceleration and cornering is restricted if DSC is deactivated.

To assist driving stability, re-activate DSC as soon as possible.

Deactivating DSC



Hold the button down until DSC OFF is displayed in the instrument cluster and the DSC OFF indicator lamp is illuminated.

M xDrive, see page 217, appears on the Control Display. The required programme can be selected.

Activating DSC



Press the button.

DSC OFF and the DSC OFF indicator lamps are extinguished.

Display

In the instrument cluster

DSC OFF is displayed in the instrument cluster when DSC is deactivated.

Indicator and warning lamps



If the indicator lamp is illuminated: DSC is deactivated.



If the indicator lamp is flashing: DSC is regulating the acceleration and braking forces.

If the indicator lamp is illuminated: DSC has failed.

M Dynamic Mode

Principle

M Dynamic Mode MDM allows driving with higher longitudinal and transverse acceleration on dry carriageways, but with restricted driving stability.

Only in the absolute limit of the range does the system engage for stability purposes by reducing the engine power and by brakes applied to the wheels. In this driving situation, additional steering corrections may be required.

General

When M Dynamic Mode MDM is activated, the active M xDrive program is: "4WD SPORT"

It may be useful to activate MDM briefly in the following exceptional situations:

- ▷ When driving in slush or on uncleared, snow-covered roads.
- ▷ If the vehicle has to be rocked out of or started in deep snow or on a loose surface.
- ▷ When driving with snow chains.

To increase driving stability, activate DSC again.

Safety note

WARNING

With M Dynamic Mode activated stabilising engagements are only carried out to a reduced degree. There is a risk of accidents or material damage. Adapt your driving style to the traffic conditions. Observe the traffic situation and intervene actively if the situation warrants it. In the event of a warning, do not move the steering wheel unnecessarily abruptly.

Overview

Button in the vehicle



DSC OFF

Activating/deactivating MDM

Activating MDM



Press the button.

The MDM and DSC OFF symbols in the instrument cluster illuminate.

Deactivating MDM



Press the button.

The MDM and DSC OFF symbols no longer illuminate.

Via iDrive

M Dynamic Mode MDM can be configured for the M1 or M2 buttons.

1. "CAR"
2.  "M setup"
3. "Configure M1" or "Configure M2"
4.  "DSC"
5. "MDM"

To activate the required configuration with the selected settings, press the corresponding button on the steering wheel:



A message appears in the instrument cluster. This message is operated by pressing the button again.

Display in the instrument cluster

Symbol	Description
	Symbols illuminate: M Dynamic Mode is activated.
	
	DSC indicator lamp also flashes: M Dynamic Mode is regulating the driving and braking forces.
	The indicator lamps illuminate: M Dynamic Mode or DSC has failed.
	

M xDrive

Principle

M xDrive is the vehicle's four-wheel drive system. The combination of M xDrive and Dynamic Stability Control DSC further optimises traction and driving dynamics. M xDrive distributes the drive forces variably to the front and rear axles according to the driving situation and road surface conditions.

General

3 M xDrive programs are available when DSC Dynamic Stability Control is deactivated.

Programs

Pro-gramme	Distribution of drive forces
"4WD"	Front and rear axle.
"4WD SPORT"	Front and rear axle. Main component, rear axle.
"2WD"	Rear axle.

A programme is active automatically in the following situations:

- ▷ When the drive-ready state is switched on: "4WD".
- ▷ When MDM is active: "4WD SPORT".
- ▷ When DSC is active: "4WD".

Selecting a channel

General

It is not possible to change the programs in dynamic driving situations.

Via iDrive

It is possible to configure the required program for the M1 or M2 buttons.

1. "CAR"
2.  "M setup"
3. "Configure M1" or "Configure M2"
4. Deactivate DSC accordingly.
5.  "M xDrive"
6. Select the desired channel.

The setting is accepted immediately when the M1 or M2 configuration is active.

To activate the required configuration with the selected settings, press the corresponding button on the steering wheel:





Display in the instrument cluster

Symbol	Description
	Indicator lamp illuminates and 4WD is shown in the instrument cluster: "4WD" is activated.
	Indicator lamp illuminates and 4WD is shown in the instrument cluster: "4WD SPORT" is activated.
 	The indicator lamps illuminate and 2WD is shown in the instrument cluster: "2WD" is activated.

Active M Differential

The active M Differential blocks the rear axis transmission steplessly, depending on the drive situation. In so doing, even with the DSC switched off and in M Dynamic Mode, spinning of a single rear wheel is avoided and therefore optimum traction is provided under all driving conditions.

The driver is responsible for a driving style appropriate to the situation.

Servotronic

Principle

Servotronic is a speed-dependent power steering system.

The system provides more steering force assistance at lower speeds than at higher speeds. This makes it easier to park, for example, and

provides a firmer steering feel when driving at higher speeds.

In addition, the steering force is adapted according to the programme, so that a firm, sporty feel or a comfortable steering response is conveyed.

General

The system offers several different steering force tunings.

Programme	Steering force tuning
"COMFORT"	Low steering forces, good roadway feedback.
"SPORT"	Medium steering forces, enhanced roadway feedback.
"SPORT PLUS"	High steering forces, maximum roadway feedback.

Selecting a channel

Using the button



 Press the button until the desired programme is displayed in the instrument cluster.

Via iDrive

It is possible to configure the required program for the M1 or M2 buttons.

- 1. "CAR"
- 2.  "M setup"
- 3. "Configure M1" or "Configure M2"

4.  "Steering"
5. Select the desired channel.

The setting is accepted immediately when the M1 or M2 configuration is active.

To activate the required configuration with the selected settings, press the corresponding button on the steering wheel:



Display in the instrument cluster



Servotronic with selected program with activated display of the system states of the driving dynamics.

Driver Assistance Systems

Vehicle equipment

This chapter describes all standard, country-specific and special equipment available for the model series. It may therefore describe equipment and functions which are not installed in your vehicle, for example on account of the optional equipment selected or the country variant. This also applies to safety-relevant functions and systems. Please comply with the relevant laws and regulations when using the corresponding functions and systems.

Manual Speed Limiter

Principle

The system can be used to set a speed limit so that speed restrictions are not exceeded.

General

The system enables speeds from a value of 30 km/h/20 mph and above to be set as a speed limit. Below the set speed limit, the vehicle can be driven without restriction.

Overview

Buttons on the steering wheel

Button	Function
	System on/off.
	Rocker switch: Change the speed limit.

Operation

Switching on

 Press the button on the steering wheel.

The current speed is adopted as the speed limit. When switching on at a standstill or driving at low speed, 30 km/h/20 mph is set as the speed limit. The speedometer marker is set to the current speed.

When activating the speed limit it is possible that Dynamic Stability Control, DSC is activated.

Switching off

 Press the button on the steering wheel.

The system switches off automatically in the following situations, for example:

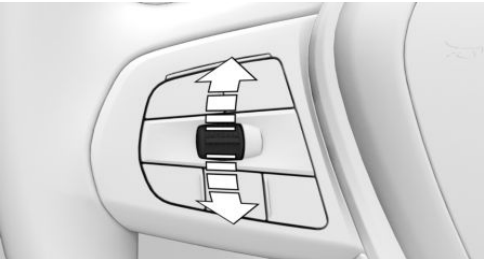
- ▶ When switching the engine off.
- ▶ When switching on Cruise Control.
- ▶ When activating some programs.

The displays turn off.

Interrupting

The system is interrupted in reverse or when rolling backwards at idle speed.

Change speed limit



Press the rocker switch repeatedly up or down until the desired speed is set.

- ▷ Each time the rocker switch is pressed to the resistance point, the speed limit is increased or decreased by 1 km/h, 1 mph.
- ▷ Each time the rocker switch is pressed beyond the resistance point, the speed limit changes to the next multiple of 10 km/h on the km/h display or the next multiple of 5 mph on the mph display in the speedometer.

If the set speed limit has been reached or unintentionally exceeded, for example when driving downhill, there is no active brake intervention.

If you set a speed during the journey which is below the current speed, the vehicle coasts down to the set speed limit.

Exceeding the speed limit

The system gives a warning if the travelling speed exceeds the set speed limit.

You can intentionally exceed the speed limit. There is no warning in such a case.

To exceed the set speed limit intentionally, fully depress the accelerator pedal.

The limit automatically becomes active again as soon as the current speed falls below the set speed limit.

Warning when the speed limit is exceeded

Visual warning



If the speed limit is exceeded: the indicator lamp in the instrument cluster flashes for as long as you exceed the set speed limit.

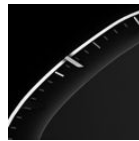
Acoustic warning

- ▷ A signal sounds if you inadvertently exceed the set speed limit.

- ▷ If the speed limit is reduced to below the driven speed during the journey, the warning sounds after a little time.
- ▷ If you intentionally exceed the speed limit by fully pressing the accelerator pedal, no warning sounds.

Displays in the instrument cluster

Display in the speedometer



- ▷ Green marker: system is active.
- ▷ Grey mark: the system is interrupted.
- ▷ No marker: system is switched off.

Indicator lamp



- ▷ If the indicator lamp is illuminated: the system is switched on.
- ▷ If the indicator lamp is flashing: set speed limit is exceeded.
- ▷ Grey indicator lamp: the system is interrupted.

Cruise Control

Principle

This system allows a desired speed to be set using the buttons on the steering wheel. The desired speed is then maintained by the system. To do so, the system automatically accelerates and brakes the vehicle as necessary.

General

Characteristics of Cruise Control may change in certain areas depending on vehicle setting.

Safety notes

 WARNING

The system does not relieve you of your personal responsibility to assess the traffic situation correctly. Due to system limitations, it cannot respond independently and appropriately in all traffic conditions. There is a risk of accident. Adapt your driving style to the traffic conditions. Observe the traffic situation and intervene actively if the situation warrants it.

 WARNING

The risk of an accident may be increased if the system is used in certain situations, such as:

- ▷ On stretches of road with many corners and bends.
- ▷ In heavy traffic.
- ▷ If the road is icy, if there is fog or snow, in wet conditions or on a loose road surface.

There is a risk of accidents or material damage. Only use the system if it is possible to drive at a constant speed.

 WARNING

The desired speed may be set incorrectly by mistake or called up accidentally. There is a risk of accident. Adjust the desired speed to the traffic conditions. Observe the traffic situation and intervene actively if the situation warrants it.

Overview

Buttons on the steering wheel

Button	Function
	Cruise Control on/off.
	To interrupt Cruise Control. To resume Cruise Control with last setting.
	Rocker switch: Set the speed.

Switching Cruise Control on/off

Switching on

 Press the button on the steering wheel.

The indicator lamps are illuminated in the instrument cluster and the marker in the speedometer is positioned at the current speed.

Cruise Control is active. The driven speed is maintained and stored as the desired speed.

Dynamic Stability Control DSC is switched on, if necessary.

Switching off

 Press the button on the steering wheel.

The displays turn off. The stored desired speed is deleted.

Interrupting Cruise Control

Interrupting manually

 Press the button while the system is activated.

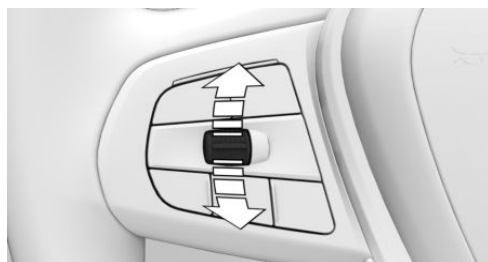
Interrupting automatically

The system is interrupted automatically in the following situations:

- ▷ If the driver brakes.
- ▷ If the selector lever is moved out of position D.
- ▷ When M Dynamic Mode MDM is activated or Dynamic Stability Control DSC is deactivated.
- ▷ If Dynamic Stability Control DSC intervenes.

To set the speed

Maintaining and saving the speed



While the system is interrupted, press the rocker switch up or down once.

When the system is switched on, the current speed is maintained and stored as the desired speed.

The stored speed is displayed on the speedometer.

Dynamic Stability Control DSC is switched on, if necessary.

Changing the speed



Press the rocker switch repeatedly up or down until the desired speed is set.

If the system is active, the displayed speed is stored and the vehicle adjusts to the stored speed when the road is clear.

- ▷ Each time the rocker switch is pressed to the resistance point, the desired speed is increased or decreased by 1 km/h, 1 mph.
- ▷ Each time the rocker switch is pressed beyond the resistance point, the desired speed changes to the next multiple of 10 km/h on the km/h display or the next multiple of 5 mph on the mph display in the speedometer.

The maximum speed which can be set depends on the vehicle.

- ▷ Pressing the rocker switch to the resistance point and holding it there accelerates or decelerates the vehicle without pressing the accelerator pedal.

After the rocker switch is released, the vehicle maintains the final speed. Pressing beyond the resistance point accelerates the vehicle more rapidly.

Resuming Cruise Control

If Cruise Control is interrupted, it can be resumed by calling up the stored speed.

Before calling up the stored speed, make sure that the difference between the current speed and the stored speed is not too great. Otherwise, there may be unintentional braking or acceleration.



With the system interrupted, press the button.

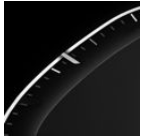
Cruise Control is resumed with the stored values.

The stored speed is deleted and can no longer be called up in the following instances:

- ▷ When the system is switched off.
- ▷ When drive-ready state is switched off.

Displays in the instrument cluster

Display in the speedometer



- ▶ Green indicator: system is active, the indicator shows the desired speed.
- ▶ Grey mark: system is interrupted; the mark shows the stored speed.
- ▶ No marker: system is switched off.

Indicator lamp



- ▶ Green indicator lamp: the system is active.
- ▶ Grey indicator lamp: the system is interrupted.
- ▶ No indicator lamp: the system is switched off.

Displays in the Head-Up Display

Some information from the system can also be shown in the Head-Up Display.



The symbol is displayed when the set desired speed has been reached.

Active Cruise Control with Stop & Go ACC

Principle

This system allows you to set a desired speed and a desired distance from the vehicle in front, using the buttons on the steering wheel.

When the road ahead is clear, the system maintains the desired speed. The vehicle accelerates or brakes automatically.

If there is a vehicle driving in front, the system adapts the speed of your vehicle in order to maintain the set distance from the vehicle ahead.

The speed is adapted as far as the given situation allows.

General

A radar sensor in the front bumper and a camera on the rear-view mirror are used to detect vehicles ahead.

Characteristics of Cruise Control may change in certain areas depending on vehicle setting.

The distance can be set in several stages and for safety reasons is dependent on the respective speed.

If the vehicle ahead brakes to a standstill and sets off again shortly afterwards, the system can recognise this within the bounds of what is possible in the given conditions.

Safety notes

WARNING

The system does not relieve you of your personal responsibility to assess the traffic situation correctly. Due to system limitations, it cannot respond independently and appropriately in all traffic conditions. There is a risk of accident. Adapt your driving style to the traffic conditions. Observe the traffic situation and intervene actively if the situation warrants it.

WARNING

An unsecured vehicle can start moving and rolling away. There is a risk of accident. Before leaving the vehicle, secure it to prevent it from rolling away.

Observe the following to ensure that the vehicle is secured against rolling away:

- ▶ Apply the parking brake.
- ▶ Turn the front wheels towards the kerb on upward or downward gradients.

- ▷ Additionally secure the vehicle on upward or downward gradients, for example with a chock.

WARNING

The desired speed may be set incorrectly by mistake or called up accidentally. There is a risk of accident. Adjust the desired speed to the traffic conditions. Observe the traffic situation and intervene actively if the situation warrants it.

WARNING

There is a risk of accidents if the difference in speed relative to other vehicles is excessively high. This may occur, for example, in the following situations:

- ▷ When quickly approaching a slowly moving vehicle.
- ▷ If another vehicle suddenly veers into the vehicle's own lane.
- ▷ When quickly approaching stationary vehicles.

There is a risk of injury or even death. Observe the traffic situation and intervene actively if the situation warrants it.

Overview

Buttons on the steering wheel

Button Function



Cruise Control on/off.



To interrupt Cruise Control.
To resume Cruise Control with last setting.



Without steering and lane control assistant:
Reduce the distance.

Button Function



Without steering and lane control assistant:
Increase the distance.



With steering and lane control assistant:
Adjust the distance.



Rocker switch:
Set the speed.
Speed Limit Assist: accept the suggested speed.



With steering and lane control assistant:
Lane control assistant including traffic-queue assistant on/off.

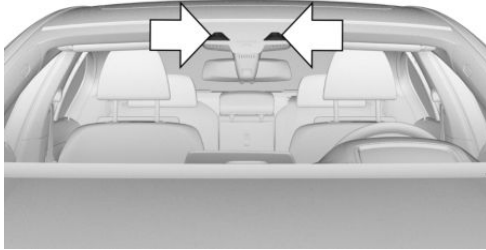
Radar sensor



The radar sensor is located on the front in the bumper.

Keep the radar sensor clean and unobstructed.

Camera



The camera is located near the rear-view mirror. Keep the windscreen clean and clear in this area.

Use

The system can be used to optimum effect on well-constructed roads. The system is operational from a speed of approximately 30 km/h/20 mph.

The maximum speed which can be set is limited and depends on the vehicle and its equipment, for example.

Higher speeds can be set by switching to Cruise Control without distance control.

The system can also be activated when the vehicle is at a standstill.

Switching Cruise Control on/off and interrupting

Switching on



Press the button on the steering wheel.

The indicator lamps are illuminated in the instrument cluster and the marker in the speedometer is positioned at the current speed.

Cruise Control is active. The driven speed is maintained and stored as the desired speed.

Dynamic Stability Control DSC is switched on, if necessary.

Switching off

When switching off with the vehicle at a standstill, depress the brake pedal at the same time.



Press the button on the steering wheel.

The displays turn off. The stored desired speed is deleted.

Interrupting manually



With the system activated, press the button on the steering wheel.

If interrupting the system when the vehicle is at a standstill, depress the brake pedal at the same time.

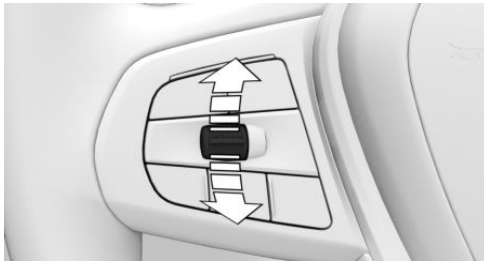
Interrupting automatically

The system is interrupted automatically in the following situations:

- ▷ If the driver brakes.
- ▷ If the selector lever is moved out of position D.
- ▷ When M Dynamic Mode MDM is activated or Dynamic Stability Control DSC is deactivated.
- ▷ If Dynamic Stability Control DSC intervenes.
- ▷ If the vehicle is stationary and the seat belt is unfastened and the driver's door is opened.
- ▷ If the system has not detected any objects for an extended period of time, for example on roads with little traffic and without defined boundaries.
- ▷ If the detection zone of the radar is disrupted, for example due to contamination or heavy rainfall.
- ▷ After an extended stationary period, if the vehicle was decelerated to a standstill by the system.

To set the speed

Maintaining and saving the speed



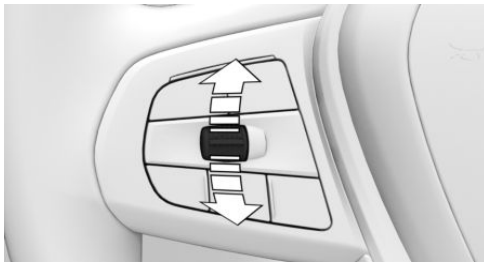
While the system is interrupted, press the rocker switch up or down once. The system is activated.

The current speed is maintained and stored as the desired speed.

The stored speed is displayed on the speedometer.

Dynamic Stability Control DSC is switched on, if necessary.

Changing the speed



Press the rocker switch repeatedly up or down until the desired speed is set.

If the system is active, the displayed speed is stored and the vehicle adjusts to the stored speed when the road is clear.

- Each time the rocker switch is pressed to the resistance point, the desired speed is increased or decreased by 1 km/h, 1 mph.
- Each time the rocker switch is pressed beyond the resistance point, the desired speed

changes to the next multiple of 10 km/h on the km/h display or the next multiple of 5 mph on the mph display in the speedometer.

To repeat an action, hold the rocker switch in the relevant position.

Adjusting the distance

General

The distance setting is saved for the current driver profile.

Safety note

WARNING

The system does not relieve you of your personal responsibility. System limitations may mean that braking is performed too late. There is a risk of accidents or material damage. Pay close attention to the traffic conditions at all times. Adapt the distance to traffic and weather conditions and comply with the prescribed safe distance by braking if necessary.

Without steering and lane control assistant: to reduce the distance



Press the button repeatedly until the desired distance is set.

The selected distance is displayed in the instrument cluster.

Without steering and lane control assistant: to increase the distance



Press the button repeatedly until the desired distance is set.

The selected distance is displayed in the instrument cluster.

With steering and lane control assistant: setting the distance



Press the button repeatedly until the desired distance is set.

Resuming Cruise Control

If Cruise Control is interrupted, it can be resumed by calling up the stored speed.

Before calling up the stored speed, make sure that the difference between the current speed and the stored speed is not too great. Otherwise, there may be unintentional braking or acceleration.



With the system interrupted, press the button.

Cruise Control is resumed with the stored values.

The stored speed is deleted and can no longer be called up in the following instances:

- ▶ When the system is switched off.
- ▶ When drive-ready state is switched off.

Switching between Cruise Control with/without distance control

Safety note

**WARNING**

The system does not respond to traffic traveling in front of you, but instead maintains the stored speed. There is a risk of accidents or material damage. Adjust the desired speed to the traffic conditions and brake if necessary.

Switching to Cruise Control without distance control

Distance control can be switched off and on when driving with Cruise Control activated.



With steering and lane control assistant: press and hold the button.



Without steering and lane control assistant:

Press and hold the button.



Press and hold the button.

To switch back to Cruise Control with distance control, press the button again.

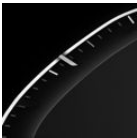
A Check Control message is then displayed.

Displays in the instrument cluster

General

Depending on the vehicle's equipment, the displays in the instrument cluster may vary.

Display in the speedometer

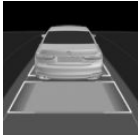
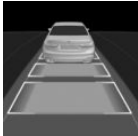
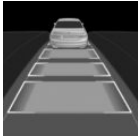
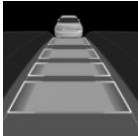
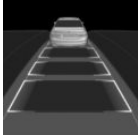


- ▶ Green indicator: system is active, the indicator shows the desired speed.
- ▶ Grey mark: system is interrupted; the mark shows the stored speed.

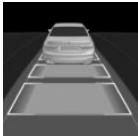
- ▶ No marker: system is switched off.

Vehicle distance

The selected distance to the vehicle ahead is displayed.

Symbol	Description
	Distance 1.
	Distance 2.
	Distance 3. Corresponds to approximately half of the value of the speedometer reading, expressed in metres. Selected when the system is switched on for the first time.
	Distance 4.
	No display of distance control because the accelerator pedal is being pressed.

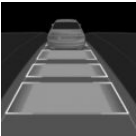
Detected vehicle

Symbol	Description
	Green symbol: Vehicle ahead detected.

The system maintains the set distance to the vehicle in front.

The vehicle symbol in the distance display moves away as soon as the detected vehicle pulls away.
To accelerate, activate ACC, for example by briefly pressing the accelerator pedal or rocker switch.

Indicator and warning lamps

Symbol	Description
	Green indicator lamp: the system is active. No indicator lamp: the system is switched off.
	Vehicle symbol flashes: The requirements for system operation are no longer being met. The system has been deactivated but will continue to brake until you actively take over by depressing the brake or accelerator pedal.
	Vehicle symbol and distance bar flash red and an acoustic signal sounds: Brake and perform an evasive manoeuvre, if necessary.
	System interrupted.

Displays in the Head-Up Display

Desired speed

Some information from the system can also be shown in the Head-Up Display.

 The symbol is displayed when the set desired speed has been reached.

Distance information



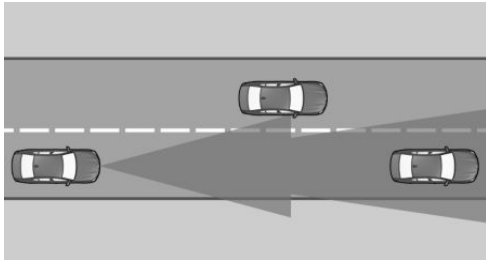
The symbol is shown if the distance from the vehicle in front is too close.

The distance information is active under the following circumstances:

- ▷ Active Cruise Control switched off.
- ▷ Display in the Head-Up Display selected, see page 163.
- ▷ Distance too close.
- ▷ Speed above approximately 70 km/h, 40 mph.

System limits

Detection range



The system's detection capability and automatic braking capacity are limited.

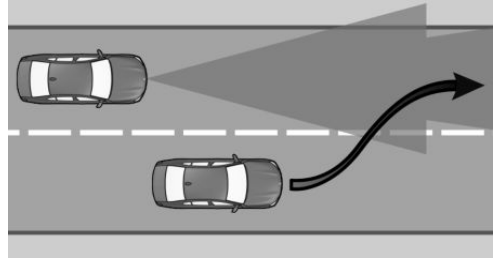
For example two-wheeled vehicles may not be detected.

Deceleration

The system does not decelerate in the following situations:

- ▷ For pedestrians or similarly slow road users.
- ▷ For red traffic lights.
- ▷ For crossing traffic.
- ▷ For oncoming vehicles.

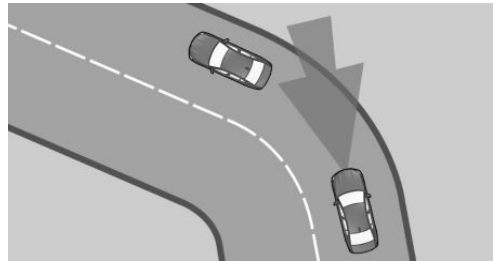
Vehicles pulling out



A vehicle driving ahead of you is only detected when it is fully in your driving path.

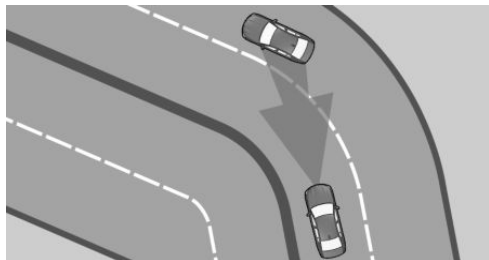
If another vehicle suddenly pulls out in front of you, the system might not be able to restore the selected distance automatically. In some circumstances, it may also not be possible to restore the selected distance if you are driving significantly faster than vehicles in front, for example when rapidly approaching a lorry. If a vehicle is clearly detected in front of you, the system prompts you to intervene by braking, and if necessary by taking evasive action.

Cornering



If the desired speed is too high for cornering, it will be reduced slightly in the bend. However, the system may not detect bends in advance, so moderate your speed when cornering.

The system has a limited detection range. Situations can arise on tight bends where a vehicle driving in front will not be detected or will be detected very late.



When your vehicle is approaching a bend, the angle of the bend may cause the system to respond temporarily to vehicles in the other lane. If the system responds by decelerating the vehicle, you may compensate for this by accelerating briefly. When the accelerator pedal is released again, the system will resume control of the vehicle's speed.

Driving off

The vehicle cannot drive off automatically in some situations, for example:

- ▶ On steep upward gradients.
- ▶ Before bumps or rises in the road.
- ▶ When towing a heavy trailer.

In such cases, depress the accelerator pedal.

Weather

The following restrictions may apply if the weather or lighting conditions are unfavourable:

- ▶ Impaired detection of vehicles.
- ▶ Brief interruptions when vehicles have already been detected.

Examples of unfavourable weather or lighting conditions:

- ▶ Wet roads.
- ▶ Snowfall.
- ▶ Slush.
- ▶ Fog.
- ▶ Oncoming light.

Pay attention when driving and respond to the prevailing traffic conditions. If necessary, inter-

vene actively, for example by braking, steering or taking evasive action.

Malfunction

Radar sensor

The system cannot be activated if the radar sensor is not correctly aligned, for example if it is damaged while parking.

A Check Control message is displayed if the system has failed.

Have the system checked by a Service Partner of the manufacturer or another qualified Service Partner or a specialist workshop.

The system may have limited functionality if the radar sensor detection range is partially covered, for example by the number plate holder.

Camera

Detection of and response to stationary vehicles when approaching may be limited in the following situations:

- ▶ During the camera calibration process immediately after vehicle delivery.
- ▶ Failure or soiling of the camera. A Check Control message is shown.

Speed Limit Assist

Principle

When the vehicle's systems, for example Speed Limit Info, detect a change in the speed limit along the route, this new speed value is suggested as the new desired speed for Active Cruise Control ACC. Cruise Control must be activated for the speed value to be adopted.

If the Manual Speed Limiter is activated, the new speed value is proposed as the speed limit.

Safety notes

 **WARNING**

The system does not relieve you of your personal responsibility to assess the traffic situation correctly. Due to system limitations, it cannot respond independently and appropriately in all traffic conditions. There is a risk of accident. Adapt your driving style to the traffic conditions. Observe the traffic situation and intervene actively if the situation warrants it.

 **WARNING**

The desired speed may be set incorrectly by mistake or called up accidentally. There is a risk of accident. Adjust the desired speed to the traffic conditions. Observe the traffic situation and intervene actively if the situation warrants it.

Overview

Rocker switch on the steering wheel

Rocker switch	Function
	Accept the suggested speed.
	Reject the suggested speed.

Switching on/off

Via iDrive:

1. "CAR"
2. "Settings"
3. "Driver assistance"
4. If applicable, "Driving"
5. "Speed Assistant"
6. "Speed Limit Assist"

Displays in the instrument cluster

A message is displayed in the instrument cluster if the system and the Cruise Control are switched on.

Symbol	Function
	The indicator lamp is illuminated green, together with the symbol for the speed control system: Speed Limit Assist is active and detected speed limits can be adopted manually for the displayed system.
	Detected change in speed limit detected with immediate effect. Distance information shown alongside the symbol indicates there might be a change in the speed limit up ahead.
	The symbol with the rocker switch shows that the new speed is higher than the desired speed set. The speedometer also shows the new desired speed in green.
	The symbol with the rocker switch shows that the new speed is lower than the desired speed set. The speedometer also shows the new desired speed in green.

Accepting the suggested speed

Briefly press the left rocker switch on the steering wheel up or down, according to the direction of the green arrow. The new speed is accepted. The green marker in the speedometer extinguishes.

Rejecting the suggested speed

Briefly press the rocker switch in the opposite direction to the green arrow.

Setting the speed adjustment

It is possible to set whether the speed limit should be accepted exactly, or with a tolerance of -15 km/h, -10 mph to +15 km/h, +10 mph.

Via iDrive:

1. "CAR"
2. "Settings"
3. "Driver assistance"
4. If applicable, "Driving"
5. "Speed Assistant"
6. "Adjust suggestion:"
7. Confirm the desired setting.

System limits

Speed Limit Assist based on the Speed Limit Info system.

Take into account the Speed Limit Info system limits, see page 160.

Depending on the country, displayed speed limits may not be available for acceptance, or may only be available to a limited extent, for example with speed information from the navigation system.

Steering and lane control assistant

Principle

The system helps the driver keep the vehicle in lane. To do this, the system assists by performing steering movements, for example when cornering.

General

The system detects the position of the lane markings and the vehicle driving in front using five radar sensors and a camera.

Depending on the speed, the system orientates itself using the lane markings and vehicles driving in front.

Sensors on the steering wheel detect whether the steering wheel is being touched.

Safety note

WARNING

The system does not relieve you of your personal responsibility to assess the traffic situation correctly. Due to system limitations, it cannot respond independently and appropriately in all traffic conditions. There is a risk of accident. Adapt your driving style to the traffic conditions. Observe the traffic situation and intervene actively if the situation warrants it.

Overview

Buttons on the steering wheel

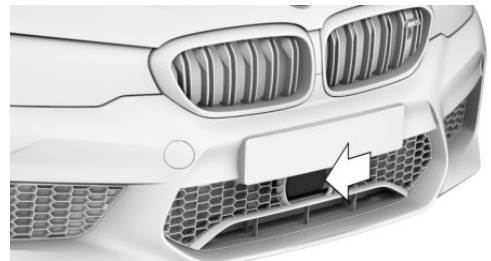
Button	Function
	Steering and lane control assistant including traffic-queue assistant on/off.



Steering and lane control assistant including traffic-queue assistant on/off.

Radar sensors

The radar sensors are in the bumpers.



Front bumper in middle.



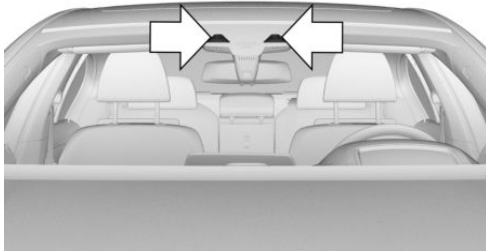
Front bumper at side.



Rear bumper.

Keep the bumpers clean and unobstructed in the area of the radar sensors.

Camera



The camera is located near the rear-view mirror. Keep the windscreen clean and clear in this area.

Operating requirements

- ▷ Speed under 210 km/h/130 mph.
- ▷ The driving path is sufficiently wide.
- ▷ Above 70 km/h, 43 mph: lane demarcations are detected on both sides.

- ▷ Below 70 km/h, 43 mph: lane markings on both sides or a vehicle driving in front is/are detected.
- ▷ Hands on the steering wheel.
- ▷ Sufficient corner radius.
- ▷ Driving in the centre of the lane.
- ▷ Turn indicator switched off.
- ▷ The sensor system calibration process is complete.

Switching on/off

Switching on



Press the button on the steering wheel.



Steering wheel symbol illuminates grey.

System is on standby and does not make any steering movements.

System activates automatically when all operating requirements are met, see page 234.



Steering wheel symbol illuminates green.

The system is active.

When the system switched on, the person warning with City braking function and the side collision warning are active.

Switching off



Press the button on the steering wheel.

The display is no longer illuminated.

The system does not execute any supporting steering movements.

Interrupting automatically

The system is interrupted automatically in the following situations:

- ▷ At a speed above 210 km/h/130 mph.
- ▷ When the steering wheel is released.
- ▷ When the steering wheel is turned sharply.

- When leaving your own lane.
- With the turn indicator switched on.
- When the lane is too narrow.
- If no lane marking has been detected for a certain time and there is no vehicle driving in front.



Steering wheel symbol illuminates grey.
System is on standby and does not make any steering movements.

The system activates automatically when all operating requirements are met.

Displays in the instrument cluster

Symbol	Description
	Steering wheel symbol grey: System on standby.
	Steering wheel symbol green: System is activated.
	Yellow flashing steering wheel symbol: Lane marking driven over. The steering wheel vibrates where applicable.
	Yellow steering wheel symbol and an acoustic signal, if applicable: System interruption is imminent.
	Steering wheel symbol flashes red, signal sounds: System is switching off.
	Green steering wheel symbol and lane marking symbol: The system is helping the driver keep the vehicle in lane.

Symbol	Description
	Green steering wheel symbol, grey lane marking symbol: No lane marking detected, the vehicle follows the vehicle driving in front. The limits of steering assistance when cornering may have been reached.
	Steering wheel symbol yellow: Hands are not around the steering wheel. System remains active.
	Red steering wheel symbol, acoustic signal: Hands are not around the steering wheel. System interruption is imminent. It is possible that the system will not execute any supporting steering movements. With Active Cruise Control the system will reduce the speed if applicable.

Displays in the Head-Up Display

All the system information can also be displayed in the Head-Up Display.

Lane change assistant

Principle

The system provides the driver with additional support when changing lanes on multi-lane roads.

Operating requirements

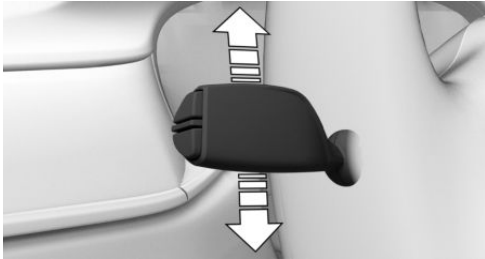
- Operating requirements of the steering and lane control assistant are met, see page 234.

- ▷ Driving on a road without pedestrians or cyclists and with physical barriers to oncoming vehicles, for example crash barriers.
- ▷ Lane marking detected.
- ▷ System sensors are active and a vehicle approaching from the rear can be detected.
- ▷ Lane Change Warning and steering intervention are switched on.
- ▷ Speed between 70 km/h, 43 mph and 180 km/h, 110 mph.

Changing lanes

1. Ensure that the traffic situation permits a lane change.
2. Push the turn indicator lever in the desired direction as far as the resistance point to indicate briefly.

After a short period, steering assistance in the desired direction is noticeable.



After the lane change, the system helps the driver keep the vehicle in lane.

Cancelling a lane change

The lane change can be cancelled by steering in the opposite direction.

System limits

General

The system cannot be activated or used sensibly in certain situations.

Safety note

WARNING

The system may not respond at all, or may respond too late, incorrectly or without justification due to system limitations. There is a risk of accidents or material damage. Observe the information on the system limits and intervene actively if necessary.

Hands on the steering wheel

In the following situations, contact between the driver's hands and the steering wheel is not detected by the sensors:

- ▷ Driving when wearing gloves.
- ▷ Covers on the steering wheel.

Narrow lanes

The system cannot be activated or used sensibly when driving in narrow lanes, for example in the following situations:

- ▷ At road works.
- ▷ Where there are emergency lanes.
- ▷ In built-up areas.

Weather

The following restrictions may apply if the weather or lighting conditions are unfavourable:

- ▷ Impaired detection of vehicles and lane markings.
- ▷ Brief interruptions when vehicles have already been detected.

Examples of unfavourable weather or lighting conditions:

- ▷ Wet roads.
- ▷ Snowfall.
- ▷ Slush.
- ▷ Fog.
- ▷ Oncoming light.

Pay attention when driving and respond to the prevailing traffic conditions. If necessary, intervene actively, for example by braking, steering or taking evasive action.

Park Distance Control PDC

Principle

PDC provides assistance when parking the vehicle. Objects in front of or behind the vehicle as it slowly approaches are indicated by means of acoustic signals and a display on the Control Display.

Depending on the equipment version: obstacles at the side of the vehicle that are detected by the side ultrasonic sensors may also be reported by the flank protection function.

General

The ultrasonic sensors for measuring distances are located in the bumpers, and if applicable on the side of the vehicle.

Their range is approximately 2 m, 6 ft, depending on the obstacle and environment.

An acoustic warning is given when the vehicle is approx. 70 cm, 27 in away from an object and a collision is imminent.

For objects behind the vehicle, the acoustic warning is given sooner, at a distance of approx. 1.50 m, 5 ft.

Safety notes

WARNING

The system does not relieve you of your personal responsibility to assess the traffic situation correctly. Due to system limitations, it cannot respond independently and appropriately in all traffic conditions. There is a risk of accident. Adapt your driving style to the traffic conditions.

Observe the traffic situation and intervene actively if the situation warrants it.

WARNING

If the vehicle is travelling at high speed when Park Distance Control PDC is activated, the warning may be delayed due to the physical conditions. There is a risk of injury or material damage. Avoid approaching an object at speed. Avoid moving off at speed while Park Distance Control PDC is not yet active.

Overview

Button in the vehicle



 Park Assistant button

Ultrasonic sensors



Ultrasonic sensors of the PDC, for example in the bumpers.

Operating requirements

To ensure full functionality:

- ▶ Do not cover sensors, for example by stickers, bicycle rack.
- ▶ Keep the sensors clean and unobstructed.

Switching on/off

Automatic activation

The system switches on automatically in the following situations:

- ▶ If selector lever position R is engaged while the engine is running.
- ▶ Depending on the equipment version: when approaching detected obstacles, if the speed is below approximately 4 km/h, 2.5 mph. The activation distance depends on the individual situation.

Automatic activation on detection of obstacles can be enabled and disabled.

Via iDrive:

1. "CAR"
2. "Settings"
3. "Driver assistance"
4. "Parking and manoeuvring"
5. If applicable, "Automatic PDC activation"
6. "Automatic PDC activation"

The setting is saved for the current driver profile.

Depending on the equipment version, a respective camera view is switched on additionally.

Automatic deactivation when moving forwards

The system switches off once a certain distance or speed is exceeded.

Switch the system back on if necessary.

Switching on/off manually



Press the Park Assistant button.

- ▶ On: the LED is illuminated.
- ▶ Off: the LED is extinguished.

The image from the rear-view camera is shown when reverse gear is engaged and the Park Assistant button is pressed.

Warning

Acoustic signals

General

An intermittent sound indicates that the vehicle is approaching an object. For instance, if an object is identified to the rear left of the vehicle, the acoustic signal is emitted from the rear left loudspeaker.

The shorter the distance to an object, the shorter the intervals become.

If the distance to a detected object is less than approximately 25 cm, 10 in, a continuous tone sounds.

If there are objects in front of and behind the vehicle at the same time, and they are at a distance of less than approximately 25 cm, 10 in, an alternating continuous tone sounds.

The intermittent tone and the continuous tone are switched off when selector lever position P is engaged.

The intermittent sound switches off a short while after the vehicle comes to a standstill.

Volume control

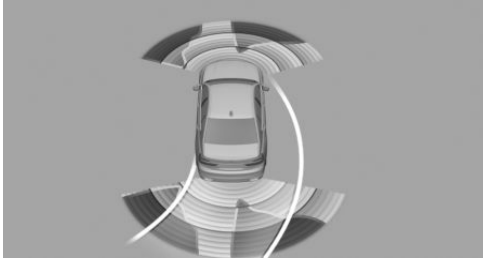
The PDC acoustic signal volume can be adjusted.

Via iDrive:

1. "CAR"
2. "Settings"
3. "Driver assistance"
4. "Parking and manoeuvring"
5. "Volume PDC signal"
6. Set the desired value.

The setting is saved for the current driver profile.

Visual warning



The vehicle's approach to an object is shown on the Control Display. Objects that are further away are already displayed before an acoustic signal is given.

The display appears as soon as PDC is activated.

The recording range of the sensors is shown in green, yellow and red if obstacles are detected within the range.

Driving path lines are displayed for better estimation of the space required.

If the rear-view camera image is shown, it is possible to change over to PDC or, if required, to another view with obstacle markings:

1. If necessary, push the Controller to the left.
2. For example "Parking sensors"

Crossing traffic warning, see page 256: depending on the equipment, the PDC display also warns about vehicles approaching from the sides at the front and rear.

Depending on the equipment version: emergency braking function, Active PDC

Principle

The emergency brake function of PDC initiates emergency braking if there is an imminent risk of a collision.

General

Due to the system limits, a collision cannot be prevented under all circumstances.

The function is available at speeds below walking speed when driving or rolling in reverse.

Pressing the accelerator pedal interrupts the braking intervention.

After emergency braking to a stop, it is possible to continue a slow approach to the obstacle. To approach, lightly depress the accelerator and release it again.

If the accelerator is depressed for longer, the vehicle pulls away. Manual braking is possible at any time.

The system uses the ultrasonic sensors of PDC and Park Assistant.

Safety note

WARNING

The system does not relieve you of your personal responsibility to assess the traffic situation correctly. There is a risk of accident. Adapt your driving style to the traffic conditions. Additionally, look directly to check the traffic situation and the area around the vehicle and intervene actively where appropriate.

Settings

The system can be activated or deactivated. It is possible to set which areas of the vehicle are protected by the system.

Via iDrive:

1. "CAR"
2. "Settings"
3. "Driver assistance"
4. "Parking and manoeuvring"
5. Select the desired setting.

The setting is saved for the current driver profile.

System limits

The system cannot be used in the following situations, for example:

- ▷ When driving with a trailer.

If necessary, deactivate the system via iDrive where applicable.

With Parking Assistant: flank protection

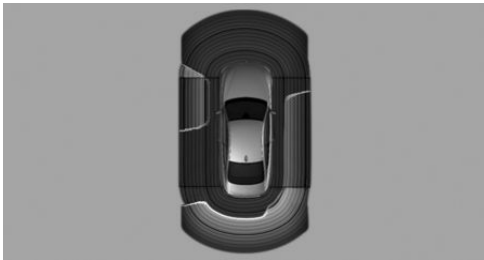
Principle

The system warns about obstacles at the side of the vehicle.

General

The system uses the ultrasonic sensors of PDC and Park Assistant.

Display



Obstacle markings are displayed at the sides of the vehicle to protect the vehicle's flanks.

- ▷ Coloured markings: warning that obstacles have been detected.
- ▷ Grey markings, hatched surface: no obstacles have been detected.
- ▷ No markings, black surface: the area adjacent to the vehicle has not yet been detected.

Limits of flank protection

The system only shows stationary obstacles that were previously detected by the sensors when driving past.

The system does not detect whether an obstacle subsequently moves. The markings are shown in black after a certain time when the vehicle is sta-

tionary. The area next to the vehicle needs to be scanned again.

Flank protection is not available when the trailer socket is in use.

System limits

Safety note

WARNING

The system may not respond at all, or may respond too late, incorrectly or without justification due to system limitations. There is a risk of accidents or material damage. Observe the information on the system limits and intervene actively if necessary.

With a trailer or when the trailer socket is in use

The rear PDC functions are switched off.



A white symbol is shown.

Depending on the equipment, the detection range of the sensors is shown dark on the Control Display.

Limits of ultrasound measurement

Certain conditions and objects may push ultrasound measurement to its physical limits, including the following:

- ▷ Small children and animals.
- ▷ Persons wearing certain types of clothing, for example a coat.
- ▷ External interference with the ultrasound, for example by passing vehicles or loud machines.
- ▷ Sensors which are dirty, iced up, damaged or incorrectly adjusted.
- ▷ Certain weather conditions, for example high humidity, wet conditions, snowfall, extreme heat or strong wind.

- Trailer drawbars and tow hitches of other vehicles.
- Thin or wedge-shaped objects.
- Moving objects.
- Higher protruding objects, for example projecting walls.
- Objects with corners, edges and smooth surfaces.
- Objects with fine surfaces or structures, for example fences.
- Objects with porous surfaces.
- Small and low objects such as boxes.
- Obstacles and people at the edge of the lane.
- Soft obstacles or obstacles covered in foam.
- Plants or shrubs.
- Low objects already indicated, for example kerbs, may enter the sensors' blind areas before or after a continuous tone is given.
- The system does not take into account loads projecting beyond the outline of the vehicle.

False alarms

Under the following conditions, the system may issue a warning even though there is no obstacle in the detection range:

- In heavy rain.
- If the sensors are heavily soiled or covered with ice.
- If the sensors are covered with snow.
- On rough road surfaces.
- On uneven surfaces, for example speed bumps.
- In large, rectangular buildings with smooth walls, for example underground car parks.
- In washing bays and car washes.
- In the presence of dense exhaust fumes.
- If the cover of the trailer tow hitch is incorrectly seated.

- In the presence of other ultrasonic sources, for example sweeping machines, steam-jet cleaners or neon lights.

To reduce false alarms, for example in automatic car washes, switch off automatic activation of PDC when obstacles are detected if necessary.

Malfunction

A Check Control message is shown.



A white symbol is shown and the capture area of the sensors is shown in dark colour on the Control Display.

PDC has failed. Have the system checked by a Service Partner of the manufacturer or another qualified Service Partner or a specialist workshop.

Without Surround View: rear-view camera

Principle

The rear-view camera provides assistance when reverse parking or manoeuvring. It does this by showing an image of the area behind the vehicle on the Control Display.

Assistance functions, for example auxiliary lines, can also be shown on the display.

Safety note



WARNING

The system does not relieve you of your personal responsibility to assess the traffic situation correctly. There is a risk of accident. Adapt your driving style to the traffic conditions. Additionally, look directly to check the traffic situation and the area around the vehicle and intervene actively where appropriate.

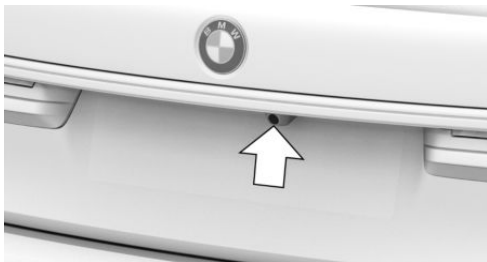
Overview

Depending on the equipment: button in the vehicle



Park Assistant button

Camera



The camera lens is located in the handle strip of the boot lid.

Dirt can impair the quality of the image. Clean the camera lens if required.

Switching on/off

Automatic activation

The system automatically switches on when selector lever position R is engaged while the engine is running.

Automatic deactivation when moving forwards

The system switches off once a certain distance or speed is exceeded.

Switch the system back on if necessary.

Depending on the equipment: switching on/off manually



Press the Park Assistant button.

- ▷ On: the LED is illuminated.
- ▷ Off: the LED is extinguished.

The parking assistance functions are shown on the Control Display.

Switching the view via iDrive

If the rear-view camera view is not displayed, change the view via iDrive:

1. If necessary, tilt the Controller to the side.
2.  "Rear view camera"

The image from the rear-view camera is shown.

Operating requirements

- ▷ The boot lid is completely closed.
- ▷ Keep the detection area of the camera clear. Projecting loads or carrier systems can restrict the detection area of the camera.
- ▷ Trailers that are not connected to a trailer socket can restrict the detection area of the camera.

Display on the Control Display

Toolbars

Assistance functions can be activated manually using the function bars on the sides of the Control Display.

Via iDrive:

1. If necessary, tilt the Controller to the right.
2. With the corresponding equipment:  "Camera picture"
3. ▷  "Parking guide lines".
Driving path lines and turning circle lines are shown.

► "Obstacle mark."

Depending on the equipment, the obstacles detected by Park Distance Control PDC are displayed by markings.

Zoom to the trailer tow hitch:

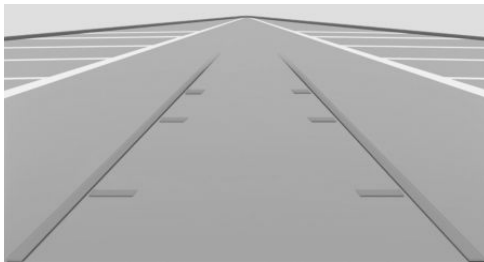
1. If necessary, tilt the Controller to the left.
2.  "Tow hitch".

A zoomed-in image of the trailer tow hitch is displayed.

A number of assistance functions can be active simultaneously.

Parking guidance lines

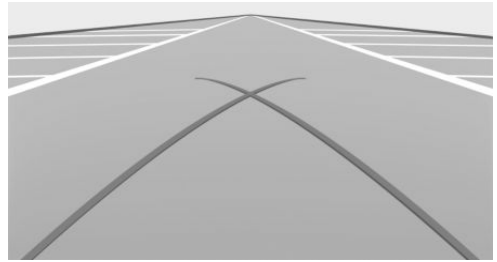
Driving path lines



The driving path lines help you to estimate the space required when parking and manoeuvring on a level road surface.

The driving path lines are dependent on the steering angle and are continuously adapted to the steering wheel movements.

Turning circle lines



The turning circle lines can only be shown in the camera image together with driving path lines.

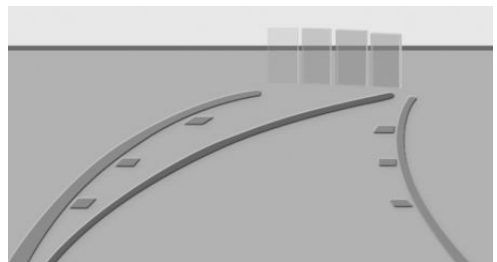
The turning circle lines show the trajectory of the smallest possible turning circle on a level road surface.

Once the steering wheel has been turned beyond a certain angle, only one turning circle line is displayed.

Parking with the help of driving path and turning circle lines

1. Position the vehicle so that the red turning circle line is within the boundaries of the parking space.
2. Turn the steering wheel so that the green driving path line covers the corresponding turning circle line.

Obstacle marker



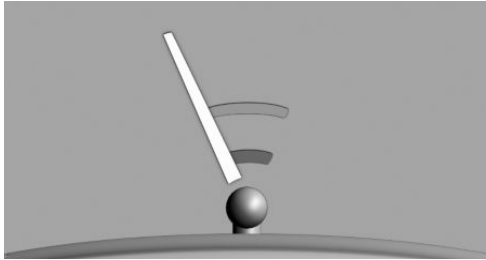
Depending on the equipment, obstacles behind the vehicle are detected by the Park Distance Control PDC sensors.

Obstacle markers can be shown in the image from the rear-view camera.

The colour grading of the obstacle markings corresponds to the markings of Park Distance Control PDC.

Zoom to trailer tow hitch

To assist with connecting up a trailer, it is possible to zoom in on the area around the trailer tow hitch.



Two static circle segments show the distance between the trailer and the trailer tow hitch.

A docking line dependent on the steering angle assists you in lining up the trailer tow hitch with the trailer.

When zooming in, remember that the view might no longer show certain obstacles.

Setting brightness and contrast via iDrive

With rear-view camera switched on:

1. If necessary, tilt the Controller to the right.
2.  "Camera picture"
3. Perform the desired setting:
 - ▷  "Brightness"
 - ▷  "Contrast"

System limits

Deactivated camera

If the camera is deactivated, for example when the boot lid is opened, the camera image is displayed as grey hatching.

Detection of objects

Very low obstacles and higher, protruding objects such as ledges cannot be detected by the system.

Depending on the equipment, some assistance functions also take account of Park Distance Control PDC data.

Observe the notes in the chapter on Park Distance Control PDC.

The objects shown in the Control Display may be closer than they appear. Do not estimate the distance to objects based on the display.

With Parking Assistant Plus: Surround View

Principle

The system provides assistance with parking and manoeuvring. It does this by displaying an image of the area all around the vehicle on the Control Display.

General

Several cameras capture the area from various selectable perspectives.

The following camera perspectives can be displayed:

- ▷ Automatic camera perspective: the system automatically shows the appropriate camera perspective depending on the particular driving situation.
- ▷ Rear-view camera: for showing the areas behind the vehicle.
- ▷ Flank view right and left: for showing the areas to the side of the vehicle.
- ▷ Camera perspective movable using iDrive. Free camera.
- ▷ Panorama View: for representing crossing traffic, for example at junctions and exits, depending on which gear is currently engaged.

Depending on the view, the vehicle's surroundings or a partial area are displayed.

Assistance functions, for example auxiliary lines, are also shown on the display.

A number of assistance functions can be active simultaneously.

Some assistance functions can be activated manually.

The following assistance functions are shown automatically:

- Flank protection.
- Door opening angle.

Safety note

WARNING

The system does not relieve you of your personal responsibility to assess the traffic situation correctly. There is a risk of accident. Adapt your driving style to the traffic conditions. Additionally, look directly to check the traffic situation and the area around the vehicle and intervene actively where appropriate.

Overview

Buttons in the vehicle

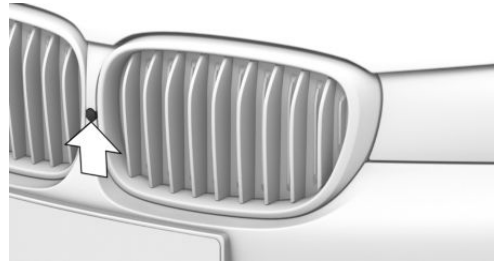


Park Assistant button

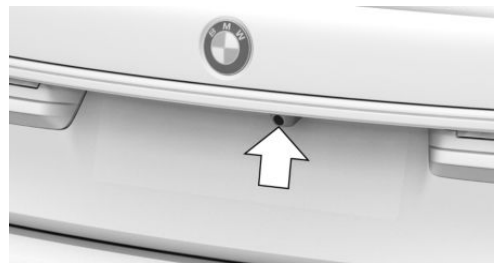


Panorama View

Cameras



Front camera



Rear-view camera



A camera is located under each exterior mirror housing.

Dirt on the camera lenses can impair the quality of the image. Clean the camera lenses if required.

Switching on/off

Automatic activation

The system is automatically switched on, see page 238, if selector lever position R is engaged while the engine is running.

The camera perspective appropriate for the corresponding driving situation is shown.

Switching on/off manually



Press the Park Assistant button.

- ▷ On: the LED is illuminated.
- ▷ Off: the LED is extinguished.

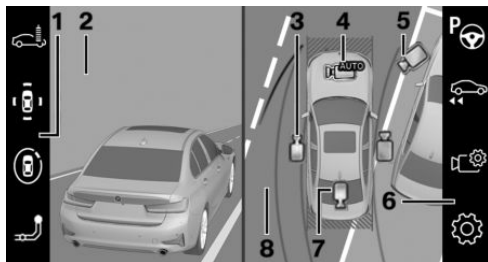
Automatic deactivation when moving forwards

The system switches off once a certain distance or speed is exceeded.

Switch the system back on if necessary.

Display on the Control Display

Overview



- 1 Toolbar, left
- 2 Camera image
- 3 Flank view
- 4 Automatic camera perspective
- 5 Movable, free camera perspective
- 6 Toolbar, right
- 7 Rear-view camera
- 8 Selection window

Toolbar, left

It is possible to select various views directly using iDrive and the function bar on the left. To do this, tilt the Controller to the left if necessary.

- ▷ "Car wash".
- ▷ "Parking": around the vehicle.
- ▷ "3D view": free camera.
- ▷ "Tow hitch".

Flank view

The flank view can be selected for the right or left side of the vehicle.

This view displays the area at the side to assist with positioning the vehicle at the kerb or along-side any other obstacles.

The flank view looks from the rear to the front. If there is a hazard, it automatically focuses on possible obstacles.

Automatic camera perspective

The automatic camera perspective displays a steering angle-dependent view looking towards the vehicle's direction of travel.

This perspective adapts to the respective driving situation.

As soon as obstacles are detected, the view switches to a fixed display of the area in front or behind the bumper or, if necessary, to a flank view.

Movable, free camera perspective

If the movable camera perspective is selected, a circular path is shown on the Control Display.

By turning the Controller or using the touch function, defined perspectives along the circular path can be selected.

The current perspective is marked with a camera symbol.

To exit the function, tilt the Controller to the side and select a different camera function.

Toolbar, right

Assistance functions can be activated and settings made using iDrive and the function bar on the right. To do this, tilt the Controller to the right if necessary.

- ▷  "Park Assist".
- ▷  "Reversing Assistant".
- ▷  "Camera picture":
 - ▷  "Brightness".
 - ▷  "Contrast".
 - ▷  "Parking guide lines".
 - ▷  "Obstacle mark".
- ▷  "Settings": to perform settings, for example to use the activation points with Panorama View.

Rear-view camera

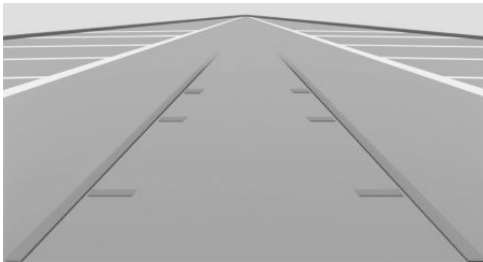
This view shows the image from the rear-view camera.

Selection window

In the selection window, the individual camera perspectives can be selected using iDrive.

Parking guidance lines

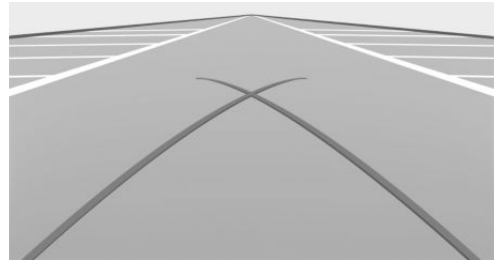
Driving path lines



The driving path lines help you to estimate the space required when parking and manoeuvring on a level road surface.

The driving path lines are dependent on the steering angle and are continuously adapted to the steering wheel movements.

Turning circle lines



The turning circle lines can only be shown in the camera image together with driving path lines.

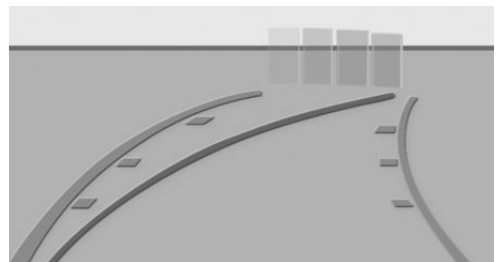
The turning circle lines show the trajectory of the smallest possible turning circle on a level road surface.

Once the steering wheel has been turned beyond a certain angle, only one turning circle line is displayed.

Parking with the help of driving path and turning circle lines

1. Position the vehicle so that the red turning circle line is within the boundaries of the parking space.
2. Turn the steering wheel so that the green driving path line covers the corresponding turning circle line.

Obstacle marker

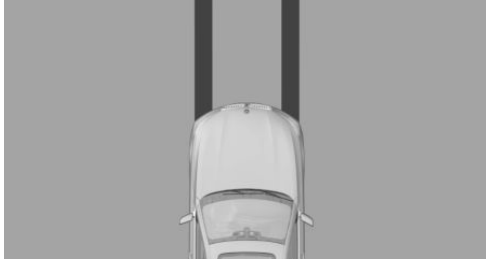


Obstacles behind the vehicle are detected by the Park Distance Control PDC sensors.

Obstacle markings can be shown in the camera image.

The colour grading of the obstacle markings corresponds to the markings of Park Distance Control PDC.

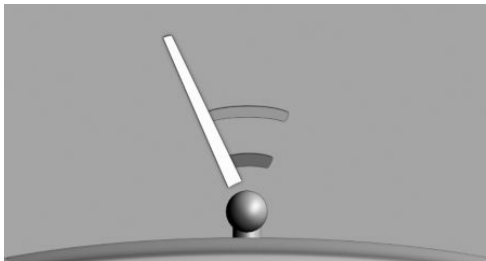
Washing bay view



The washing bay view provides assistance when driving into washing bays by displaying the vehicle's own tyre tracks.

Zoom to trailer tow hitch

To assist with connecting up a trailer, it is possible to zoom in on the area around the trailer tow hitch.



Two static circle segments show the distance between the trailer and the trailer tow hitch.

A docking line dependent on the steering angle assists you in lining up the trailer tow hitch with the trailer.

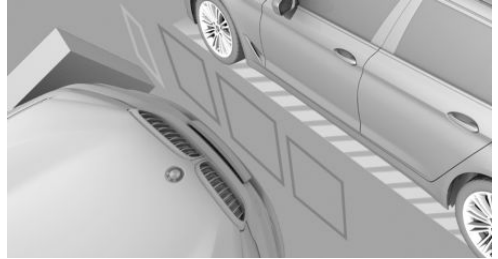
When zooming in, remember that the view might no longer show certain obstacles.

Flank protection

Principle

The system warns about obstacles at the side of the vehicle.

Display



Obstacle markings are displayed at the sides of the vehicle to protect the vehicle's flanks.

- ▶ No markings: no obstacles have been detected.
- ▶ Coloured markings: warning that obstacles have been detected.

Limits of flank protection

The system only shows stationary obstacles that were previously detected by the sensors when driving past.

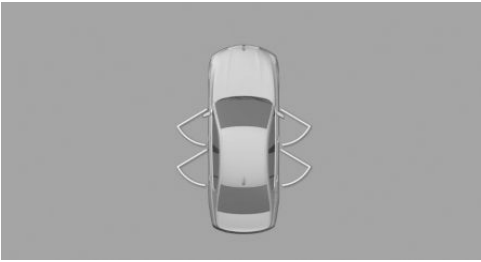
The system does not detect whether an obstacle subsequently moves. Consequently, the markings will no longer be shown on the display after the vehicle has been stationary for a while. The area next to the vehicle needs to be scanned again.

Door opening angle

Principle

If obstacle marking is activated, the system shows any fixed, stationary obstacles that are restricting the opening angle of the doors.

The system does not issue warnings about approaching road users.



The maximum door opening angles are displayed when the selector lever is in position P.

Once the vehicle moves off, the parking assistance lines are displayed instead of the opening angles.

Limits of the display

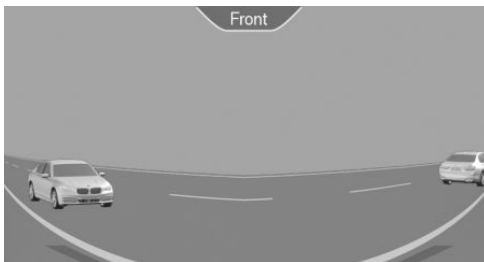
For technical reasons, the display of the area around the vehicle is distorted.

Even if the symbols for the door opening angles on the Control Display are not covering any other objects, bear in mind the following when parking beside other objects:

The perspective means that protruding objects located higher up may be closer than they appear on the Control Display.

Panorama View

Principle



The system provides you with an advance view of crossing traffic at blind exits and junctions.

General

Road users hidden by obstacles at the side can only be detected very late from the driver's seat. To provide a better view, the front and rear cameras scan the areas to the side for traffic.

Yellow lines on the screen image indicate the front and rear ends of the vehicle.

The camera image is subject to varying levels of distortion in some areas and is thus not suitable for estimating distances.

Display on the Control Display



Press the button with the engine running.

The image from the relevant camera is displayed, depending on the driving direction:

- ▷ "Front": image from the front camera.
- ▷ "Rear": image from the rear camera.

Depending on the vehicle equipment, the crossing traffic warning, see page 256, can warn about approaching vehicles by means of radar sensors.

With navigation system: activation points

Principle

Locations where Panorama View is to switch on automatically can be saved as activation points provided that a GPS signal is being received.

General

Up to ten activation points can be saved.

Activation points can be used for the front camera when driving forward.

Saving activation points

1. Drive to the location at which the system is to be switched on, and stop.
2.  Press the button.
3. Tilt the Controller to the right.

4. "Activation point"

The current location is shown.

5. "Save activation point"

Where possible, activation points are saved with the town/city and street, otherwise with the GPS coordinates.

Using activation points

Use of activation points can be switched on and off.

1.  Press the button.
2. Tilt the Controller to the right.
3.  "Settings"
4. "Panorama View, GPS-based"
5. "Panorama View is displayed automatically when set activation points are reached."

Displaying activation points

1.  Press the button.
 2. Tilt the Controller to the right.
 3.  "Manage points"
- A list of all activation points is shown.

Renaming or deleting activation points

1.  Press the button.
 2. Tilt the Controller to the right.
 3.  "Manage points"
- A list of all activation points is shown.
4. Select an activation point if necessary.
 5. Perform the desired setting:
 - ▷ "Rename"
 - ▷ "Delete activation point"
 - ▷ "Delete all activation points"

Setting brightness and contrast

When Surround View or Panorama View is switched on, it is possible to adjust the brightness and contrast.

Via iDrive:

1. If necessary, tilt the Controller to the right.
2.  "Camera picture"
3. Perform the desired setting:
 - ▷  "Brightness"
 - ▷  "Contrast"

Functional limitations

The system can only be used to a limited extent in the following situations:

- ▷ In poor light conditions.
- ▷ If the cameras are dirty.
- ▷ With a door open.
- ▷ With the boot lid open.
- ▷ With the exterior mirrors folded in.

Grey hatched areas with a symbol, for example an open door, in the camera display identify areas that are not currently shown.

System limits

Non-visible areas

Due to the angle of view, the area under the vehicle cannot be seen by the cameras.

Detection of objects

Very low obstacles and higher, protruding objects such as ledges cannot be detected by the system.

Some assistance functions also take account of Park Distance Control PDC data.

Observe the notes in the chapter on Park Distance Control PDC, see page 237.

The objects shown in the Control Display may be closer than they appear. Do not estimate the distance to objects based on the display.

Malfunction

The failure of a camera is shown on the Control Display.



A yellow symbol is shown and the capture area of the failed camera is shown in black on the Control Display.

With Parking Assistant Plus: Remote 3D View

Principle

With the corresponding equipment, the BMW Connected App and the camera images from Surround View can be used to show the areas around the vehicle on a mobile device, for example a smartphone.

The function shows a view of the current situation.

Operating requirements

- ▷ Data transfer must be activated, see page 65.
- ▷ The BMW Connected App must be installed on the mobile device.

Switching the function on/off

Via iDrive:

1. "CAR"
2. "Settings"
3. "General settings"
4. "Data privacy"
5. "Configure services" or "Select services individually"
6. If applicable, "BMW ConnectedDrive"
7. "Remote 3D View"

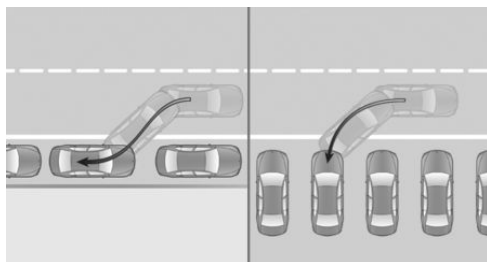
Functional limitations

The system may have limited functionality or may not be available at all in the following situations, for example:

- ▷ In poor light conditions.
- ▷ If the cameras are dirty.
- ▷ With a door or the boot lid open. Dark areas in the display indicate areas that are not detected by the system.
- ▷ With the exterior mirrors folded in.
- ▷ When other camera functions are run in the vehicle.
- ▷ If the vehicle is moving faster than at walking speed.
- ▷ It may not be possible to use the function in all countries.
- ▷ For reasons related to data protection, the function can only be run three times in two hours.

Parking Assistant

Principle



The system supports the driver in the following situations:

- ▷ When parking sideways parallel to the road: parallel parking.
- ▷ When reverse parking perpendicular to the road: perpendicular parking. The system lines up with the middle of the parking space when parking perpendicular to the road.

General

Operation

Operation of Park Assistant is divided into three steps:

- ▷ Switching on and activating.
- ▷ Parking space search.
- ▷ Parking.

The status of the system and the actions required are shown on the Control Display.

Ultrasonic sensors measure parking spaces on both sides of the vehicle.

M Steptronic sport transmission

Park Assistant calculates the ideal parking line and takes over the following functions during a parking operation:

- ▷ Steering.
- ▷ Accelerating and braking.
- ▷ Changing gear.

Press and hold the Park Assistant button for the duration of the parking operation.

The parking operation takes place automatically.

Safety notes

WARNING

The system does not relieve you of your personal responsibility to assess the traffic situation correctly. Due to system limitations, it cannot respond independently and appropriately in all traffic conditions. There is a risk of accident. Adapt your driving style to the traffic conditions. Observe the traffic situation and intervene actively if the situation warrants it.

WARNING

When the trailer tow hitch is in use, Park Assistant could cause damage if its sensors are obstructed. There is a risk of accidents or material damage. Do not use Park Assistant when towing a trailer or using the trailer tow hitch, for example with a bicycle carrier.

NOTE

Park Assistant may steer across or up onto kerbs. There is a risk of material damage. Observe the traffic situation and intervene actively if the situation warrants it.

In addition, the safety notes apply for Park Distance Control PDC, see page 237.

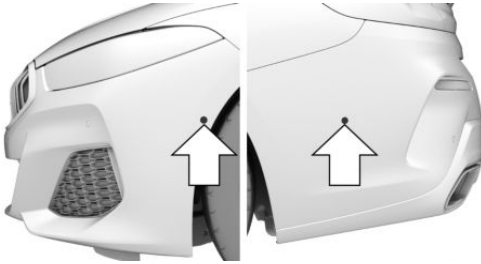
Overview

Button in the vehicle



Park Assistant button

Ultrasonic sensors



The system uses the four ultrasonic sensors located at the sides, arrows, and the ultrasonic sensors of Park Distance Control PDC in the bumpers to measure parking spaces and distances to obstacles.

Operating requirements

Ultrasonic sensors

To ensure full functionality:

- ▷ Do not cover the sensors, for example with stickers.
- ▷ Keep the sensors clean and unobstructed.

For measuring parking spaces

- ▷ The vehicle must be driving forwards in a straight line at speeds up to approximately 35 km/h, 22 mph.
- ▷ Maximum distance from the row of parked vehicles: 1.5 m, 5 ft.

Suitable parking space

General:

- ▷ Gap behind an object that is at least 0.5 m, 1.7 ft long.
- ▷ Gap between two objects, each at least 0.5 m, 1.7 ft long.

Parking parallel to the road:

- ▷ Minimum length of gap between two objects: own vehicle length plus approximately 0.8 m, 2.6 ft.
- ▷ Minimum depth: approximately 1.5 m, 5 ft.

Perpendicular parking:

- ▷ Minimum length of gap: own vehicle width plus approximately 0.7 m, 2.3 ft.
- ▷ Minimum depth: own vehicle length.

Drivers must estimate the depth of perpendicular parking spaces themselves. Due to technical limits, the system is only able to gauge the depth of perpendicular parking spaces approximately.

For parking

- ▷ Doors and boot lid are closed.
- ▷ The parking brake is released.
- ▷ Driver's seat belt is fastened.

Switching on and activating

Switching on with the button



Press the Park Assistant button.

The LED is illuminated.

It is possible to display the current status of the parking space search on the Control Display.

 Park Assistant is automatically activated.

Switching on with reverse gear

1. Engage reverse gear.

It is possible to display the current status of the parking space search on the Control Display.

2. Activate if necessary:  "Park Assist"

Switching on via iDrive

Rear-view camera display or PDC view must be active.

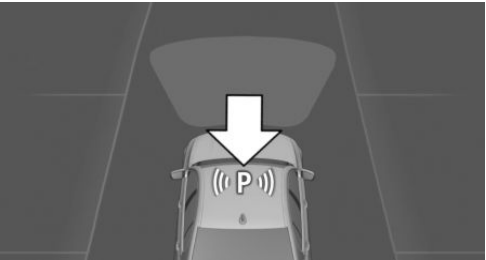
1. Tilt the Controller to the right.
2. Activate the Park Assistant on the Control Display:  "Park Assist"

Display on the Control Display

System is activated/deactivated

Sym-bol	Meaning
	Grey: system is not available. White: system is available but not activated.
	System is activated.
	Parking space search is active.
	Parking operation is active. The system takes over the steering.

Parking space search and system status



- ▶  The Park Assistant is activated and parking space search is active.
- ▶ Suitable parking spaces are shown on the Control Display on the edge of the roadway next to the vehicle symbol. When Park Assistant is active, suitable parking spaces are highlighted and an acoustic signal sounds.
- ▶ When perpendicular or parallel parking spaces are clearly detected, the system automatically sets the appropriate parking method. A selection menu is displayed for parking spaces that are large enough for both parallel and perpendicular parking. In this case, select the desired parking method manually.

- ▶  Parking operation active. The system takes over the steering.
- ▶ The parking space search is active whenever the vehicle is driving forwards at low speed, even if the system is deactivated. If the system is deactivated, the displays on the Control Display may be shown in grey.

Acoustic signals

Switching the acoustic signal for suitable parking spaces on/off

Via iDrive:

1. "CAR"
2. "Settings"
3. "Driver assistance"
4. "Parking and manoeuvring"
5. "Park Assist"
6. "Sound if parking space detected"

The setting is saved for the current driver profile.

Park Distance Control PDC acoustic signals

In an automatic parking operation, Park Distance Control does not emit an intermittent sound.

A continuous tone sounds if the distance to a detected object is less than approximately 25 cm, 10 in.

Parking with Park Assistant

Driving into a parking space

1. Switch on and activate Park Assistant.
To do this, engage reverse gear and activate the system on the Control Display or press the Park Assistant button.
 Park Assistant is activated.
2. Drive past the line of parked vehicles at a speed up to approximately 35 km/h, 22 mph and at a distance of maximum 1.5 m, 5 ft.

The status of the parking space search and possible parking spaces are shown on the Control Display.

3. To confirm the suggested parking space for the parking operation: switch on the turn indicator on the corresponding side.

The system takes over the steering.

4. Follow the instructions on the Control Display.

Press and hold the Park Assistant button for the duration of the parking operation. When parking is complete, selector lever position P is engaged.

Completion of parking is indicated on the Control Display.

5. Adjust the parking position yourself if necessary.

Cancelling manually

You can cancel Park Assistant at any time:

- ▷  M Steptronic sport transmission: release the Park Assistant button during the parking operation.
- ▷  "Park Assist": select the symbol on the Control Display.

Cancelling automatically

The system automatically cancels in the following situations:

- ▷ If the driver grips the steering wheel or steers the vehicle.
- ▷ On snow-covered or slippery road surfaces, if necessary.
- ▷ If it encounters objects that are difficult to negotiate, for example kerbs.
- ▷ If objects appear suddenly.
- ▷ If Park Distance Control PDC shows gaps that are too small.
- ▷ When a maximum number of parking attempts or the parking time is exceeded.
- ▷ If other functions are selected on the Control Display.

- ▷ If the Park Assistant button is released.
- ▷ If the boot lid is open.
- ▷ When doors are open.
- ▷ If the parking brake is applied.
- ▷ When accelerating.
- ▷ If the brake pedal remains pressed for a relatively long period when the vehicle is stationary.
- ▷ When the driver's seat belt is unfastened.

A Check Control message is shown.

Flashing display on the selector lever

In some situations, the actually engaged gearbox setting may be different from the selector lever position after a cancellation of function, and the display in the selector lever flashes.

In these cases, refer to the display in the instrument cluster, see page 143.

Resuming

You can continue a cancelled parking operation if applicable.

To do this, reactivate the Park Assistant and follow the instructions on the Control Display.

Switching off

The system can be switched off manually:



Press the Park Assistant button.

System limits

Safety note



WARNING

The system may not respond at all, or may respond too late, incorrectly or without justification due to system limitations. There is a risk of accidents or material damage. Observe the in-

formation on the system limits and intervene actively if necessary.

No parking assistance

Park Assistant does not provide assistance in the following situations:

- ▷ On sharp bends.
- ▷ When towing a trailer.
- ▷ In angled parking spaces.

Functional limitations

The system may have limited functionality in the following situations, for example:

- ▷ On uneven road surfaces, for example gravel roads.
- ▷ On slippery surfaces.
- ▷ On steep upward or downward gradients.
- ▷ If leaves have collected or snow has drifted or been piled up in the parking space.
- ▷ If the emergency wheel has been fitted.
- ▷ If there is a change in a measured parking space.
- ▷ If there are ditches or sudden drops, for example a quayside.

Limits of ultrasound measurement

Certain conditions and objects may push ultrasound measurement to its physical limits, including the following:

- ▷ Small children and animals.
- ▷ Persons wearing certain types of clothing, for example a coat.
- ▷ External interference with the ultrasound, for example by passing vehicles or loud machines.
- ▷ Sensors which are dirty, iced up, damaged or incorrectly adjusted.
- ▷ Certain weather conditions, for example high humidity, wet conditions, snowfall, extreme heat or strong wind.

- ▷ Trailer drawbars and tow hitches of other vehicles.
- ▷ Thin or wedge-shaped objects.
- ▷ Moving objects.
- ▷ Higher protruding objects, for example projecting walls.
- ▷ Objects with corners, edges and smooth surfaces.
- ▷ Objects with fine surfaces or structures, for example fences.
- ▷ Objects with porous surfaces.
- ▷ Small and low objects such as boxes.
- ▷ Obstacles and people at the edge of the lane.
- ▷ Soft obstacles or obstacles covered in foam.
- ▷ Plants or shrubs.
- ▷ Low objects already indicated, for example kerbs, may enter the sensors' blind areas before or after a continuous tone is given.
- ▷ The system does not take into account loads projecting beyond the outline of the vehicle.

In some cases, parking spaces may be detected that are not suitable or suitable parking spaces may not be detected.

Malfunction

A Check Control message is shown.

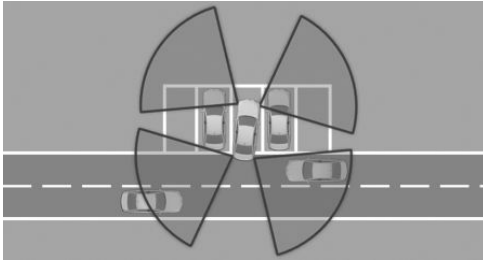
Park Assistant has failed. Have the system checked by a Service Partner of the manufacturer or another qualified Service Partner or a specialist workshop.

Crossing traffic warning

Principle

At blind exits or when leaving perpendicular parking spaces, the system detects other road users approaching from the side earlier than is possible from the driver's seat.

General



Two radar sensors in the rear bumper monitor the area behind the vehicle.

The system indicates when other road users are approaching.

Depending on the equipment, the area in front of the vehicle is also monitored. For this purpose, two further radar sensors are located in the front bumper.

Safety note

WARNING

The system does not relieve you of your personal responsibility to assess the visibility conditions and traffic situation correctly. There is a risk of accident. Adapt your driving style to the traffic conditions. Observe the traffic situation and intervene actively if the situation warrants it.

Overview

Button in the vehicle



Park Assistant button

Radar sensors



The radar sensors are located in the rear bumper.



Depending on the equipment, there are two additional radar sensors in the front bumper.

Keep the bumpers clean and unobstructed in the area of the radar sensors.

Switching on/off

Activating/deactivating the system

With the button

1.  Press the Park Assistant button.
2. Tilt the Controller to the right.
3.  "Settings"
4. "Cross-traffic alert"
5. "Activate function"

Via iDrive

1. "CAR"
2. "Settings"
3. "Driver assistance"
4. "Parking and manoeuvring"
5. "Cross-traffic alert"
6. "Activate function"

Automatic activation

If the system was activated on the Control Display, it is switched on automatically as soon as Park Distance Control PDC or Panorama View is active and a gear is engaged.

The system is switched on at the rear when reverse gear is engaged.

Depending on the equipment, the system is switched on at the front when a forward gear is engaged.

Switching off automatically

The system switches off automatically in the following situations:

- ▶ If walking speed is exceeded.
- ▶ When the steering and lane control assistant is active: after driving for a particular distance.
- ▶ When Park Assistant is actively parking the vehicle.

Warning

General

The Control Display shows the corresponding image, an acoustic signal sounds, if necessary, and the light in the exterior mirror flashes.

Light in the exterior mirror



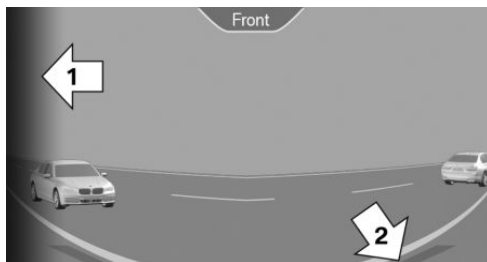
The light in the exterior mirror flashes if other vehicles are detected by the rear sensors when the vehicle is reversing.

Display in the Park Distance Control PDC view



In the Park Distance Control PDC view, the relevant boundary area flashes red if the sensors detect vehicles.

Display in the camera view



The relevant boundary area, arrow 1, in the camera view flashes red if the sensors detect vehicles.

Yellow lines, arrow 2, indicate the bumper of your vehicle.

Acoustic warning

In addition to the visual display, a warning signal sounds when your own vehicle is moving in the corresponding direction.

System limits

The system may have limited functionality in the following situations:

- If the approaching vehicle is travelling very fast.
- In thick fog, wet conditions or snow.
- On sharp bends.
- If the bumper is dirty, iced up or covered, for example by stickers.
- If the sensors' field of view is obscured, for example due to garage walls, hedges or mounds of snow.
- When a projecting load is being transported.
- If crossing objects are moving very slowly.
- If there are other objects in the field of view of the sensors that conceal the crossing traffic.

If the trailer socket is being used, for example when operating with a trailer or a bicycle carrier, crossing traffic warning is not available for the area behind the vehicle.

Driving comfort

Vehicle equipment

This chapter describes all standard, country-specific and special equipment available for the model series. It may therefore describe equipment and functions which are not installed in your vehicle, for example on account of the optional equipment selected or the country variant. This also applies to safety-relevant functions and systems. Please comply with the relevant laws and regulations when using the corresponding functions and systems.

Suspension components

The suspension components have been optimised for the vehicle and its area of use, thus ensuring the best possible driving experience.

Adaptive M suspension

Principle

The system reduces unwanted vehicle movements when a dynamic driving style is used or when driving on uneven roads.

Depending on road conditions and driving style, driving dynamics and driving comfort are enhanced as a result.

General

The system offers various damper configurations.

Programme	Damper configurations
"COMFORT"	Comfort-oriented.
"SPORT"	Balanced.
"SPORT PLUS"	Consistently sporty.

Selecting a channel

Using the button



 Press the button until the desired programme is displayed in the instrument cluster.

Via iDrive

It is possible to configure the required program for the M1 or M2 buttons.

1. "CAR"
2.  "M setup"
3. "Configure M1" or "Configure M2"
4.  "Chassis"
5. Select the desired channel.

The setting is accepted immediately when the M1 or M2 configuration is active.

To activate the required configuration with the selected settings, press the corresponding button on the steering wheel:

- ▷ 
- ▷ 

Display in the instrument cluster



Adaptive M suspension with selected program and activated display of the driving dynamics system states.

Air conditioning

Vehicle equipment

This chapter describes all standard, country-specific and special equipment available for the model series. It may therefore describe equipment and functions which are not installed in your vehicle, for example on account of the optional equipment selected or the country variant. This also applies to safety-relevant functions and systems. Please comply with the relevant laws and regulations when using the corresponding functions and systems.

Interior air quality

The air quality in the vehicle is improved by the following components:

- ▷ Emissions-tested interior.
- ▷ Microfilter.
- ▷ Air-conditioning system for regulating temperature, air flow and recirculated-air mode.

Depending on the equipment version:

- ▷ Microfilter/activated carbon filter.
- ▷ Ionisation.
- ▷ Fragrancing.
- ▷ Automatic air recirculation control AUC.
- ▷ Independent ventilation.

Automatic air conditioning

Overview

Buttons in the vehicle



Climate functions

Button	Function
	Temperature.
	Air-conditioning mode.
	Maximum cooling.
	AUTO programme.
	Recirculated-air mode.
	Air flow, manual. AUTO programme intensity.
	Air distribution, manual.
	SYNC Programme.

Button	Function
	Window defrost/demist
	Rear window heating.
	Active seat ventilation, see page 116.
	Seat heating, see page 115.
	To call up the air conditioning menu. For the following settings, for example: upper body temperature adjustment, independent ventilation.

Individual functions – for example, temperature – can also be operated using spoken commands.

Calling up the air conditioning menu

 Press the button.

The air conditioning menu is displayed.

All the air conditioning functions that can be adjusted via iDrive can be called up via the air conditioning menu, for example upper body temperature adjustment, independent ventilation.

Switching on/off

Switching on

Press any button, with the following exceptions:

- ▷ Rear window heating.
- ▷ Left side of air flow button.
- ▷ SYNC Programme.
- ▷ Seat heating.
- ▷ Seat ventilation.

Switching off

If automatic air conditioning with extended functionality is fitted:

- ▷ Complete system:



Press and hold left side of driver's side button, until the system switches off.

- ▷ On the front passenger side:



Press and hold left side of button on the front passenger side.

Temperature

Principle

The automatic air conditioning adjusts to the set temperature as quickly as possible, using maximum cooling or heating power if necessary. The temperature is then maintained.

To adjust



Turn the wheel to select the desired temperature.

Avoid switching between different temperature settings in rapid succession. The automatic air conditioning may not have sufficient time to establish the temperature selected.

Ventilation temperature

General

The temperature of the ventilation in the upper body area can be adjusted.

The temperature is adjusted on an individual basis, for example towards the blue for colder and towards the red for warmer.

The ventilation air flow in the upper body area provides noticeable heating or cooling depending on the set temperature.

The set interior temperature for driver and front seat passenger is not changed by this.

To adjust

Via iDrive:

1. "CAR"
2. "Settings"
3. "Climate comfort"
4. "Temperature adjustment"
5. Set the desired temperature:
 - Towards blue: cooler.
 - Towards red: warmer.

Cooling function

Principle

Interior air is cooled and dried and then heated again depending on the temperature setting.

The interior can only be cooled when drive-ready state is switched on.

Switching on/off

 Press the button.

The LED is illuminated when the cooling function is switched on.

The cooling function is switched on when the engine is running.

Depending on the weather conditions, the windscreen and the side windows may mist over for a short time when the drive-ready state has been switched on.

The cooling function is switched on automatically in the AUTO programme.

When the automatic air conditioning is in operation, condensation develops and exits underneath the vehicle.

Maximum cooling effect

Principle

When drive-ready state is switched on, the system is set to lowest temperature, optimum air flow and recirculated-air mode.

General

The function is available at an outside temperature above approximately 0 °C/32 °F and when drive-ready state is switched on.

Switching on/off

 Press the button.

The LED is illuminated when the system is switched on.

The air flows from the side nozzles for the upper body area. Therefore open the side nozzles.

The air flow can be adapted when the programme is active on the driver side.

AUTO programme

Principle

The AUTO programme cools, ventilates or heats the interior automatically.

The air flow, air distribution and temperature are regulated automatically depending on the interior temperature, the selected temperature setting and the selected intensity setting.

Switching on/off

 Press the button.

The LED is illuminated when the AUTO programme is switched on.

Depending on the selected temperature, intensity AUTO programme and external influences, the air is directed towards the windscreen, the side windows upper body and into the footwell.

The cooling function is switched on automatically in the AUTO programme.

Point the side nozzles at the side windows.

A condensation sensor also controls the programme so that window condensation is avoided as much as possible.

The AUTO programme is automatically switched off when the air distribution is set manually.

Intensity

With the AUTO programme switched on, the intensity can be adjusted. This changes the automatic control for the air flow and air distribution.



Press left or right side of button: reduce or increase intensity.

The selected intensity is shown on the display for automatic air conditioning.

Automatic air recirculation control AUC

Principle

Automatic air recirculation control AUC detects pollutants in the outside air. The supply of outside air is shut off and the interior air is recirculated.

General

When the system is activated, a sensor detects pollutants in the outside air and controls shut-off automatically.

When the system is deactivated, outside air flows into the interior continuously.

Continuous use of recirculated-air mode worsens air quality inside the vehicle and increases condensation on the windows.

Switching on/off

Via iDrive:

1. "CAR"
2. "Settings"
3. "Climate comfort"

4. If applicable, "Air quality"

5. "Automatic air recirculation"

If there is condensation, shut down recirculated-air mode or remove the condensation.

Recirculated-air mode

Principle

If the air outside the vehicle has an unpleasant odour or contains pollutants, the air supply to the interior of the vehicle can be shut off. The air inside the vehicle is then recirculated.

Operation



Press the button:

The LED is illuminated when recirculated-air mode is switched on. The outside air supply is shut off.

When recirculated-air mode is switched off, fresh air is directed into the vehicle's interior.

The recirculated-air mode automatically switches off after a given time depending on the ambient conditions, to avoid condensation.

Continuous use of recirculated-air mode worsens air quality inside the vehicle and increases condensation on the windows.

If there is condensation, shut down recirculated-air mode or remove the condensation.

Adjusting the air flow manually

Principle

The air flow for air conditioning can be set manually.

General

To be able to adjust the air flow manually, first switch off the AUTO programme.

Operation



Press left or right side of button: reduce or increase air flow.

The selected air flow is shown on the display for automatic air conditioning.

In order to protect the battery the air flow rate of the automatic air conditioning is reduced, if necessary.

Adjusting the air distribution manually

Principle

The air distribution for air conditioning can be set manually.

Operation



Press the button repeatedly to select a programme:

- ▷ Windows, upper body area and footwell.
- ▷ Upper body area and footwell.
- ▷ Footwell.
- ▷ Windows and footwell.
- ▷ Windows: only on the driver's side.
- ▷ Windows and upper body.
- ▷ Upper body area.

The selected air distribution is shown on the display for automatic air conditioning.

SYNC programme

Principle

Depending on the equipment version, the following settings on the driver's side can be transferred to the front passenger's side and to the rear:

- ▷ Temperature.
- ▷ Air flow.
- ▷ Air distribution.

- ▷ AUTO programme.

Switching on/off



Press the button.

The LED is illuminated when the SYNC programme is switched on.

The programme is switched off automatically if settings are changed on the front passenger's side or in the rear passenger compartment.

Defrosting windows and removing condensation

Principle

Ice and condensation are quickly removed from the windscreen and the front side windows.

Switching on/off



Press the button.

The LED is illuminated when the system is switched on.

The air flow can be adjusted manually when the system is switched on.



If there is condensation on the window, press the button on the driver's side or switch on the cooling function to use the advantages of the condensation sensor. Ensure that air can flow towards the windscreen.

Rear window heating



Press the button. The LED is illuminated.

The function is available when the engine is running.

The rear window heating is switched off automatically after a while.

Microfilter/activated carbon filter

The microfilter traps dust and pollen in the incoming air.

The activated carbon filter also removes gaseous pollutants from the outside air entering the vehicle.

Have this combined filter replaced during maintenance of the vehicle.

Ventilation

Principle

The direction of the various air flows can be set individually.

Setting the ventilation

General

The direction of the air flows can be set for direct or indirect ventilation.

Open the side nozzles and position them in a way that ensures effective climate control.

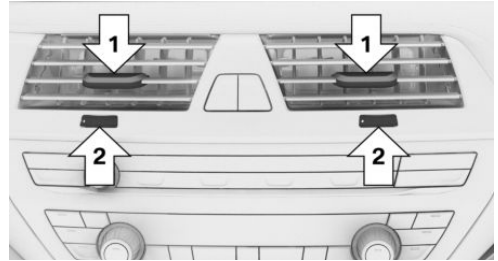
Direct ventilation

Align the air flow directly onto the vehicle occupants. The air flow provides noticeable heating or cooling depending on the set temperature.

Indirect ventilation

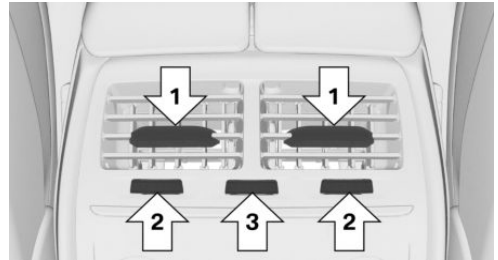
Do not align the air flow directly onto the vehicle occupants. The vehicle interior is cooled or heated indirectly depending on the set temperature.

Ventilation at front



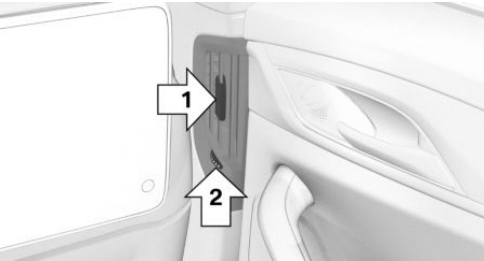
- ▷ Lever for changing the air flow direction, arrows 1.
- ▷ Knurled wheel for steplessly opening and closing the side nozzles, arrows 2.

Ventilation in the rear, centre



- ▷ Lever for changing the air flow direction, arrows 1.
- ▷ Knurled wheel for steplessly opening and closing the side nozzles, arrows 2.
- ▷ Knurled wheel for varying the temperature, arrow 3.
Towards blue: cooler.
Towards red: warmer.

Ventilation in the rear, side



- ▷ Lever for changing the air flow direction, arrow 1.
- ▷ Knurled wheel for steplessly opening and closing the side nozzles, arrow 2.

Rear automatic air conditioning

Overview

Buttons in the vehicle



Climate functions

Button	Function
	Temperature.
	Maximum cooling.

Button	Function
	AUTO programme.
	Air flow, manual.
	Air distribution, manual.
	Seat heating, see page 115.

Switching on/off

Via iDrive

1. "CAR"
2. "Settings"
3. "Climate comfort"
4. "Rear climate control"

The rear automatic air conditioning is not operational if the automatic air conditioning is switched off or the following function is active: defrost the windows and remove condensation.

Using the button: switch on

Press any button, with the following exceptions:

- ▷ Left side of air flow button.
- ▷ Seat heating.

Using the button: switch off

 Press and hold left side button.

Temperature

Principle

The automatic air conditioning adjusts to the set temperature as quickly as possible, using maximum cooling or heating power if necessary. The temperature is then maintained.

To adjust



Turn the wheel to select the desired temperature.

Avoid switching between different temperature settings in rapid succession. The automatic air conditioning may not have sufficient time to establish the temperature selected.

Maximum cooling effect

Principle

When drive-ready state is switched on, the system is set to lowest temperature, optimum air flow and recirculated-air mode.

General

The function is available at an outside temperature above approximately 0 °C/32 °F and when drive-ready state is switched on.

Switching on/off



Press the button.

The LED is illuminated when the system is switched on.

The air flows from the side nozzles for the upper body area. Therefore open the side nozzles.

AUTO programme

Principle

The air flow, air distribution and temperature are automatically regulated.

Switching on/off



Press the button.

The LED is illuminated when the AUTO programme is switched on.

Depending on the selected temperature, the intensity of the AUTO programme and external influences, the air is directed towards the upper body and into the footwell.

Intensity

When AUTO programme is switched on, automatic control of the intensity can be changed:



Press left or right side of button: reduce or increase intensity.

The selected intensity is shown on the display for automatic air conditioning.

To adjust the air flow manually

Principle

The air flow for air conditioning can be set manually.

General

To be able to adjust the air flow manually, first switch off the AUTO programme.

Operation



Press left or right side of button: reduce or increase air flow.

The selected air flow is shown on the display for automatic air conditioning.

To adjust the air distribution manually

Principle

The air distribution for air conditioning can be set manually.

Operation



Press the button repeatedly to select a programme:

► Upper body area.

- ▷ Upper body area and footwell.
- ▷ Footwell.

Independent ventilation

Principle

The independent ventilation allows the temperature of the interior to be adjusted before the journey starts. Depending on the set temperature and ambient temperature, the interior is ventilated or heated using any available residual heat from the engine.

General

The system can be switched on and off directly or for a preselected departure time.

The switch-on time is calculated based on the outside temperature. The system will switch on in good time before the preselected departure time.

Operating requirements

- ▷ The vehicle is in rest or standby state and not in drive-ready state.
- ▷ The battery must be sufficiently charged.

When activated, the independent ventilation uses power from the vehicle battery. As a result, the maximum activation time is restricted to protect the battery. After the engine is started or after driving a short distance, the system will be available again.

- ▷ Ensure that the date and time are set correctly in the vehicle.
- ▷ Open the vents to allow the air to enter the passenger compartment.

Switching on/off directly

General

The system can be switched on or off in various ways.

The system switches off automatically after a while. It continues to run for a short time after it has been switched off.

Using the button

General

If the vehicle is in standby state, the independent ventilation can be switched on or off via the buttons of the automatic air conditioning.

Switching on

Press any button, except:

- ▷ Rear window heating.
- ▷ Left side of air flow button.
- ▷ Seat heating.
- ▷ Seat ventilation.
- ▷ SYNC Programme.
- ▷ MENU.

Switching off



Press and hold left side button.

The system switches off after leaving and locking the vehicle.

Via iDrive

1. "CAR"
2. "Settings"
3. "Climate comfort"
4. "Auxiliary ventilation"
5. "Start now"

Using BMW display key

Switching on

1. Switch on the display of the BMW Display key.
2. "Preconditioning setting"
3. Tap the  symbol or the  symbol.

4. "Activate now"
5. "Start"

Switching off

1. Switch on the display of the BMW Display key.
2. "Preconditioning setting"
3. Tap the  symbol or the  symbol.
4. "Stop"

Display

 symbol on the automatic air conditioning signals that the system is switched on.

REST is shown on the air conditioning system. The residual heat of the engine is being used.

Departure time

Principle

To ensure a pleasant interior temperature in the vehicle at the start of the journey, it is possible to set different departure times.

- One-off departure time: the time can be set. System is switched on once.
- Departure time with day of the week: time and day of the week can be set.
The system is switched on in good time before the set departure time on the required days of the week.

Departure time preselection is done in two stages:

- Set departure times.
- Activate departure time.

At least 10 minutes should pass between adjusting/activating the departure time and the scheduled departure time, so the climate control has enough time to work.

Setting the departure time

Via iDrive

1. "CAR"
2. "Settings"
3. "Climate comfort"
4. "Auxiliary ventilation"
5. "Departure schedule"
6. Select the required departure time.
7. Set the departure time.
8. Select the day of the week if necessary.
9. "OK"

Using BMW display key

1. Switch on the display of the BMW Display key.
2. "Preconditioning setting"
3. Tap the  symbol or the  symbol.
4. Select the required departure time.
5. Set the departure time.
6. Select the day of the week if necessary.
7. "OK"

Activating the departure time

Operating requirements

If a departure time is to control when the independent ventilation is switched on, the relevant departure time must be activated first.

Via iDrive

1. "CAR"
2. "Settings"
3. "Climate comfort"
4. "Auxiliary ventilation"
5. "Departure schedule"
6. Activate the required departure time.

Using BMW display key

1. Switch on the display of the BMW Display key.
2. "Preconditioning setting"
3. Tap the  symbol or the  symbol.
4.  Tap the symbol.
5. Activate the required departure time.

Display

The   symbol on the climate display signals that a departure time has been activated.

Ambient Air package

Principle

With the Ambient Air Package, the interior air can be cleaned and subtly perfumed with high-quality scents.

Ionisation cleans the air by removing suspended particles. Together with the selected scent, ionisation contributes to well-being and relaxation during the journey.

General

It is possible to choose between two scents in the vehicle. Additional scents are possible by exchanging the scent cartridges.

The following criteria can influence scent perception inside the vehicle:

- ▷ Settings of the automatic air conditioning.
- ▷ Temperature and humidity.
- ▷ Time of day and season.
- ▷ Physical condition of the vehicle occupants, for example fatigue.

BMW recommends using genuine BMW scent cartridges.

Genuine BMW scent cartridges are not refillable, and must be replaced by new scent cartridges after they are used up.

Safety note

WARNING

Refilled BMW scent cartridges may emit harmful substances, lead to malfunctions and cause damage to the system. There is a risk of injury or material damage. Do not replenish scent cartridges; once they are used up, replace them with new scent cartridges.

Ionisation

Principle

Ionisation cleans the interior air to remove suspended particles.

Switching on/off

Via iDrive:

1. "CAR"
2. "Settings"
3. "Climate comfort"
4. "Air quality"
5. "Ionisation"

Fragrancing

General

Fragrancing is done at intervals to avoid familiarisation.

Two scent cartridges in the vehicle enables you to switch between fragrances.

The scent cartridges are located in the glove box.

To ensure a pleasant interior scent in the vehicle at the start of the journey, fragrancing can take place before you start driving. The system is automatically switched on with independent ventilation if fragrancing was switched on at the end of the last journey.

Operating requirements

- ▶ The scent cartridges are adequately filled.
- ▶ The interior temperature is between +5 °C/41 °F and +40 °C/104 °F.
- ▶ Open the side nozzles to allow the fragrance to enter the passenger compartment.

Selecting the fragrance

The interior is perfumed with the selected fragrance.

It is possible to choose between two scents.

Via iDrive:

1. "CAR"
2. "Settings"
3. "Climate comfort"
4. "Fragrance"
5. "Fragrance"
6. Select the desired fragrance.

The setting is saved for the current driver profile.

Switching fragrancing on/off, setting the intensity

Via iDrive:

1. "CAR"
 2. "Settings"
 3. "Climate comfort"
 4. "Fragrance"
 5. "Fragrance"
- Fragrancing is switched on/off.
6. "Level"
 7. Select the desired setting.

Highest intensity at stage 3.

Display

Illustrations on the Control Display show the current fill level of the scent cartridges.

Via iDrive:

1. "CAR"
2. "Settings"
3. "Climate comfort"
4. "Fragrance"

When an empty fragrance cartridge is indicated, the cartridge still contains a fluid carrying the fragrance. However, it is not sufficient for fragrancing.

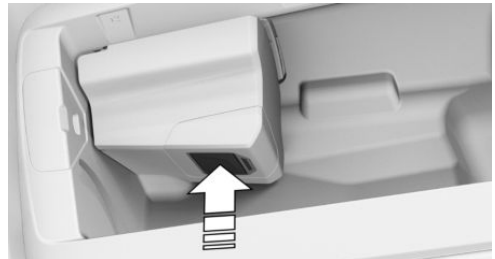
A Check Control message is displayed once when the scent cartridges have been used up.

Insert scent cartridges (left-hand drive vehicle)

The scent cartridges are located in the glove box.

1. Open glove box, see page 286.
2. Press the underside of the cartridge bracket.

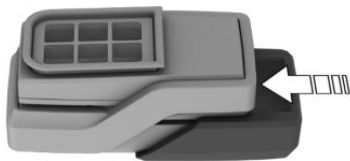
The cartridge holder slides downwards.



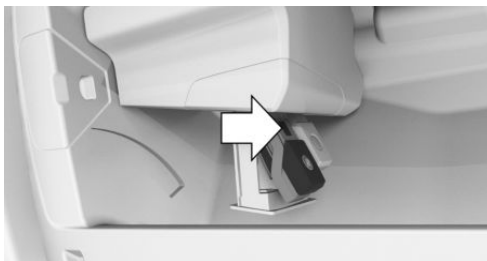
3. Remove the cover of the scent cartridge. Grip the top of the cover to slide it off the scent cartridge.



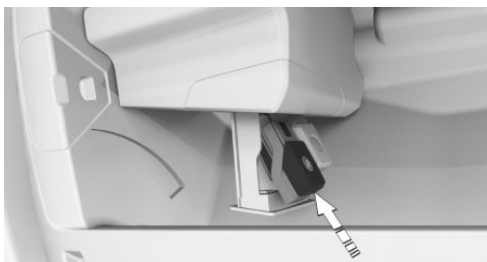
- Attach the removed cover to the rear side of the scent cartridge.



- Position the scent cartridge so the chip points away from the cartridge bracket.



- Insert the scent cartridge into the cartridge bracket without forcing it. The cartridge can be felt to engage slightly when inserted.



- Push the cartridge holder upwards until it engages.

Make sure that no objects press against the cartridge holder from underneath, otherwise the function of the Ambient Air Package could be impaired.

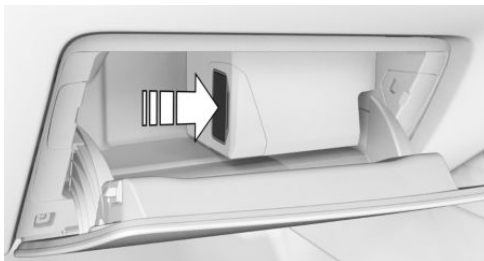
- Close the glove box.

Inserting scent cartridges (right-hand drive vehicle)

The scent cartridges are located in the glove box.

- Open glove box, see page 286.
- Press on the cartridge holder.

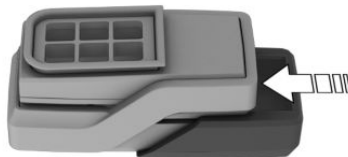
The cartridge holder slides out.



- Remove the cover of the scent cartridge. Grip the top of the cover to slide it off the scent cartridge.



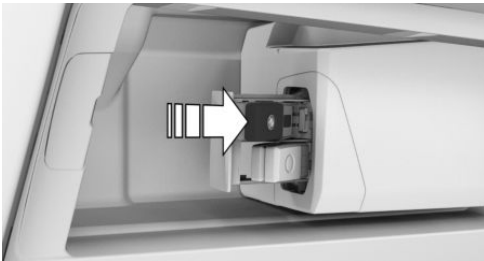
- Then attach the removed cover to the rear side of the scent cartridge.



5. Position the scent cartridge so the chip points away from the cartridge bracket.



6. Insert the scent cartridge into the cartridge bracket without forcing it. The cartridge can be felt to engage slightly when inserted.



7. To close, push in the cartridge holder until it engages.

Make sure that no objects press against the cartridge holder from the side, otherwise the function of the system could be impaired.

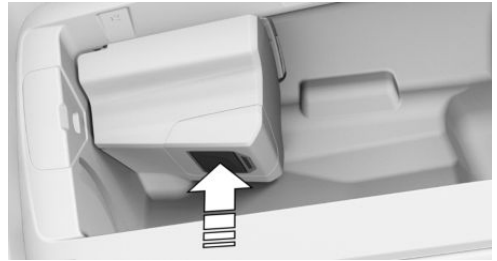
8. Close the glove box.

Removing scent cartridges (left-hand drive vehicle)

The scent cartridges are located in the glove box.

1. Open glove box, see page 286.
2. Press the underside of the cartridge bracket.

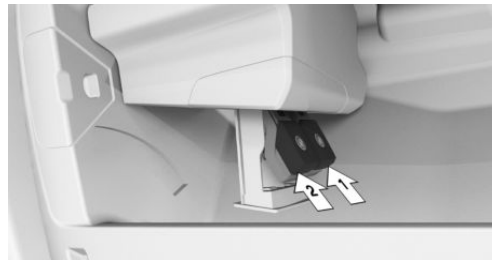
The cartridge holder slides downwards.



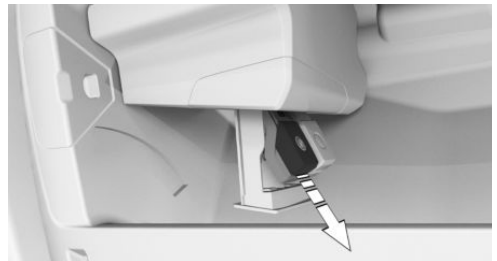
3. Pull the required scent cartridge out of the bracket.

Scent cartridge, arrow 1: first scent displayed on the Control Display.

Scent cartridge, arrow 2: second scent displayed on the Control Display.



4. Pull the required scent cartridge out of the bracket.

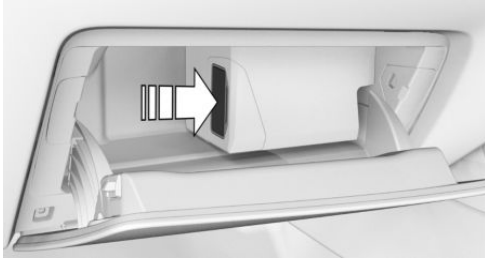


Removing scent cartridges (right-hand drive vehicle)

The scent cartridges are located in the glove box.

1. Open glove box, see page 286.
2. Press on the cartridge holder.

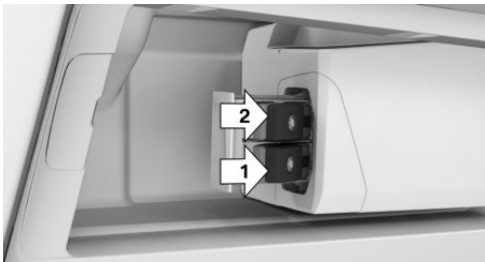
The cartridge holder slides out.



3. Pull the required scent cartridge out of the bracket.

Scent cartridge 1: first scent displayed on the Control Display.

Scent cartridge 2: second scent displayed on the Control Display.



4. Pull the scent cartridge to be removed out of the holder.



Recycling



Empty scent cartridges can be handed over for recycling at a Service Partner of the manufacturer or another qualified Service Partner or a specialist workshop.

Interior equipment

Vehicle equipment

This chapter describes all standard, country-specific and special equipment available for the model series. It may therefore describe equipment and functions which are not installed in your vehicle, for example on account of the optional equipment selected or the country variant. This also applies to safety-relevant functions and systems. Please comply with the relevant laws and regulations when using the corresponding functions and systems.

Integrated universal remote control

Principle

The universal remote control integrated in the rear-view mirror can be used to operate up to 3 functions of radio-controlled systems; for example, garage door drives, barriers or lighting systems.

General

The integrated universal remote control replaces up to 3 different hand-held remotes. For operation, the buttons on the rear-view mirror must be programmed with the desired functions. The hand-held remote of the relevant system is needed for programming.

If you sell the vehicle, delete the saved functions beforehand for your own security.

If possible, do not attach the aerial of the radio-controlled system, for example the garage door drive, near to metallic objects; this is to ensure optimum functioning.

Safety note

WARNING

Parts of the body can be trapped when operating radio-controlled systems with the integrated universal remote control, for example garage door. There is a risk of injury or material damage. When programming and operating, make sure that the area of movement of the system concerned is kept clear. Also follow the safety notes supplied with the hand-held transmitter.

Compatibility



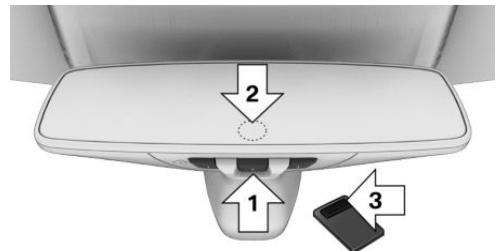
This symbol on the packaging or in the operating instructions of the system to be operated indicates that the system is generally compatible with the integrated universal remote control.

A list of compatible hand-held transmitters is available on the Internet: www.homelink.com

HomeLink is a registered trademark of Gentex Corporation.

The integrated universal remote control does not support the frequency band 27 MHz to 40 MHz.

Controls on the rear-view mirror



- ▷ Buttons, arrow 1.
- ▷ LED, arrow 2.

- ▷ Hand-held transmitter arrow 3; required for programming.

Programming

General

The battery in the hand-held transmitter must be fully charged during programming to ensure the integrated universal remote control will have the optimum range.

1. Switch on standby state.
2. Initial operation:

Simultaneously press and hold the two outer buttons on the rear-view mirror for approximately 10 seconds until the LED on the rear-view mirror flashes green rapidly. All current programming for the buttons on the rear-view mirror is deleted.

3. On the rear-view mirror, press the button being programmed. The LED on the rear-view mirror flashes orange slowly.
4. Hold the hand-held transmitter for the system to be operated approximately 2.5 to 30 cm, 1 to 12 in away from the buttons on the rear-view mirror. The distance required depends on the hand-held transmitter.
5. Press and hold the button for the desired function on the hand-held transmitter.
6. ▷ The LED is illuminated green: programming is complete.
Release the button.
- ▷ The LED flashes rapidly: programming is not complete.
Press and hold the button on the rear-view mirror for 2 seconds, then release. Repeat this process three times to complete programming.
If the integrated universal remote control is still not operational, continue from Special instruction for alternating-code radio systems.

- ▷ The LED does not flash green after 60 seconds: programming could not be completed.

Repeat steps 3 to 6.

To program other functions on other buttons, repeat steps 3 to 5.

Special instruction for alternating-code radio systems

If the radio-controlled system cannot be operated after repeated programming, check whether the system to be operated is equipped with an alternating-code radio system.

To do so, consult the user manual of the system.

For systems with an alternating-code radio system, the integrated universal remote control and the system must also be synchronised.

Information on synchronisation can be found in the user manual of the system you wish to set.

To make synchronisation easier, enlist the assistance of a second person.

Synchronise integrated universal remote control with system:

1. Park your vehicle within the range of the radio remote-controlled system.
2. Program the corresponding button on the rear-view mirror as described.
3. Locate and press the synchronisation button on the system being set, for example on the garage door. The next step must be carried out within approximately 30 seconds.
4. Hold down the programmed button on the rear-view mirror for 3 seconds and then release. Repeat this step as needed up to three times to complete synchronisation. When synchronisation is completed, the programmed function is performed.

Reprogramming individual buttons

1. Switch on standby state.
2. On the rear-view mirror, press and hold the button being programmed.
3. After approximately 20 seconds, when the LED on the rear-view mirror starts to flash orange, release the button.
4. Hold the hand-held transmitter for the system to be operated approximately 2.5 to 30 cm, 1 to 12 in away from the buttons on the rear-view mirror. The distance required depends on the hand-held transmitter.
5. Press and hold the button for the desired function on the hand-held transmitter.
6. The LED can illuminate in various ways.
 - ▷ The LED is illuminated green: the programming process is complete.
Release the button.
 - ▷ The LED flashes rapidly: the hand-held transmitter has been detected, but programming is not complete.
Press and hold the button on the rear-view mirror for 2 seconds, then release. Repeat this process three times to complete programming.
If the integrated universal remote control is still not operational, continue from Special instruction for alternating-code radio systems.
 - ▷ The LED does not flash green after 60 seconds: programming could not be completed.
Repeat steps 3 to 6.

If the programming process is not complete, the previous programming will be retained.

Operation

WARNING

Parts of the body can be trapped when operating radio-controlled systems with the integrated universal remote control, for example garage door. There is a risk of injury or material damage. When programming and operating, make sure that the area of movement of the system concerned is kept clear. Also follow the safety notes supplied with the hand-held transmitter.

The system, for example the garage door, can be operated using the button on the rear-view mirror when drive-ready state or standby state is switched on. To do this, press and hold the button within the reception range of the system until the function is triggered. The LED on the rear-view mirror illuminates continuously when the radio signal is being transmitted.

Deleting saved functions

All saved functions are deleted. It is not possible to delete functions individually.

Simultaneously press and hold the two outer buttons on the rear-view mirror for approximately 10 seconds until the LED flashes green rapidly.

Sun visor

Glare protection

Fold the sun visor downwards or upwards.

Protection from glare at the side

Folding out

1. Fold down the sun visor.
2. Unhook the sun visor from its holder and pivot it sideways to the side window.

Folding up

To close the sun visor, proceed in reverse order.

Vanity mirror

A vanity mirror is located behind a cover in the sun visor. The mirror light switches on when the cover is opened.

Ashtrays

Front centre console

Opening

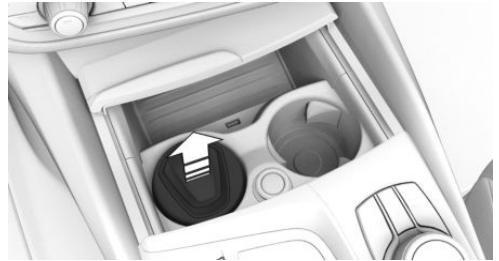
1. Slide the cover forwards until it engages.



2. The ashtray is located in one of the cupholders. Fold the cover of the ashtray upwards.



Emptying



With the cover closed, pull the ashtray out of the cupholder.

Lighter

Safety notes

WARNING

Contact with the hot heating element or the hot socket of the lighter can cause burns. Flammable materials can catch fire if the lighter is dropped or is held against objects. There is a risk of fire and injury. There is a risk of material damage. Take hold of the lighter by its handle. Ensure that children do not use the lighter.

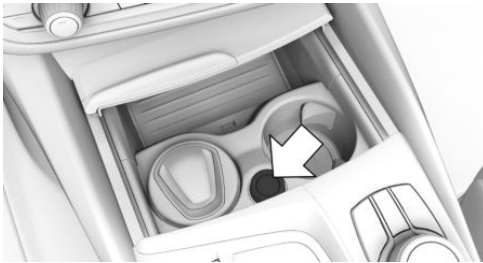
NOTE

If metallic objects fall into the socket, they can cause a short circuit. There is a risk of material damage. After using the socket, re-fit the lighter or socket cover.

Front centre console



Slide the cover forwards until it engages.



The lighter is located between the cupholders.

Rear centre console



The cigarette lighter is located in the attachment.

Operation



Press in the lighter.

The lighter can be removed when it pops back out.

Sockets

Principle

The cigarette lighter attachment can be used as a socket for electrical devices when standby state or drive-ready state is switched on.

General

The total load of all sockets must not exceed 140 watts at 12 volts.

To avoid damage to the socket, do not insert an incompatible plug.

Safety notes

WARNING

Devices and cables, for example portable navigation devices, that are located in the deployment range of the airbags may impede airbag deployment or be thrown around the vehicle interior when the airbag is deployed. There is a risk of injury. Make sure that devices and cables are not in the deployment range of the airbags.

NOTE

Battery chargers for the vehicle battery may operate with high voltages and high currents which can overload or damage the 12-volt on-board network. There is a risk of material damage. Only connect battery chargers for the vehicle battery to the jump-starting connections in the engine compartment.

NOTE

If metallic objects fall into the socket, they can cause a short circuit. There is a risk of material damage. After using the socket, re-fit the lighter or socket cover.

Front centre console



Slide the cover forwards until it engages.



The socket is located between the cupholders.

Pull off the cover.

Rear centre console



There is a socket in the centre console.

Pull off the cover.

Inside the boot



There is a socket on the right side of the boot.
Open the cap.

USB interface

General

Please comply with the notes on connecting mobile devices to the USB interface in the chapter on USB connections, see page 73.

In the centre armrest



There is a USB interface in the centre armrest.

Properties:

- ▷ USB port type C.
- ▷ For charging mobile devices.
- ▷ Charging current: max. 3 A.
- ▷ With navigation system: for data transfer.

In the centre console

NOTE

Objects in the storage compartment, for example large USB connectors, can block or damage the cover on opening and closing. There is a risk of material damage. When opening and closing, make sure that the area of movement of the cover is kept clear.



Slide the cover forwards until it engages.



A USB interface is in the centre console.

Properties:

- USB port type A.
- For charging mobile devices and transferring data.
- Charging current: max. 1.5 A.

In the rear centre console



A USB interface with two USB ports is located in the centre console in the rear.

Properties:

- USB port type C.
- For charging mobile devices.
- Charging current: max. 3 A per port.

Wireless charging dock

Principle

The wireless charging dock permits the following functions to be performed wirelessly:

- Charging of Qi-compatible mobile phones or other mobile devices which support the Qi standard.
- Charging the BMW display key.
- Connection of the mobile telephone to the external aerial.

This ensures better network reception and a consistent reproduction quality, depending on the country.

General

When inserting the mobile telephone, make sure there are no objects between it and the wireless charging dock.

During charging, the surface of the dock and the mobile telephone can become hot. At higher temperatures, the charging current through the mobile telephone may be reduced; in exceptional

cases, the charging process is temporarily interrupted. Observe the relevant information in the operating instructions for the mobile telephone.

(⚡) The charge indicator shows on the Control Display whether a mobile telephone with Qi capability is being charged.

Safety notes

WARNING

When charging a Qi-compatible device in the wireless charging dock, any metal objects located between the device and the dock can become very hot. If storage media or electronic cards, for example smart cards, cards with magnetic strips or cards for transmitting signals, are placed between the device and the dock, this may impair card function. There is a risk of injury and material damage. When charging mobile devices, make sure there are no objects between the device and the dock.

NOTE

The dock is designed for mobile telephones up to a certain size. Using excessive force when inserting the mobile telephone may damage the dock or the mobile telephone. There is a risk of material damage. Observe the maximum dimensions for the mobile telephone. Do not force the mobile telephone into the dock.

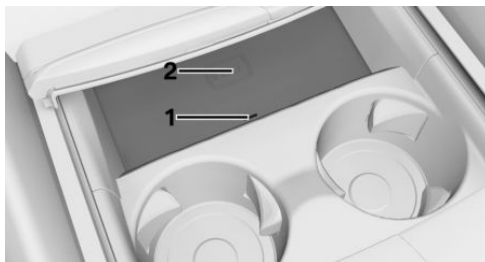
Operating requirements

- ▶ The mobile telephone must support and be compatible with the required Qi standard.
If the mobile telephone does not support the Qi standard, the mobile telephone can be charged using a special Qi-compatible charging pad.
- ▶ Standby state is switched on.
- ▶ Note the maximum dimensions of the mobile telephone.

- ▶ Only use protective sleeves and covers up to a maximum thickness of 2 mm, 0.07 in, otherwise the charging function may be impaired.
- ▶ The mobile telephone to be charged is located in the middle of the dock.

Operation

Overview



- 1 LED
- 2 Storage area

Inserting the mobile telephone

The maximum size for the mobile phone is approximately 154.5 x 80 x 18 mm, 6.06 x 3.1 x 0.7 in.

1. Open the cover of the dock.
2. Place the mobile telephone in the centre of the dock with the display facing upwards.
3. Close the cover of the dock.

Removing the mobile telephone

1. Open the cover of the dock.
2. Remove the mobile telephone.

LED displays

Col- our	Meaning
Blue	The mobile telephone is charging. The blue LED stays illuminated once the inserted Qi-compatible mobile telephone is fully charged.
Orange	The mobile telephone is not charging. The mobile phone may be exposed to excessively high temperatures or there may be foreign bodies in the charging dock.
Red	The mobile telephone is not charging. Contact a Service Partner of the manufacturer or another qualified Service Partner or a specialist workshop.

charging functions of the mobile telephone might be restricted and functions might no longer work.

Forgotten phone warning

General

If the vehicle is equipped with the forgotten phone warning function, a warning can be output if a mobile telephone with Qi capability has been left in the wireless charging dock when exiting the vehicle.

The forgotten phone warning is shown in the instrument cluster.

Activating

Via iDrive:

1. "CAR"
2. "Settings"
3. "General settings"
4. "Wireless charging tray"
5. Activate reminder.

System limits

If the mobile phone or the vehicle interior is exposed to excessively high temperatures, the

Storage compartments

Vehicle equipment

This chapter describes all standard, country-specific and special equipment available for the model series. It may therefore describe equipment and functions which are not installed in your vehicle, for example on account of the optional equipment selected or the country variant. This also applies to safety-relevant functions and systems. Please comply with the relevant laws and regulations when using the corresponding functions and systems.

Storage facilities

General

The vehicle interior contains multiple storage compartments for stowing objects.

Safety notes

WARNING

Loose objects or devices connected by a cable to the vehicle, for example mobile telephones, may be thrown around the interior during the journey, for example in the event of an accident or when braking or carrying out an evasive manoeuvre. There is a risk of injury. Ensure that loose objects or devices connected by cable to the vehicle are secured in place in the interior.

NOTE

Anti-slip mats can damage the dashboard. There is a risk of material damage. Do not use anti-slip mats.

Glove box on the passenger side

Safety note

WARNING

The glove box protrudes into the interior when it is opened. Objects in the glove box may be thrown around the interior during the journey, for example in the event of an accident or when braking or carrying out evasive manoeuvres. There is a risk of injury. Immediately close the glove box after using it.

Opening



Pull the handle.

The lighting in the glove box comes on.

Closing

Shut the lid.

Locking

The glove box can be locked with an integrated key. This prevents access to the glove box.

After the glove box has been locked, the vehicle key can be handed over without the integrated key, for example if the car is being parked by a valet service.

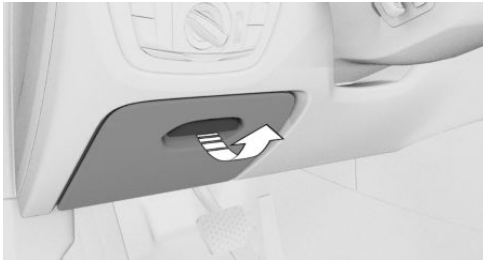
Glove box on driver's side

Safety note

WARNING

The glove box protrudes into the interior when it is opened. Objects in the glove box may be thrown around the interior during the journey, for example in the event of an accident or when braking or carrying out evasive manoeuvres. There is a risk of injury. Immediately close the glove box after using it.

Opening



Pull the handle.

Closing

Shut the lid.

Pockets in the doors

General

There are storage compartments in the doors.

Safety note

WARNING

Breakable objects, for example glass bottles or glasses, can break in the event of an accident. Shards may scatter throughout the interior. There is a risk of injury or material damage. Do not use breakable objects while driving. Only stow breakable objects in closed storage compartments.

Storage compartment in the centre console

Opening



Slide the cover forwards until it engages.

Closing

Tap the cover on the handle strip. The cover closes.

Storage compartment in the rear of the centre console

There is either one storage compartment or there are two storage compartments in back of the centre console.

Front centre armrest

General

There is a storage compartment in the centre armrest between the seats.

Opening



Press the button.

Closing

Push the cover down until it engages.

Cupholder front

Safety note

WARNING

Unsuitable containers placed in the cupholders may damage the cupholders or be flung into the interior, for example in the event of an accident or when braking or carrying out evasive manoeuvres. Spilt liquids can distract the driver from the road and lead to an accident. Hot beverages may damage the cupholders or cause scalding. There is a risk of injury or material damage. Do not force objects into the cupholder. Use lightweight, sealable and shatterproof containers. Do not transport hot drinks.

Opening



Slide the cover forwards until it engages.



There are two cupholders in the centre console.

Closing

Tap the cover on the handle strip. The cover closes.

Cupholder rear

Safety notes

WARNING

Unsuitable containers placed in the cupholders may damage the cupholders or be flung into the interior, for example in the event of an accident or when braking or carrying out evasive manoeuvres. Spilt liquids can distract the driver from the road and lead to an accident. Hot beverages may damage the cupholders or cause scalding. There is a risk of injury or material damage. Do not force objects into the cupholder.

der. Use lightweight, sealable and shatterproof containers. Do not transport hot drinks.

NOTE

If the cupholder is open, the centre armrest cannot be folded back. There is a risk of material damage. Push back the covers before folding up the centre armrest.

Opening and closing

General

The cupholder can be adapted to fit three sizes.

Opening



Fold the centre armrest forwards.

Press the button and fold out the cupholder fully.

Reducing

To make it smaller, the cupholder can be folded in in 2 steps.

Expanding

To make a smaller cupholder bigger, first fold it in completely. Then fold the cupholder out again fully.

Closing

Fold in the cupholder fully until it engages.

Coat hooks

General

The coat hooks are located in the grab handles in the rear and on the door pillar in the rear.

Safety notes

WARNING

Items of clothing on the coat hooks can impair visibility when driving. There is a risk of accident. Hang items of clothing from the coat hooks so that they do not obstruct visibility when driving.

WARNING

Incorrect use of the coat hooks can present a danger, for example if objects are thrown around in the event of braking and evasive manoeuvres. There is a risk of injury and material damage. Only hang lightweight objects, for example items of clothing, on the coat hooks.

Boot

Vehicle equipment

This chapter describes all standard, country-specific and special equipment available for the model series. It may therefore describe equipment and functions which are not installed in your vehicle, for example on account of the optional equipment selected or the country variant. This also applies to safety-relevant functions and systems. Please comply with the relevant laws and regulations when using the corresponding functions and systems.

Loads

Safety notes

WARNING

A high gross vehicle weight can make the tyres overheat, causing internal damage and a sudden loss of tyre inflation pressure. Handling characteristics may be adversely affected, for example reduced directional stability, longer stopping distance and modified steering characteristics. There is a risk of accident. Please comply with the permitted load index of the tyre, and do not exceed the permitted gross vehicle weight.

WARNING

If the permitted total weight and the permitted axle loads are exceeded, the operational safety of the vehicle is no longer guaranteed. There is a risk of accident. Do not exceed the permitted total weight and permitted axle loads.

WARNING

Loose objects or devices connected by a cable to the vehicle, for example mobile telephones, may be thrown around the interior during the journey, for example in the event of an accident or when braking or carrying out an evasive manoeuvre. There is a risk of injury. Ensure that loose objects or devices connected by cable to the vehicle are secured in place in the interior.

WARNING

Incorrectly stowed objects may slip or be flung into the interior, for example in the event of an accident or when braking or carrying out an evasive manoeuvre. Vehicle occupants could be struck and injured. There is a risk of injury. Stow and secure objects and the load correctly.

NOTE

Liquids in the boot may cause damage. There is a risk of material damage. Ensure that no liquids leak out into the boot.

Stowing and securing loads in the vehicle

- ▷ Wrap protective material around any sharp corners and edges on the load.
- ▷ Heavy loads: stow as far forward and as low down as possible, ideally directly behind the rear backrests.
- ▷ Very heavy loads: stow as far forward and as low down as possible, ideally directly behind the rear backrests. If there are no passengers on the back seat, insert both outer seat belts into the respective opposite buckles.

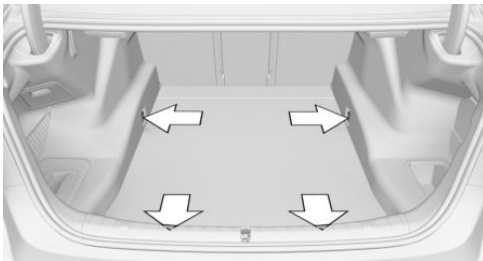
- Fully fold down the rear backrests if a large load is to be stowed.
- Do not stack load items above the upper edge of the backrests.
- Small and lightweight loads: secure with retaining straps, a luggage net or other suitable straps.
- Large and heavy loads: secure with lashing straps.

Lashing eyes in the boot

General

Load-securing equipment, for example lashing straps, tensioning straps or luggage nets, must be secured to the lashing eyes in the boot.

Lashing eyes



Four lashing eyes are located in the boot for securing loads.

Bag holders

General

In the boot there is a bag holder on the left-hand side.

Safety note

WARNING

Incorrect use of the bag holders can present a danger, for example if objects are flung around in the event of braking and evasive manoeuvres. There is a risk of injury and material damage. Only hang light objects, for example shopping bags, on the bag holders. Only transport heavy luggage in the boot if suitably secured.

Folding down



Press on the bag holder and turn it until it engages.

Net

Smaller objects can be stowed in the net on the left-hand side.

Side storage compartment, right

There is a storage compartment on the right side of the boot.

Side storage compartment, left

General

There is a storage compartment on the left side of the boot.

Opening



Pull the handle.

Through-loading system

Principle

The boot can be expanded by folding down the rear seat backrests.

General

The rear backrest is split 40–20–40. The rear seat backrests on each side and the middle part can be folded down individually.

The rear backrests can be folded down from the boot. The rear backrests can be folded down individually from the rear.

Safety notes

WARNING

Risk of entrapment when folding down the rear backrest. There is a risk of injury or material damage. Before folding down, make sure that the area of movement of the rear backrest and the head restraint is kept clear.

WARNING

If a rear seat backrest is not locked, unsecured cargo may be flung into the interior, for example in the event of an accident or during braking or evasive manoeuvres. There is a risk of injury. Make sure that the rear seat backrest is locked after it has been folded back.

WARNING

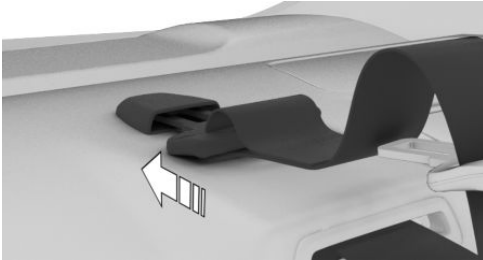
If the seat is not adjusted properly or the child seat has been installed incorrectly, the child restraint system may have limited stability or may not be stable at all. There is a risk of injury or even death. Make sure that the child restraint system rests firmly against the backrest. Wherever possible, adapt the backrest angle of all the relevant seat backrests and adjust the seats correctly. Make sure that the seats and their backrests are correctly engaged or locked. If possible, adjust the height of the head restraints, or remove them.

NOTE

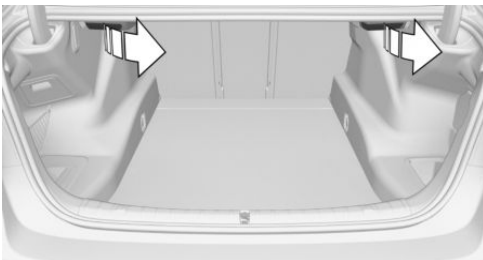
Vehicle parts can be damaged when folding down the rear backrest. There is a risk of material damage. When folding down, make sure that the area of movement of the rear backrest including head restraint is kept clear.

Folding rear backrest down from the boot

1. Unlock the belt lock of the centre seat belt in the rear passenger compartment with the seat belt tongue of another seat belt.
2. Insert the seat belt tongue at the end of the seat belt into the designated mounting on the storage shelf.



3. Push the respective head restraint as far down as possible.
4. Pull the corresponding lever in the boot to unlock the rear backrest. The unlocked rear seat backrest moves slightly to the front.



5. Fold the rear backrest forward.

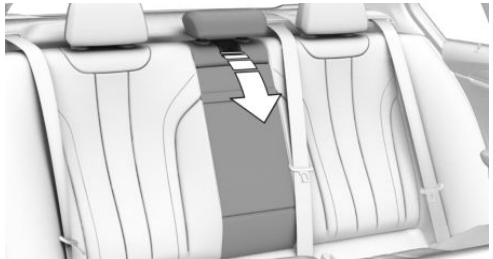


Folding back the rear backrest

1. Fold the rear backrest back into seat position and engage.
2. Remove seat belt tongues from the take-up on the parcel shelf.
3. Put seat belt tongues into the separating lock of the centre safety belt. The seat belt tongue must be heard to engage.

Folding down the middle part

1. Fold down the middle head restraint.
2. Press the button and pull the middle part forwards.



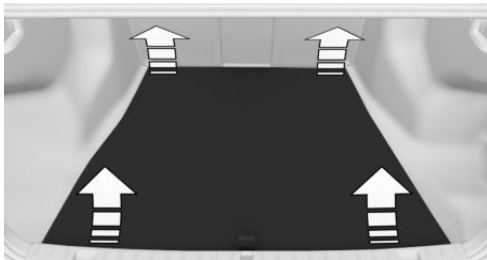
With emergency wheel: extending the boot

Principle

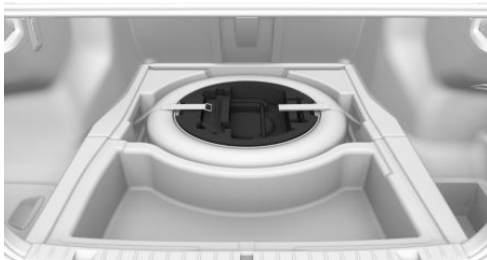
The emergency wheel and associated components can be removed temporarily to increase the boot space.

Taking out the emergency wheel and storage elements

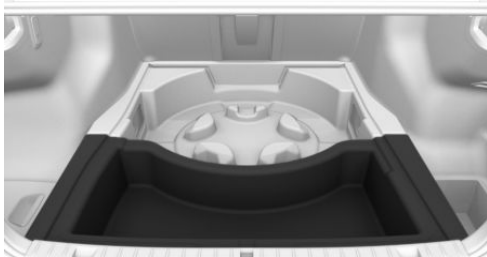
1. To remove the boot floor, pull it up directly behind the rear seat backrests.



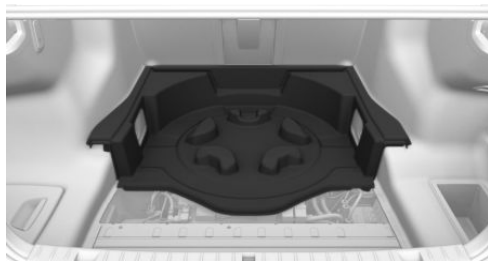
2. Open lashing strap.
3. Remove tool holder.



4. Remove emergency wheel from the storage tray.
5. Release the lashing strap from the lashing eyes.
6. Remove the storage compartment.



7. Remove the storage tray.



8. Insert the boot floor.

Inserting the emergency wheel and storage elements

Proceed in reverse order to insert the emergency wheel and storage elements.

Ski and snowboard bag

The ski and snowboard bag is located in a protective sleeve in the boot.

Follow the installation and operating instructions enclosed in the protective sleeve.

Depending on the equipment: remove the emergency wheel from the vehicle to install the ski and snowboard bag.

BMW M5 Technology

Vehicle equipment

This chapter describes all standard, country-specific and special equipment available for the model series. It may therefore describe equipment and functions which are not installed in your vehicle, for example on account of the optional equipment selected or the country variant. This also applies to safety-relevant functions and systems. Please comply with the relevant laws and regulations when using the corresponding functions and systems.

High performance engine

General

With a displacement of 4.4 litres, the V8 high-performance engine generates a maximum power of 441 kW, with Competition package 460 kW, and a maximum torque of 750 Nm. With its spontaneous responsiveness, a very broad usable engine speed range is produced. The maximum engine speed is electronically regulated at 7200 rpm. Due to the powerful engine dynamics, the maximum engine speed is limited when the vehicle is stationary.

Driving hot

During the engine warm-up phase, the high performance engine runs slightly more roughly due to the emission control.

When the engine is cold, the exhaust has a slightly metallic undertone, depending on the system.

Other information for hot driving: revolution counter, see page 154, and engine temperature, see page 154.

M compound brakes

General

The high performance brake system has ventilated compound brake discs.

The specific design can cause temporary functional noises to occur after a long period of low loading.

The functional noises have no effect on the efficiency, operational safety or endurance of the brake.

Braking correctly

To avoid functional noises, it is desirable to load them at regular intervals with some shaper braking operations. Make sure that the traffic situation permits the braking operations.

If the brake discs are wet, the brake system can be braked dry to stop any noise.

M Carbon ceramic brakes

General

The high performance brake system has ventilated carbon-ceramic brake discs.

The material-specific properties can cause increased functional noises when braking, for example during a long period of low loading or shortly before the vehicle comes to a stop in wet conditions.

The functional noises have no effect on the efficiency, operational safety and endurance of the brake.

Due to the effect of wetness and salt spray, for example after using an automatic car wash, condensation overnight, driving in rain, etc., the braking effect may correspond to that of a conventional brake system. This reduced braking effect

can be compensated for by greater pedal pressure, as needed.

Braking and washing correctly

To avoid functional noises, it is desirable to load them at regular intervals with some shaper braking operations. Make sure that the traffic situation permits the braking operations.

If the brake discs are wet, the brake system can be braked dry to stop any noise.

First clean brake discs and callipers with a steam cleaner or high-pressure cleaner before washing the vehicle in an automatic washing bay or car wash. This prevents salt crystals, for example, from causing crusty deposits or build-up to form if the vehicle then remains stationary for a period of time. The cleaning effect of automatic car washes generally not sufficient for this in the wheel area.

Drivetrain

The M xDrive four-wheel drive system variably distributes torque between the front and rear axles. The combination of M xDrive, active M differential and adaptive M suspension in this vehicle ensures a high degree of driving dynamics that is typical of BMW M.

Driving precautions

Vehicle equipment

This chapter describes all standard, country-specific and special equipment available for the model series. It may therefore describe equipment and functions which are not installed in your vehicle, for example on account of the optional equipment selected or the country variant. This also applies to safety-relevant functions and systems. Please comply with the relevant laws and regulations when using the corresponding functions and systems.

Running in

General

Moving parts need to adjust to each other.

The following notes will help to maximise the vehicle's lifetime and efficiency.

Do not use Launch Control when running in.

Safety note

WARNING

New parts and components can cause safety and Driver Assistance Systems to respond with a delay. There is a risk of accident. After new parts have been installed or if the vehicle is new, drive moderately and take action in good time if necessary. Please comply with running-in procedures for the corresponding parts and components.

Engine, gearbox and differential

Up to 2000 km, 1200 miles

Drive with alternating revolutions and speeds, but do not exceed 5500 rpm and 170 km/h, 106 mph.

Generally avoid kick-down and driving under full load.

At 2000 km, 1200 miles

Have maintenance conduct a drive-in service.

From 2000 km, 1200 miles to 5000 km, 3100 miles

Revolutions and vehicle speed can gradually be increased to a continuous speed of 220 km/h, 137 mph.

The maximum speed of 250 km/h, 155 mph is only to be used briefly, for example when overtaking.

Tyres

Due to the manufacturing process, new tyres do not achieve their full road grip immediately.

Drive moderately for the first 300 km, 200 miles.

Brake system

M Compound brake:

Brake discs and pads of the M Compound brake only achieve their full effectiveness after approx. 500 km, 300 miles. Drive moderately during this running-in period.

M Carbon ceramic brake:

Brake discs and pads of the M Carbon ceramic brake only achieve their full effectiveness after approx. 1000 km, 600 miles. Drive moderately during this running-in period.

After fitting new parts

Please comply with the running-in procedures again if the components previously referred to are renewed.

General driving information

Closing the boot lid

Safety note

WARNING

When open, the boot lid protrudes above the vehicle, and in the event of an accident, braking or evasive manoeuvres, it can endanger vehicle occupants and other road users, or damage the vehicle. There is also a risk of exhaust fumes entering the interior of the vehicle. There is a risk of injury or material damage. Do not drive with the boot lid open.

Driving with the boot lid open

If there is no alternative to driving with the tailgate open:

- Close all the windows and the Glass Roof.
- Adjust the blower to a high setting.
- Maintain a moderate speed.

Hot exhaust system

WARNING

High temperatures can be generated under the body during driving, for example because of the exhaust system. Contact with the exhaust system can lead to burns. There is a risk of injury. Do not touch the hot exhaust system, including the exhaust pipe.

WARNING

If flammable materials, for example leaves or grass, come into contact with hot parts of the exhaust system, these materials can catch fire. There is a risk of fire and injury. Never remove the heat shields fitted here or apply underseal to them. Make sure that when driving, idling or parking, no flammable materials can come into contact with hot vehicle parts.

Exhaust gas particle filter

Principle

The exhaust gas particle filter collects soot particles. The soot particles are burned at high temperatures to clean the exhaust gas particle filter as necessary.

General

The cleaning process takes a few minutes, during which the following may occur:

- The engine may temporarily run a little roughly.
- A slightly higher engine speed may be required to achieve the usual power output.
- There may be a small amount of smoke from the exhaust, even after stopping the engine.
- Noise, for example caused by the radiator fan running, may be heard, even some minutes after stopping the engine.

It is normal for the radiator fan to keep running for several minutes, even after short trips.

Cleaning the exhaust gas particle filter while driving

Various driver profiles ensure that the exhaust gas particle filter is self-cleaning. If, in addition to the self-cleaning function, the exhaust gas particle filter needs to be actively cleaned while driving, a Check Control message is displayed.

Proceed as follows the next time you drive outside of built-up areas for around 30 minutes:

- ▷ Deactivate cruise Control systems.
- ▷ Take your foot off the accelerator repeatedly and allow the vehicle to roll in overrun mode, see page 311.
- ▷ If possible, drive at alternating speeds.

Radio signals

WARNING

Certain vehicle functions may be affected by interference from high-frequency radio signals. Such signals originate from various transmitter systems, for example from air traffic beacons or relay stations for mobile telecommunications.

We recommend you consult a Service Partner should you experience any difficulties in this regard.

Mobile communication in the vehicle

WARNING

There is a possibility of reciprocal interference between the vehicle electronics and mobile radio devices. Radiation is generated when mobile radio devices are transmitting. There is a risk of injury or material damage. If possible, only use mobile radio devices, for example mobile telephones, in the interior if they are connected directly to an external aerial in order to eliminate reciprocal interference and to divert the radiation away from the vehicle's interior.

Aquaplaning

On wet or slushy roads, a wedge of water can form between the tyres and the road.

This situation, known as aquaplaning, means that the tyre can actually lose contact completely with

the road surface and the vehicle can neither be steered, nor the brakes properly applied.

Driving through water

General

Please comply with the following when driving through water:

- ▷ Only drive through still water.
- ▷ Only drive through water up to a max. depth of 25 cm, 9.8 in.
- ▷ Drive through water at a walking speed of no more than 5 km/h, 3 mph.

Safety note

NOTE

Driving through excessively deep water too fast can result in water entering the engine compartment, electrical system or transmission. There is a risk of material damage. When driving through water, do not exceed the maximum water depth and speed specified above.

Safe braking

General

The vehicle is equipped with the Anti-lock Brake System ABS as standard.

Perform full braking in situations that require it.

The vehicle remains steerable. Any obstacles can be avoided by steering as smoothly as possible.

A pulsing of the brake pedal shows that the Anti-lock Brake System ABS is regulating.

In certain braking situations, the perforated brake discs can cause functional noise. However, the functional noises have no effect on the efficiency and operational safety of the brakes.

Objects in the range of movement of the pedals

WARNING

Objects in the driver's footwell can restrict the pedal travel or block a pedal that has been pressed. There is a risk of accident. Stow items in the vehicle so that they are secure and cannot get into the driver's footwell. Only use floor mats that are suitable for the vehicle and can be securely fastened to the floor. Do not use loose floor mats, and do not place several floor mats on top of one another. Make sure that there is sufficient space for the pedals. Ensure that floor mats are securely reattached after removal, for example for cleaning.

Wet roads

In wet weather, on gritted roads and in heavy rain, apply the brakes lightly every few kilometres/miles.

Ensure that you do not obstruct other road users when doing so.

The heat generated by braking dries the brake discs and brake pads and protects them against corrosion.

This way, brake power is available immediately, whenever it is needed.

Downhill gradients

General

When driving on long or steep downhill stretches, use the gear in which the least braking is required. Otherwise the brake system can overheat and the braking effect is reduced.

Engine braking effect can be additionally increased by manually shifting down, even into first gear, if applicable.

Safety notes

WARNING

Even slight but continuous pressure on the brake pedal can cause overheating, brake pad wear or even brake system failure. There is a risk of accident. Avoid excessive loads on the brake.

WARNING

When idling or with the engine switched off, safety-relevant functions, for example engine braking effect or steering and braking force assistance, are either restricted or not available at all. There is a risk of accident. Do not drive at idle speed or with the engine switched off.

Corrosion of the brake discs

Corrosion of the brake discs and contamination of the brake pads increase in the following circumstances:

- ▷ Low mileage.
- ▷ Extended periods when the vehicle is not used.
- ▷ Infrequent use of the brakes.
- ▷ Aggressive, acidic or alkaline cleaning agents.

During braking, corroded brake discs may cause brake judder which usually cannot be eliminated.

Condensation when vehicle is parked

When the automatic air conditioning is in operation, condensation develops and exits underneath the vehicle.

Ground clearance

NOTE

If there is insufficient ground clearance at curb edges or when driving into underground car parks, for example, some vehicle parts – spoilers, for example – may come into contact with the ground. There is a risk of material damage. Make sure that there is sufficient ground clearance.

M Driver's Package: driving in maximum speed range

WARNING

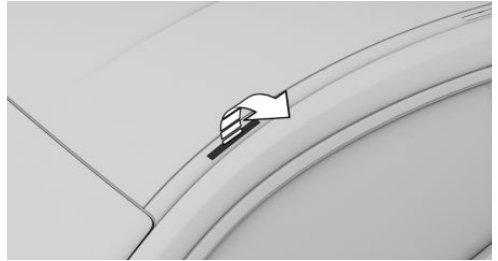
At high speeds, damage to vehicle parts can adversely affect vehicle handling characteristics. Such parts include the tyres, underbody and parts for improving aerodynamics. There is a risk of accident. Have the damage rectified by a Service Partner of the manufacturer or another qualified Service Partner or a specialist workshop. Do not drive at high speed until the damage has been repaired.

Roof rack

General

Roof racks are available as special equipment.

Roof strip with flaps



The mounting points are located on the roof strip above the doors.

Fold the cover outwards.

Fitting

Follow the installation instructions for the roof rack.

Make sure that there is sufficient space to raise and open the Glass Roof.

Loads

A loaded roof rack alters the vehicle's road behaviour and steering response by shifting its centre of gravity.

When loading and driving, bear the following in mind:

- ▷ Do not exceed the permitted roof and axle loads or the permitted gross weight.
- ▷ Make sure that there is sufficient space to raise and open the Glass Roof.
- ▷ Distribute the roof load evenly.
- ▷ The roof load must not be spread over a large area.
- ▷ Place heavy items of luggage at the bottom.
- ▷ Securely fasten the luggage, for example with tensioning straps.
- ▷ Do not allow objects to protrude into the swing range of the boot lid.
- ▷ Drive cautiously and avoid sudden acceleration, braking or cornering.

Rear luggage rack

Principle

The ball linkage of the trailer tow hitch can be used as a mount for rear luggage racks; for example bicycle rack systems.

General

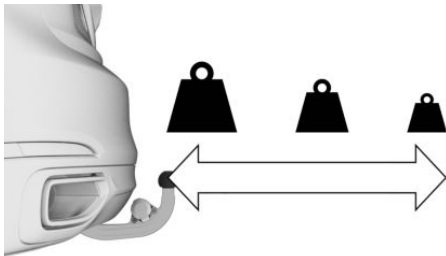
Rear luggage racks that have been classified as suitable by the vehicle manufacturer are available as special equipment.

Bicycle rack systems for up to three bicycles can be used.

Fastening

Follow the installation instructions for the rear luggage rack.

Loads



The permitted gross weight of the rear luggage rack when loaded depends on how far its centre of gravity is from the ball linkage.

- If the centre of gravity is up to 30 cm, 11.8 in from the ball linkage, the gross weight of the rear luggage rack must not exceed 75 kg/165 lbs.
- If the centre of gravity is 60 cm, 23.5 in from the ball linkage, the gross weight of the rear luggage rack must not exceed 35 kg/77 lbs.
- Stow heavy loads as close as possible to the ball linkage.
- Fasten loads securely to the rear luggage rack and secure them against sliding around.

Before a journey

Before beginning the journey, check that the rear lights on the rear luggage rack are working.

The maximum power of the rear luggage rack rear lights must not exceed the values for trailer rear lights, see page 306.

To prevent functional limitations and malfunctions affecting Driver Assistance Systems, activate towing a trailer mode, see page 307.

Driving with a rear luggage rack

When laden, the rear luggage rack alters the vehicle's handling and steering response due to the centre of gravity having been shifted.

When loading and driving, bear the following in mind:

- Do not exceed the permitted axle load or the permitted gross weight.
- Drive smoothly and avoid sudden acceleration and braking or fast cornering.

Driving on a racing track

WARNING

The vehicle is not designed for use in motor sports competitions. Driving the vehicle in the limit range under conditions like those encountered on a race track can cause components to suddenly malfunction or fail completely. There is a risk of accident. Do not drive the vehicle in the limit range for too long. Be aware of any unusual signs from the vehicle, e.g. grinding of brakes, and stop driving the vehicle under conditions like those encountered on a race track if necessary.

The higher mechanical and thermal loads involved in driving on racing tracks lead to increased wear. This wear is not covered by the warranty.

When driving on a racing track, gradually increase the duration of the load.

Before and after driving on a racing track, have the vehicle checked at a Service Partner of the manufacturer or another qualified Service Partner or a specialist workshop.

The standard brake pads and the wear displays are not designed for racing track operation.

Further information and advice can be obtained from a Service Partner of the manufacturer or another qualified Service Partner or a specialist workshop.

Towing a trailer

Vehicle equipment

This chapter describes all standard, country-specific and special equipment available for the model series. It may therefore describe equipment and functions which are not installed in your vehicle, for example on account of the optional equipment selected or the country variant. This also applies to safety-relevant functions and systems. Please comply with the relevant laws and regulations when using the corresponding functions and systems.

General

The permitted trailer loads, axle loads, trailer nose weights and gross vehicle weight rating are specified in the technical data.

Consult a Service Partner of the manufacturer or another qualified Service Partner or a specialist workshop about options for increasing the loads.

The vehicle is equipped with reinforced springs on the rear axle and, depending on the type, with a more powerful cooling system.

For Australia/New Zealand: note

Towing

The Australian/New Zealand Standards AS 4177.1-2004 Caravan and light Towing a trailer components – trailer tow hitches and towing brackets contains the following statement, which is hereby accepted by the BMW Group Australia: **FOR TOWING ONLY.** The towbar supplied with your BMW vehicle should only be used for towing purposes, the towbar assembly should not be used in conjunction with any towbar-mounted

carrying device, such as, for example, a bicycle carrying rack.

As all BMW Group towbar assemblies are designed, tested and approved as a single unit, the practice of modifying or replacing the BMW supplied towball mount assembly is not approved. Use only the genuine BMW towball mount assembly.

BMW Group Australia does not recommend or support the installation and use of a Weight Distribution Hitch or Load Levelling Device on any BMW Group vehicle. The use of such devices may affect the vehicle's warranty status.

We recommend you consult your Authorised BMW Dealer for any further advice or clarification.

Before a journey

Trailer nose weight

The trailer nose weight should not be less than the minimum trailer nose weight of 25 kg, 55 lb. Utilise the maximum trailer nose weight as far as possible.

The weight of the trailer tow hitch and the nose weight reduce the maximum load of the towing vehicle. The nose weight increases the vehicle weight. Do not exceed the permitted total weight of the towing vehicle.

Loads

Distribute the load as evenly as possible over the loading area.

Stow the load as low as possible and as close as possible to the trailer axle. A low centre of trailer gravity makes the car/trailer combination much more stable and safe to drive.

The permitted total weight of the trailer and the permitted trailer load of the vehicle must not be

exceeded. The lower value is the limit which should be adhered to.

Tyre inflation pressure

Check the vehicle's and the trailer's tyre inflation pressures carefully.

On the vehicle, the tyre inflation pressure for higher loads applies.

For information about the tyre inflation pressure, see page 314.

For the trailer, the regulations of the manufacturer apply.

Runflat indicator RPA

Initialise the runflat indicator, see page 329, after the tyre inflation pressure has been corrected or a trailer has been attached or detached.

Tyre Pressure Monitor TPM

Reset the Tyre Pressure Monitor, see page 324, after the tyre inflation pressure has been corrected or a trailer has been attached or detached.

Exterior mirror

Two exterior mirrors which bring both rear corners of the trailer into your field of view are required by law. Mirrors of this type are available as special equipment from a Service Partner of the manufacturer or another qualified Service Partner or a specialist workshop.

Power consumption

General

Before beginning your journey, check the function of the trailer rear lights.

When towing a caravan, keep the activation times of power consumers short to avoid placing an excessive load on the vehicle battery.

Not Australia/New Zealand: Trailer rear lights

The power output of the trailer's rear lights must not exceed the following values:

- ▷ Turn indicators: 42 watt per side.
- ▷ Tail lights: 50 watt per side.
- ▷ Brake lights: 84 watt total.
- ▷ Rear fog lights: 42 watt total.
- ▷ Reversing lights: 42 watt total.

Australia/New Zealand: Trailer rear lights

- ▷ Turn indicators: 54 watt per side.
- ▷ Tail lights: 100 watt in total.
- ▷ Brake lights: 108 watt total.
- ▷ Reversing lights: 54 watt total.

Towing a trailer

General

When the trailer socket is in use, some Driver Assistance Systems are unavailable, or available to a limited extent. A Check Control message is shown where applicable.

In order to avoid malfunctions, activate towing a trailer mode, see page 307.

Safety notes



WARNING

Speeds in excess of approximately 80 km/h, 50 mph, can be enough to produce snaking motion, depending on the design of trailers and the loads they are carrying. There is a risk of accidents or material damage.

Keep to an appropriate speed when towing a trailer. If the trailer starts to snake, brake immediately and make the necessary steering corrections as carefully as possible.

⚠ WARNING

The tyre inflation pressure must be adapted because of the increased axle load when towing a trailer. Driving with inadequate tyre inflation pressure can damage the tyres. There is a risk of accidents or material damage. Do not exceed a speed of 100 km/h / 60 mph. Increase the tyre inflation pressure of the towing vehicle by 0.2 bar. Note the maximum possible tyre inflation pressure stated on the tyre.

Upward gradients

General

In the interest of safety and to avoid holding up other traffic, do not attempt to climb upward gradients steeper than 12 % when towing a trailer. If higher trailer loads have been retrospectively approved, the limit is 8%.

Driving off on upward gradients

The parking brake is automatically released when the accelerator pedal is operated.

To prevent the vehicle from rolling back when driving off, use the parking brake.

1.  Shortly before driving off, pull and release the switch.

The parking brake is engaged.

2. Accelerate sufficiently to drive off.

Downhill gradients

On downward gradients, a car/trailer combination tends to start snaking earlier.

Before the downward gradient, shift down manually to the next-lowest gear and drive downwards slowly.

Trailer Stability Control

Principle

The system helps you to neutralise a trailer's tendency to swing from side to side.

Trailer Stability Control detects snaking movements and promptly brakes the vehicle so that road speed falls to below the critical range and the car/trailer combination is stabilised.

General

If the power socket for the trailer is in use but no trailer is attached, for example when using a bicycle carrier with lighting, the system may become active in extreme driving situations.

Operating requirements

The system is operational from a speed of approximately 65 km/h, 40 mph, when towing a trailer and with the trailer socket in use.

System limits

The system is unable to intervene or intervenes too late, in the following situations for example:

- ▷ If a trailer folds instantly, for example on slippery or loose road surfaces.
- ▷ If a trailer with a high centre of gravity tips over before snaking is detected.
- ▷ If Dynamic Stability Control DSC is deactivated or has malfunctioned.
- ▷ If the power consumption of a trailer is too low to be detected by the system, for example due to LED rear lights.

Activating towing a trailer mode

Principle

When driving with a trailer or load carrier and the trailer socket occupied, some Driver Assistance

Systems may have functional limitations or may malfunction. In order to avoid malfunctions, activate towing a trailer mode.

Activating

Via iDrive:

1. "CAR"
2. "Settings"
3. "General settings"
4. "Trailer mode"
5. Activate towing a trailer mode.

Not for Australia/New Zealand: Trailer tow hitch with electrically swivellable trailer hitch

General

The swivel-mounted ball linkage for the trailer tow hitch is located on the underside of the vehicle.

Safety notes

WARNING

If the ball linkage is not locked, unstable driving conditions or accidents can result. There is a risk of accidents or material damage. Before a journey with a trailer or load carrier, check that the ball linkage is correctly locked.

If the ball linkage is not properly locked, the LED in the button illuminates red.

NOTE

The trailer tow hitch is intended to be used with a trailer. If the ball linkage of the trailer tow hitch has been swivelled out, it may become jammed when driving without a trailer or load carrier.

There is a risk of material damage. Swivel the ball linkage back in when driving without a trailer or load carrier.

Overview



The button for swinging the swivel-mounted ball linkage in and out is in the boot.

Operating requirements

The following requirements must be met in order to swivel the ball linkage:

- ▷ Vehicle is standing on level ground.
- ▷ The boot lid is open.
- ▷ The trailer socket is not occupied.
- ▷ Trailer towing is not activated.
- ▷ Adequate charge state of the vehicle battery.

The LED in the button illuminates green if the system is operational.

Swivelling out the ball linkage

1. Open the boot.
2. Step out of the swivelling range of the ball linkage behind the vehicle.

3.  Press the button in the boot.

The ball linkage swivels outwards. The LED in the button flashes in green.

4. Wait until the ball linkage has reached the end position.

Swivelling the ball linkage back in

1. Disconnect the trailer or load carrier.
2. Remove any fittings for the track-stabilising devices.
3. Pull the power supply connector for the trailer and any adapters out of the socket.
4.  Press the button in the boot.
The ball linkage swivels inwards. The LED in the button flashes in green.
5. Wait until the ball linkage has reached the end position.

Interrupting or reversing the swivel movement

General

The swivel movement is interrupted, might be reversed or is not performed if electrical current limits are exceeded, for example at very low temperatures, or if mechanical resistance is encountered. The LED in button illuminates red.

Repeating the swivel movement with the engine running

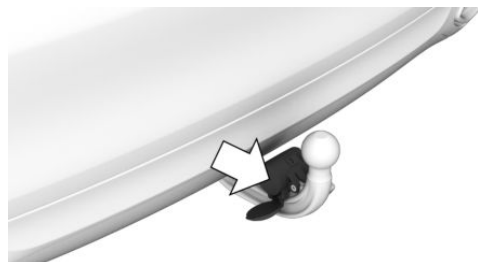
1. Switch on drive-ready state via the start/stop button.
2.  Press the button in the boot and hold it until the ball linkage has moved completely in or out.

If necessary, repeat the swivel movement with the button pressed and the engine running.

The LED in the button illuminates green when the ball linkage has reached an end position.

If this reoccurs, contact a Service Partner of the manufacturer or another qualified Service Partner or a specialist workshop.

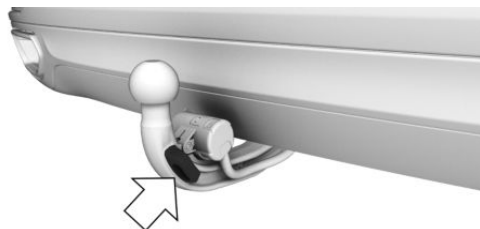
Trailer socket



The trailer socket is located on the trailer tow hitch.

Fold the cover downwards.

Eye for securing cable



There is an eye on the trailer tow hitch for fastening the trailer securing cable.

For increased safety when towing a trailer, attach the trailer securing cable to the eye.

Check that the securing cable can move freely and is not dragging on the ground.

Operating rear luggage racks

The ball linkage of the trailer tow hitch can be used as a mount for rear luggage racks; for example bicycle rack systems.

Note the information on rear luggage racks when operating the rear luggage rack, see page [303](#).

Saving fuel

Vehicle equipment

This chapter describes all standard, country-specific and special equipment available for the model series. It may therefore describe equipment and functions which are not installed in your vehicle, for example on account of the optional equipment selected or the country variant. This also applies to safety-relevant functions and systems. Please comply with the relevant laws and regulations when using the corresponding functions and systems.

Reducing fuel consumption

General

The vehicle possesses wide-ranging technologies for reducing consumption and emission levels.

Fuel consumption depends on various factors.

A number of measures, such as a moderate driving style and regular maintenance, can influence fuel consumption and reduce the burden on the environment.

Remove unnecessary loads

Extra weight increases fuel consumption.

Remove add-on accessories after use

If no longer required, remove auxiliary mirrors, roof racks and rear-mounted racks after use.

Add-on accessories on the vehicle can adversely affect its aerodynamic performance and increase fuel consumption.

Closing windows and the Glass Roof

An open Glass Roof or open window increase drag and consequently fuel consumption.

Tyres

General

Tyres can have differing effects on fuel consumption figures. The tyre size, for example, can influence how much fuel a vehicle uses.

Check tyre inflation pressure regularly

Check and, if necessary, correct the tyre inflation pressures at least twice a month and before setting off on a longer journey.

Insufficient tyre inflation pressure increases rolling resistance and consequently fuel consumption and tyre wear.

Drive off immediately

Do not warm up the engine with the vehicle at a standstill, but instead set off straight away, driving at moderate engine speeds.

This brings the cold engine up to operating temperature as quickly as possible.

Think ahead

Anticipating the road situation and adopting a smooth driving style will reduce fuel consumption.

Avoid accelerating and braking unnecessarily.

Keep an appropriate distance from the vehicle ahead.

Avoid high engine speeds

Driving at low engine speeds reduces fuel consumption and wear.

Pay attention to the shift point indicator in the vehicle, if fitted.

Make use of overrun mode

When approaching a red traffic light, take your foot off the accelerator and allow the vehicle to coast to a stop.

On downward stretches, take your foot off the accelerator and allow the vehicle to roll.

The fuel supply is interrupted in overrun mode.

Switch off the engine if stopping for longer periods

Stopping the engine

When you stop the vehicle for longer periods, for example at traffic lights, railway crossings or in traffic jams, switch off the engine.

Auto Start Stop function

The Auto Start Stop function of the vehicle shuts off the engine automatically during a stop.

If the engine is switched off and then started again, the fuel consumption and emissions are reduced compared with a permanently running engine. Savings can be made just by stopping the engine for a few seconds.

Fuel consumption also depends on other factors, such as driving style, road condition, maintenance or environmental factors, for example.

Switch off functions which are not currently required

Functions such as seat heating or rear window heating require a great deal of energy and increase fuel consumption, especially in city traffic and stop-and-go traffic.

Switch these functions off if they are not required.

Have maintenance work carried out

Have the vehicle serviced regularly to achieve optimal economy and lifetime. BMW recommends having maintenance work carried out by a BMW Service Partner.

Please also see the BMW Maintenance System.

Refuelling

Vehicle equipment

This chapter describes all standard, country-specific and special equipment available for the model series. It may therefore describe equipment and functions which are not installed in your vehicle, for example on account of the optional equipment selected or the country variant. This also applies to safety-relevant functions and systems. Please comply with the relevant laws and regulations when using the corresponding functions and systems.

Notes when refuelling

General

Before refuelling, observe the notes on fuel quality, see page 340.

When refuelling, insert the filler nozzle fully into the filler neck. Lifting the filler nozzle during refuelling results in the following:

- ▷ The supply of fuel is stopped too soon.
- ▷ Fuel vapour recovery is less effective.

The fuel tank is full when the filler nozzle cuts out for the first time.

Please comply with the safety regulations displayed at filling stations.

Safety notes

NOTE

If the range drops below 50 km, 30 miles, the engine may no longer be supplied with sufficient fuel. Engine function is no longer ensured. There is a risk of material damage. Refuel in good time.

NOTE

Fuels are poisonous and aggressive. Overfilling the fuel tank can damage the fuel system. If fuel comes into contact with paintwork, it can damage it. This pollutes the environment. There is a risk of material damage. Avoid overfilling.

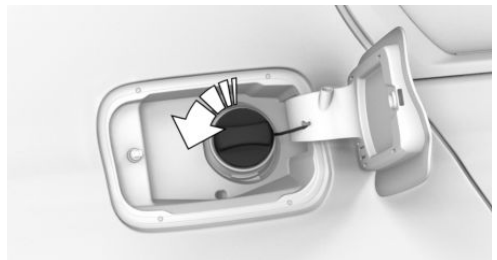
Fuel tank cap

Opening

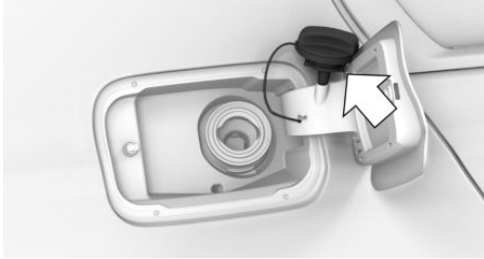
1. To open the fuel filler flap, push on the upper edge, arrow. The fuel filler flap opens.



2. Turn the fuel tank cap anticlockwise.



3. Place the fuel tank cap in the holder on the fuel filler flap.



Closing

WARNING

The retaining strap of the fuel tank cap may become trapped and crushed when turning the cap to close it. It will then not be possible to close the cap properly. Fuel or fuel vapours can leak out. There is a risk of injury or material damage. Make sure that the retaining strap does not get trapped and crushed when closing the cap.

1. Fit the tank cap and turn clockwise until it is clearly heard to click into place.
2. Press on the fuel filler flap until it engages.

Emergency release

In certain situations, it may be necessary to unlock the fuel filler flap manually, for example if there is an electrical fault.

Have the fuel filler flap unlocked by a Service Partner of the manufacturer or another qualified Service Partner or a specialist workshop.

Wheels and tyres

Vehicle equipment

This chapter describes all standard, country-specific and special equipment available for the model series. It may therefore describe equipment and functions which are not installed in your vehicle, for example on account of the optional equipment selected or the country variant. This also applies to safety-relevant functions and systems. Please comply with the relevant laws and regulations when using the corresponding functions and systems.

Tyre inflation pressure

General

A tyre's condition and inflation pressure influence the following:

- ▷ Lifetime of the tyre.
- ▷ Driving safety.
- ▷ Driving comfort.
- ▷ Fuel consumption.

Safety note

WARNING

A tyre with too little or no tyre inflation pressure can heat up significantly and sustain damage. Handling characteristics, for example steering and braking, will be impaired as a result. There is a risk of accident. Check the tyre inflation pressure regularly and adjust as necessary, for example twice a month or before any long journey.

Tyre inflation pressure information

On the door pillar



The tyre inflation pressures are shown on the door pillar of the driver's door.

The tyre inflation pressure data is valid for the tyre sizes and recommended tyre makes which have been rated by the vehicle manufacturer as suitable for the vehicle concerned.

If the tyre's speed code cannot be found, then the tyre inflation pressure for the corresponding tyre size applies.

The tyre inflation pressures stated for the respective load conditions apply depending on the vehicle's actual load condition. Example: for a partially loaded vehicle, the optimum tyre inflation pressure is the one stated for a partially loaded vehicle.

More information regarding wheels and tyres can be obtained from a Service Partner of the manufacturer or another qualified Service Partner or a specialist workshop.

For Australia/New Zealand

WARNING

The inflation pressures on the tyre label are applicable only for tyres explicitly mentioned on the label. Inflation pressures for tyres that may be covered by the label – by size, speed category and load rating/load index – but not explicitly mentioned on the label may be different. Please obtain adequate inflation pressures in accordance with the tyre manufacturer's specifications from your tyre dealer.

On the Control Display

The current tyre inflation pressure values and the specified tyre inflation pressure values for the mounted tyres can be displayed on the Control Display.

To ensure that they are displayed correctly, the tyre sizes must be stored in the system and must have been set for the fitted tyres.

The current tyre inflation pressure value is shown on each tyre.

The specified tyre inflation pressure value is located towards the bottom of the Control Display.

Checking the tyre inflation pressure

General

Tyres heat up while driving. The tyre inflation pressure increases with the temperature of the tyre.

Tyres have a natural, uniform loss of tyre inflation pressure.

Inflating devices can display a pressure that may be up to 0.1 bar too low.

Checking using tyre inflation pressure inscriptions on the door pillar

The tyre inflation pressure inscriptions on the tyre inflation pressure sign on the door pillar only relate to cold tyres or tyres at the same temperature as the ambient temperature.

Only check the tyre inflation pressures when the tyres are cold, i.e.:

- If the vehicle has been driven a distance of no more than 2 km, 1.25 miles.
- If the vehicle has not moved again for at least 2 hours after a journey.

Regularly check the tyre inflation pressure of the emergency wheel in the boot and correct the pressure if necessary.

1. Determine the specified tyre inflation pressures for the tyres installed on the vehicle.
2. Check the tyre inflation pressure in all four tyres, using a pressure gauge, for example.
3. Correct the tyre inflation pressure if the current tyre inflation pressure deviates from the specified tyre inflation pressure.
4. Check whether all valve caps are screwed onto the tyre valves.

Checking using the tyre inflation pressure information on the Control Display

Via iDrive:

1. "CAR"
2. "Vehicle status"
3.  "Tyre Pressure Monitor"
4. Check if the current tyre inflation pressures match the specified tyre pressure value.
5. Correct the tyre inflation pressure if the current tyre inflation pressure deviates from the specified tyre inflation pressure.

After adjusting the tyre inflation pressure

For runflat indicator RPA:
Reinitialise the runflat indicator RPA.
For Tyre Pressure Monitor TPM:
The corrected tyre inflation pressures are applied automatically. Make sure that the correct tyre settings have been performed.
For tyres that cannot be found in the tyre inflation pressure information on the Control Display, reset the Tyre Pressure Monitor TPM.

Speed code

Designation	Maximum speed
Q	up to 160 km/h, 100 mph
R	up to 170 km/h, 106 mph
S	up to 180 km/h, 112 mph
T	up to 190 km/h, 118 mph
H	up to 210 km/h, 131 mph
F	up to 240 km/h, 150 mph
W	up to 270 km/h, 167 mph
Y	up to 300 km/h, 186 mph

Tyre tread

Summer tyres

The tyre tread depth should not be less than 3 mm, 0.12 in, otherwise there is a high risk of aquaplaning.

Winter tyres

The tyre tread depth should not be less than 4 mm, 0.16 in, otherwise the vehicle's suitability for winter use is restricted.

Minimum tread depth



Wear indicators are distributed around the circumference of the tyre. These have the legally prescribed minimum height of 1.6 mm, 0.06 in.

The positions of the wear indicators are identified on the tyre's side wall by TWI, Tread Wear Indicator.

Tyre damage

General

- Inspect tyres regularly for damage, the presence of foreign bodies and wear.
- Vehicle behaviour that may indicate tyre damage or other faults:
- ▷ Unusual vibrations.
 - ▷ Unusual tyre or running noises.
 - ▷ Unusual vehicle response, such as pronounced pulling to the left or right.
- Damage can be caused by the following situations, for example:
- ▷ Driving over kerbs.
 - ▷ Road damage.
 - ▷ Insufficient tyre inflation pressure.
 - ▷ Overloading the vehicle.
 - ▷ Incorrect tyre storage.

Safety notes

WARNING

If the tyres are damaged, the tyre inflation pressure may be reduced, which in turn could cause you to lose control of the vehicle. There is a risk of accident. If you suspect tyre damage while you are driving, immediately reduce speed and bring the vehicle to a stop. Have the wheels and tyres checked. To do so, carefully drive to a Service Partner of the manufacturer or another qualified Service Partner or a specialist workshop. If necessary, have the vehicle towed or transported there. Do not repair damaged tyres. Have them replaced.

WARNING

Tyres can become damaged by running over obstacles, for example kerbs or road damage, at high speed. Larger wheels have a smaller tyre cross-section. The smaller the tyre cross-section, the higher the risk of tyre damage. There is a risk of accidents and material damage. If possible, drive around obstacles or drive over them slowly and carefully.

Age of tyres

Recommendation

Irrespective of the tyre tread depth, change tyres after 6 years at the latest.

Date of manufacture

The date of manufacture of the tyre is indicated on the tyre sidewall.

Designation	Date of manufacture

DOT ... 3819	38th week of 2019

Replacement of wheels and tyres

Fitting and balancing

Have the wheel fitted and balanced by a Service Partner of the manufacturer or another qualified Service Partner or a specialist workshop.

Wheel/tyre combination

General

Information on the correct wheel/tyre combination and rim designs for the vehicle can be obtained from a Service Partner of the manufacturer or another qualified Service Partner or a specialist workshop.

Safety notes

WARNING

Wheels and tyres that are not suitable for the vehicle can damage parts of the vehicle. For example they could come into contact with the bodywork on account of their dimensional tolerances, despite having the same nominal size. There is a risk of accident. The manufacturer of the vehicle recommends using wheels and tyres that have been rated as suitable for the vehicle concerned.

WARNING

Mounted steel wheels can lead to technical problems, for example wheel studs may work loose and brake discs may be damaged. There is a risk of accident. Do not install steel wheels.

⚠ WARNING

Incorrect wheel/tyre combinations impair the vehicle's handling characteristics and interfere with the proper functioning of various systems, such as the Anti-lock Brake System ABS or Dynamic Stability Control DSC. There is a risk of accident. To maintain good vehicle handling, always fit tyres of the same make and tread pattern to all wheels. The manufacturer of the vehicle recommends using wheels and tyres that have been rated as suitable for the vehicle concerned. After a tyre has been damaged, refit the same wheel/tyre combination as the original.

Recommended makes of tyre

Certain makes of tyre are recommended by the manufacturer of the vehicle for each tyre size. The tyre brands can be identified by a star on the side wall of the tyre.

New tyres

Due to the manufacturing process, new tyres do not achieve their full road grip immediately. Drive moderately for the first 300 km, 200 miles.

Retreaded tyres**⚠ WARNING**

Retreaded tyres may have different tyre carcasses. Their durability may be reduced with increasing age. There is a risk of accident. Do not use retreaded tyres.

The vehicle manufacturer advises against the use of retreaded tyres.

Winter tyres**General**

Winter tyres are recommended if driving in winter conditions.

Although tyres known as all-season tyres with an M+S label have better winter characteristics than summer tyres, they do not normally match the performance of winter tyres.

Maximum speed of winter tyres

If the vehicle is capable of maximum speeds higher than the speed permitted for the winter tyres, an information label stating the maximum permitted speed for the tyres fitted must be displayed in the driver's field of view. The label is available from a Service Partner of the manufacturer or another qualified Service Partner or a specialist workshop.

If winter tyres are fitted, observe and do not exceed the respectively permitted maximum speed.

Swapping over front and rear wheels**⚠ WARNING**

Swapping over of wheels between axles on vehicles with different tyre sizes or rim dimensions on the front and rear axles may cause tyre damage and damage to the vehicle. There is a risk of accident. Do not swap over wheels be-

tween axles on vehicles with different tyre sizes or rim dimensions on the front and rear axles.

Storing tyres

Tyre inflation pressure

Do not exceed the maximum tyre inflation pressure indicated on the tyre's side wall.

Tyre storage

- Store wheels and tyres in a cool, dry and dark place when not in use.
- Protect the tyres against contamination from oil, grease and solvents.
- Do not leave tyres in plastic bags.
- Remove dirt from the wheels or tyres.

Remedying flat tyres

Safety measures

- Park the vehicle on a firm surface and as far away from moving traffic as possible.
- Switch on the hazard warning lights.
- Apply the parking brake to prevent the vehicle rolling away.
- Engage the steering wheel lock with the wheels in the straight-ahead position.
- Have all vehicle occupants get out of the vehicle and guide them out of the danger area, for example behind the crash barrier.
- Set up the warning triangle an appropriate distance away.

Mobility System

Principle

With the Mobility System, minor tyre damage can be quickly sealed, to allow you to drive on. For this purpose, liquid sealant is pumped into

the tyres which encloses the damage from the inside when it hardens.

General

- Please observe the notes on the application of the Mobility System which are on the compressor and the sealant container.
- Applying the Mobility System can be ineffective for tyre damage larger than approximately 4 mm.
- Contact a Service Partner of the manufacturer or another qualified Service Partner or a specialist workshop if you are unable to put the tyre back in operation.
- Foreign bodies that have penetrated the tyre should remain inside the tyre. Only remove foreign objects if they are visibly protruding from the tyre.
- Remove the speed limit sticker from the sealant container and attach to the steering wheel.
- Using sealants can damage the TPM wheel electronics. In this case, have the electronics replaced at the next opportunity.
- The compressor can be used to check the tyre inflation pressure.

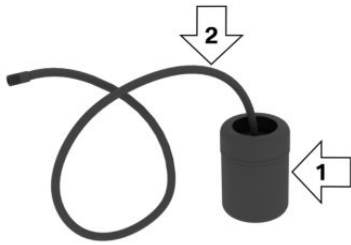
Overview

Storage



The Mobility System is located in the left storage compartment of the boot.

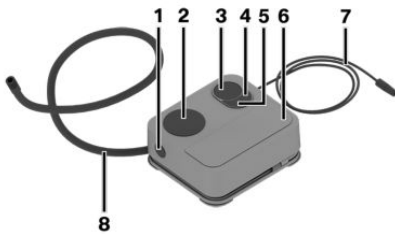
Sealant container



- Sealant container, arrow 1.
- Filler hose, arrow 2.

Note the use-by date on the sealant container.

Compressor



- 1 Unlocking sealant container
- 2 Sealant container holder
- 3 Tyre inflation pressure indicator
- 4 Reduce tyre inflation pressure button
- 5 On/Off button
- 6 Compressor
- 7 Plug/cable for socket
- 8 Connecting hose

Safety measures

- Park the vehicle on a firm surface and as far away from moving traffic as possible.
- Switch on the hazard warning lights.
- Apply the parking brake to prevent the vehicle rolling away.

- Engage the steering wheel lock with the wheels in the straight-ahead position.
- Have all vehicle occupants get out of the vehicle and guide them out of the danger area, for example behind the crash barrier.
- Set up the warning triangle an appropriate distance away.

Filling with sealing compound

Safety notes

DANGER

A blocked exhaust pipe or inadequate ventilation can allow harmful exhaust fumes to enter the vehicle. The exhaust fumes contain pollutants which are colourless and odourless. In enclosed spaces, exhaust fumes can also build up outside the vehicle. There is a risk of death. Keep the exhaust pipe clear and ensure sufficient ventilation.

NOTE

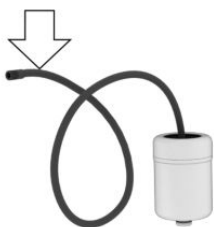
The compressor can overheat if operated for too long. There is a risk of material damage. Do not let the compressor run for longer than 10 minutes.

Filling

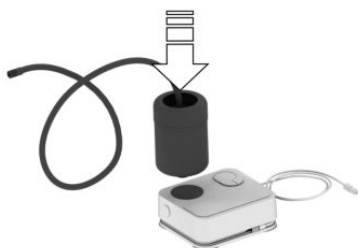
1. Shake the sealant container.



2. Pull filler hose completely from the cover of the sealant container. Do not kink the hose.



3. Push the sealant container into the bracket on the compressor housing, until it audibly engages.



4. Screw the filler hose of the sealant container onto the tyre valve of the faulty wheel.



5. Insert the plug into the socket in the vehicle interior while the compressor is switched off.



6. Switch on the compressor with standby state switched on or the engine running.



Let the compressor run for approximately 10 minutes to fill the sealing compound and achieve a tyre inflation pressure of approximately 2.0 bar.

The tyre inflation pressure may rise to approximately 5 bar during the filling process of the sealing compound. Do not switch off the compressor during this step.

Checking and adjusting the tyre inflation pressure

Checking

1. Switch off compressor.
2. Read off the tyre inflation pressure as shown on the tyre pressure indicator.

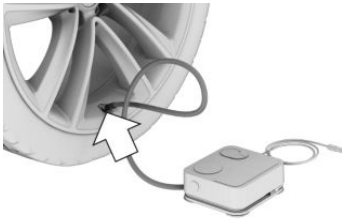
To be able to continue the journey, a tyre inflation pressure of at least 2 bar must be reached.

Removing and storing the sealant container

1. Unscrew the filler hose of the sealant container from the tyre valve.
2. Press the red unlocking device.
3. Remove the sealant container from the compressor.
4. Pack and store the sealant container to avoid soiling the boot.

Minimum tyre inflation pressure is not reached

1. Unplug the connector from the socket in the vehicle interior.
2. Drive forwards and backwards by 10 m, 400 inches, to distribute the sealant in the tyre.
3. Screw the connecting hose of the compressor directly onto the tyre valve.



4. Insert the plug into the socket in the vehicle interior.



5. Switch on the compressor with standby state switched on or the engine running.

If the tyre inflation pressure of at least 2 bar is not reached, contact a Service Partner of the manufacturer or a qualified Service Partner or a specialist workshop.

If the tyre inflation pressure of at least 2 bar is reached, see Minimum tyre inflation pressure is reached.

6. Unscrew the connecting hose of the compressor from the tyre valve.
7. Unplug the connector from the socket in the vehicle interior.
8. Store Mobility System in the vehicle.

Minimum tyre inflation pressure is reached

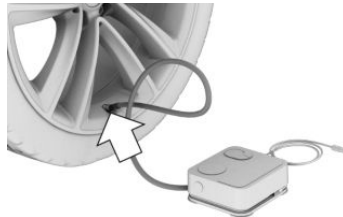
1. Unscrew the connecting hose of the compressor from the tyre valve.
2. Unplug the connector from the socket in the vehicle interior.
3. Store Mobility System in the vehicle.
4. Immediately drive for approximately 10 km/5 mi to evenly distribute the sealing compound in the tyre.

Do not exceed a speed of 80 km/h/50 mph.

If possible, do not drive slower than 20 km/h/12 mph.

Adjusting

1. Stop in a suitable area.
2. Screw the connecting hose of the compressor directly onto the tyre valve.



3. Insert the plug into the socket in the vehicle interior.



4. Correct tyre inflation pressure to at least 2.0 bar:
 - ▷ To increase tyre inflation pressure: switch on the compressor with standby state switched on or the engine running.
 - ▷ To reduce tyre inflation pressure: press the button on the compressor.
5. Unscrew the connecting hose of the compressor from the tyre valve.
6. Unplug the connector from the socket in the vehicle interior.
7. Store Mobility System in the vehicle.

Resuming with journey

Do not exceed maximum permitted speed of 80 km/h, 50 mph.

Reinitialise the runflat indicator RPA, see page 329.

Reset the Tyre Pressure Monitor TPM, see page 324.

Have the punctured tyre and the sealant container of the Mobility System replaced as soon as possible.

Snow chains

Safety notes

WARNING

If snow chains are fitted to unsuitable tyres, the snow chains can come into contact with parts of the vehicle. There is a risk of accidents or material damage. Only fit snow chains on tyres that the manufacturer has approved as being suitable for snow chains.

WARNING

Insufficiently tensioned snow chains can damage tyres and vehicle components. There is a risk of accidents or material damage. Ensure that snow chains are always adequately tensioned. Re-tension them if necessary in accordance with the snow chain manufacturer's instructions.

Fine-link snow chains

The vehicle manufacturer recommends using fine-link snow chains. Certain fine-link snow chains have been tested, found safe for use in traffic and rated as suitable by the manufacturer of the vehicle.

Information regarding suitable snow chains is available from a Service Partner of the manufacturer or another qualified Service Partner or a specialist workshop.

Use

Snow chains may only be used in pairs on the rear wheels with tyres of the following sizes:

- ▷ 265/40 R 19.

Observe the snow chain manufacturer's instructions.

Do not initialise the runflat indicator RPA with snow chains fitted, as it may give incorrect readings.

Do not reset the Tyre Pressure Monitor TPM with snow chains fitted, as it may give incorrect readings.

When driving with snow chains fitted, activate Dynamic Traction Control DTC briefly as required in order to optimise traction.

Maximum speed with snow chains

When snow chains are fitted, do not exceed 50 km/h, 30 mph.

Tyre Pressure Monitor TPM

Principle

The system monitors the tyre inflation pressure in the four fitted tyres. The system warns if the tyre inflation pressure in one or more tyres has dropped.

General

Sensors in the tyre valves measure the tyre inflation pressure and tyre temperature.

With the tyre settings in iDrive, the system can display the specified pressures automatically and compare them with the current tyre inflation pressures.

If tyres are fitted which are not listed in the tyre inflation pressure information provided in the vehicle, for example tyres with special approval, the system must be actively reset. The current tyre inflation pressures are then accepted as the specified values.

When operating the system, please also comply with the other information and notes in the Tyre inflation pressure chapter, see page 314.

Safety note

WARNING

The display showing the specified tyre inflation pressures does not replace the tyre inflation pressure information on the vehicle. If incorrect data has been entered into the tyre settings, the specified tyre inflation pressures will also be incorrect. As a result, reliable signalling of a loss of tyre inflation pressure can no longer be guaranteed. There is a risk of injury and material damage. Make sure that the tyre sizes of the fitted tyres are displayed correctly and that they match the specifications on the tyres and in the tyre inflation pressure information.

Operating requirements

The following requirements must be met for the system, otherwise reliable signalling of a loss of tyre inflation pressure is not ensured:

- ▶ After every tyre or wheel change, the correct specifications for the fitted tyres must be entered in the tyre settings.
- ▶ RDC only becomes active after a journey of several minutes:
 - ▶ After a tyre or wheel change.
 - ▶ After a reset, in the case of tyres with special approval.
 - ▶ After changing the tyre setting.
- ▶ In the case of tyres with special approval:
 - ▶ After every tyre or wheel change, a reset must be carried out when the tyre inflation pressures are correct.
 - ▶ A reset must be carried out after the tyre inflation pressure has been adjusted to a new value.
- ▶ Wheels with TPM wheel electronics.

Tyre settings

General

The tyre sizes of the fitted tyres can be found in the tyre inflation pressure information on the vehicle or directly on the tyres.

The tyre data does not have to be re-entered if the tyre inflation pressure is corrected.

For summer and winter tyres, the tyre data last entered for each type is saved. This means that the settings can be retrieved again after a tyre or wheel change.

Adjusting the settings

Via iDrive:

1. "CAR"
2. "Vehicle status"
3. (!) "Tyre Pressure Monitor"
4. "Tyre settings"
5. "Tyre selection"
6. "Manual"
7. "Tyre type"
 - ▷ "Summer"
 - ▷ "Winter/all-season"
8. Select the type of tyre fitted on the rear axle:
 - ▷ Tyre size, for example 265/40 R19 102 V.
 - ▷ In the case of tyres with special approval: "Other tyres".

See the Performing a reset section for how to proceed.
9. Select the load status of the vehicle once tyre size has been selected.
10. "Save tyre settings"

The measurement of the current tyre inflation pressure is started. The progress of the measurement is shown.

Status display

Current status

The status of the system, for example whether the system is active, can be shown on the Control Display.

Via iDrive:

1. "CAR"
2. "Vehicle status"
3. (!) "Tyre Pressure Monitor"

The current status is displayed.

Current tyre inflation pressure

The current tyre inflation pressure is displayed for each tyre.

The current tyre inflation pressures can vary depending on vehicle operation or outside temperature.

Current tyre temperature

The current tyre temperatures are shown.

The current tyre temperatures can change as a result of vehicle operation or the outside temperature.

Specified pressure

The specified pressure for the tyres on the front and rear axle is displayed.

The calculated pressure takes account of the temperature effects caused by vehicle operation and the outside temperature. Independently of the weather conditions, tyre temperatures and length of journey, the appropriate specified pressure is always displayed.

The displayed specified pressure may vary and differ from the value stated in the tyre inflation pressure information on the door pillar of the driver's door. The tyre inflation pressure can thus be corrected to the value of the displayed specified pressures.

The specified pressure is adjusted immediately if the load status is changed in the tyre settings.

Tyre statuses

General

The status of the system and tyres is indicated by the wheel colour and a message on the Control Display.

If applicable, existing messages are not deleted if the displayed specified pressure is not reached on correction of the tyre inflation pressure.

All wheels green

- ▶ The system is active and is using the displayed specified pressures for the warning.
- ▶ In the case of tyres with special approval: the system is active and is using the tyre inflation pressures saved during the last reset for the warning.

One to four wheels yellow

There is a flat tyre or major loss of tyre inflation pressure in the tyres shown.

Wheels grey

Tyre pressure losses might not be detected.

Possible causes:

- ▶ Malfunction.
- ▶ The tyre inflation pressure is being measured, after confirmation of the tyre settings.
- ▶ In the case of tyres with special approval: a system reset is being performed.

Tyres with special approval: performing a reset

Via iDrive:

1. "CAR"
2. "Vehicle status"
3. "Tyre Pressure Monitor"
4. Make sure that the correct tyre settings, see page 325, have been made.
5. Switch on drive-ready state but do not drive off.

6. Reset the tyre inflation pressure: "Perform reset".
7. Drive off.

The wheels are shown grey and the following appears on the display: "Resetting tyre pressure...".

After driving for several minutes, the set tyre inflation pressures are accepted as the specified tyre inflation pressures. The reset is completed automatically during the journey.

If the reset was successful, the wheels are shown in green on the Control Display and the following appears: "Reset successful."

You can interrupt your journey at any time. The reset resumes automatically when you continue your journey.

Messages: for tyres without special approval

General

Dynamic Stability Control DSC will be activated if necessary as soon as a message for low tyre inflation pressure appears.

Safety note

WARNING

A damaged standard tyre with too little or no tyre inflation pressure impairs driving characteristics, for example steering and braking. There is a risk of accident. Do not continue driving. Repair the flat tyre or replace the wheel.

If a tyre inflation pressure check is required

Message

A symbol with a Check Control message is shown on the Control Display.

Symbol Possible cause

The tyre was not inflated properly, for example insufficient air was added or there was a natural, even loss of tyre inflation pressure.

Measure

Check the tyre inflation pressure and adjust as necessary.

If the tyre inflation pressure is insufficient**Message**

A yellow warning lamp is illuminated in the instrument cluster.

In addition, a symbol with a Check Control message is shown on the Control Display.

Symbol Possible cause

There has been a loss of tyre inflation pressure.

Measure

1. Reduce speed. Do not exceed a speed of 130 km/h, 80 mph.
2. At the next opportunity, for example at a filling station, check the tyre inflation pressure in all four tyres and correct if necessary.

If there is a significant loss of tyre inflation pressure**Message**

A yellow warning lamp is illuminated in the instrument cluster.

In addition, a symbol with the affected tyre is shown in a Check Control message on the Control Display.

Symbol Possible cause

There is a flat tyre or substantial loss of tyre inflation pressure.

Measure

1. Reduce your speed and carefully stop the vehicle. Avoid heavy braking and sudden steering manoeuvres.
2. Follow the description of what to do in the event of a flat tyre, see page 328.

Messages: in the case of tyres with special approval**General**

Dynamic Stability Control DSC will be activated if necessary as soon as a message for low tyre inflation pressure appears.

Safety note**WARNING**

A damaged standard tyre with too little or no tyre inflation pressure impairs driving characteristics, for example steering and braking. There is a risk of accident. Do not continue driving. Repair the flat tyre or replace the wheel.

If a tyre inflation pressure check is required**Message**

A symbol with a Check Control message is shown on the Control Display.

Symbol	Possible cause
	The tyre was not inflated properly, for example insufficient air was added. The system has detected a wheel change, but no reset has been performed. The tyre inflation pressure has dropped compared to the last reset. No reset has been performed on the system. The system is using the tyre inflation pressures saved during the last reset for the warning.

Measure

- 1. Check the tyre inflation pressure and adjust as necessary.
- 2. Perform a reset of the system.

If the tyre inflation pressure is insufficient

Message

 A yellow warning lamp is illuminated in the instrument cluster.

In addition, a symbol with a Check Control message is shown on the Control Display.

Symbol	Possible cause
	There has been a loss of tyre inflation pressure. No reset has been performed on the system. The system is using the tyre inflation pressures saved during the last reset for the warning.

Measure

- 1. Reduce speed. Do not exceed a speed of 130 km/h, 80 mph.

- 2. At the next opportunity, for example at a filling station, check the tyre inflation pressure in all four tyres and correct if necessary.
- 3. Perform a reset of the system.

If there is a significant loss of tyre inflation pressure

Message

 A yellow warning lamp is illuminated in the instrument cluster.

In addition, a symbol with the affected tyre is shown in a Check Control message on the Control Display.

Symbol	Possible cause
	There is a flat tyre or substantial loss of tyre inflation pressure. No reset has been performed on the system. The system is using the tyre inflation pressures saved during the last reset for the warning.

Measure

- 1. Reduce your speed and carefully stop the vehicle. Avoid heavy braking and sudden steering manoeuvres.
- 2. Follow the description of what to do in the event of a flat tyre, see page 328.

What to do in the event of a flat tyre

- 1. Identify the damaged tyre.

Check the tyre inflation pressure in all four tyres, for example using the tyre pressure indicator of a flat tyre kit.

In the case of tyres with special approval: if all four tyres are inflated to the correct tyre inflation pressures, the Tyre Pressure Monitor might not have been reset. Perform a reset.

If no tyre damage can be found, contact a Service Partner of the manufacturer or an-

other qualified Service Partner or a specialist workshop.

2. Repair the flat tyre, for example using a flat tyre kit or by changing the wheel.

The use of sealant, for example a flat tyre kit, can damage the TPM wheel electronics. Have the electronics replaced at the next opportunity.

System limits

Temperature

The tyre inflation pressure depends on the temperature of the tyre.

The tyre inflation pressure increases as the tyre temperature increases, for example during driving or due to exposure to sunlight.

Tyre inflation pressure decreases if the tyre temperature drops.

Due to the given warning thresholds, therefore, this behaviour may trigger a warning if there are major temperature drops.

After a temperature-related warning, the specified pressures are displayed again on the Control Display after driving a short distance.

Sudden loss of tyre inflation pressure

No warning can be given in the event of extreme, sudden tyre failure caused by external factors.

Reset not carried out

Tyres with special approval: the system will not function correctly if a reset has not been carried out, for example, a flat tyre may be reported even though the tyre pressure is correct.

Malfunction

Message



The yellow warning lamp flashes and is then illuminated continuously. A Check

Control message is shown. Tyre pressure losses may not be detected.

Measure

- ▷ A wheel without TPM wheel electronics is fitted, for example emergency wheel: have the wheels checked if necessary.
- ▷ Fault due to systems or devices with the same radio frequency: the system is automatically reactivated upon leaving the field of interference.
- ▷ In the case of tyres with special approval: the system was unable to complete the reset. Perform a system reset again.

Malfunction: have the system checked.

Runflat indicator RPA

Principle

The system identifies a loss of tyre inflation pressure by comparing the rotational speeds of the individual wheels during the journey.

If a tyre loses inflation pressure, its diameter changes. This in turn alters the rotational speed of the corresponding wheel. The discrepancy will be detected and reported as a flat tyre.

The system does not measure the tyre inflation pressure as such.

Operating requirements

The following requirements must be met for the system, otherwise reliable signalling of a loss of tyre inflation pressure is not ensured:

- ▷ After every tyre or wheel change, an initialisation must be carried out once the tyre inflation pressures are correct.
- ▷ An initialisation must be carried out after the tyre inflation pressure has been adjusted to a new value.

Status display

It is possible to display the current status of the runflat indicator RPA, for example to check whether the RPA is active.

Via iDrive:

- 1. "CAR"
- 2. "Vehicle status"
- 3.  "Flat Tyre Monitor"

The status is displayed.

Initialisation required

An initialisation must be performed in the following situations:

- After adjusting the tyre inflation pressure.
- After a tyre or wheel change.

Initialising

On initialisation, the current tyre pressures are saved as a reference for detection of a flat tyre. Initialisation is started by confirming the correct tyre inflation pressures.

When driving with snow chains fitted, do not initialise the system.

Via iDrive:

- 1. "CAR"
- 2. "Vehicle status"
- 3. "Flat Tyre Monitor"
- 4. Switch on drive-ready state but do not drive off.
- 5. Start the initialisation: "Perform reset"
- 6. Drive off.

Initialisation is completed during the journey; this process can be interrupted at any time.

Initialising resumes automatically when you continue your journey.

Messages

General

Dynamic Stability Control DSC is activated if necessary as soon as the message for a flat tyre appears.

Safety note



WARNING

A damaged standard tyre with too little or no tyre inflation pressure impairs driving characteristics, for example steering and braking. There is a risk of accident. Do not continue driving. Repair the flat tyre or replace the wheel.

Flat tyre message



A yellow warning lamp is illuminated in the instrument cluster.

In addition, a symbol with a Check Control message is shown on the Control Display.

Symbol Possible cause



There is a flat tyre or substantial loss of tyre inflation pressure.

Measure

- 1. Reduce your speed and carefully stop the vehicle. Avoid heavy braking and sudden steering manoeuvres.

What to do in the event of a flat tyre

- 1. Identify the damaged tyre.

To do this, check the tyre inflation pressure in all four tyres, for example using the tyre pressure indicator of a flat tyre kit.

If all four tyres are inflated to the correct tyre inflation pressures, the runflat indicator might

not have been initialised. In this case initialise the system.

If it is not possible to identify tyre damage, contact a Service Partner of the manufacturer or another qualified Service Partner or a specialist workshop.

2. Repair the flat tyre, for example using a flat tyre kit or by changing the wheel.

System limits

In the following situations, the system could be slow to respond or operate incorrectly:

- A natural, even loss of tyre inflation pressure in all four tyres that occurs over time is not detected. Consequently, check the tyre inflation pressure at regular intervals.
- No warning can be given in the event of sudden tyre failure caused by external factors.
- The system has not been initialised.
- When driving on snow-covered or slippery surfaces.
- Dynamic driving style: drive wheels slipping, high lateral acceleration.
- When driving with snow chains.

Wheel change

General

When using a flat tyre kit, it is not always necessary to change a wheel immediately if tyre inflation pressure is lost due to a flat tyre.

If required, the tools for changing wheels are available as optional accessories from a Service Partner of the manufacturer, another qualified Service Partner or a specialist workshop.

Safety notes

DANGER

The jack is only intended for raising the vehicle briefly during a wheel change. Even if the safety measures are complied with, there is a risk of the raised vehicle falling over due to the jack slipping. There is a risk of injury or even death. If the vehicle is raised with the jack, do not lie underneath the vehicle and do not start the engine.

DANGER

Supports such as wooden blocks under the jack can prevent it from achieving its load capacity due to the restricted height. The load capacity of the wooden blocks may be exceeded, causing the vehicle to tip over. There is a risk of injury or even death. Do not place supports under the vehicle jack.

WARNING

The jack, issued by the vehicle manufacturer, is provided in order to perform a wheel change in the event of a breakdown. The jack is not designed for frequent use; for example, changing from summer to winter tyres. Using the jack frequently may cause it to become jammed or damaged. There is a risk of injury and material damage. Only use the jack to change an emergency wheel or a spare wheel in the event of a flat tyre.

WARNING

On soft, uneven or slippery ground, for example snow, ice, tiles or similar, the jack may slip. There is a risk of injury. Perform the wheel change on a level, firm and non-slip surface if at all possible.

**WARNING**

The jack is only optimised for raising the vehicle and for use with the jacking points on the vehicle. There is a risk of injury. Do not lift another vehicle or other items with the jack.

**WARNING**

If the jack has not been guided into the jacking point provided, the vehicle might be damaged when the jack is extended, or the jack could slip. There is a risk of injury or material damage. When extending, make sure that the jack is guided into the jacking point adjacent to the wheelhouse.

**WARNING**

A vehicle raised with a jack can fall from the jack if lateral forces are applied. There is a risk of injury and material damage. If the vehicle is raised, do not apply any lateral forces to the vehicle or pull the vehicle with sudden movements. Have any wheel that is jammed removed by a Service Partner of the manufacturer or another qualified Service Partner or a specialist workshop.

**Vehicle jack: Australian/New Zealand standard AS/NZS 2693**

2007 – "Vehicle jacks" contains the following warning note, which BMW hereby adopts: "... no person should place any portion of their body under a vehicle that is supported by a jack".

The jack supplied with your vehicle should not be used for any purpose other than wheel changing and should never be used in conjunction with a vehicle support stand. Raising the vehicle for the purpose of inspection should only be performed in a controlled workshop environment on a hoist by trained personnel.

The following warning instructions from standard AS/NZS 2693:2007 are repeated here: the jack should be used on level firm ground wherever possible. It is recommended that the wheels of the vehicle be chocked, and that no person should remain in a vehicle that is being jacked.

The jack of your BMW is maintenance-free.

Please observe the information marked on the jack.

Protecting the vehicle against rolling

General

The vehicle manufacturer recommends that the vehicle should additionally be protected against rolling away during a wheel change.

On a level surface



Place chocks or other suitable objects in front of and behind the wheel directly opposite to the one being changed.

On a slight downhill slope



If it is necessary to change a wheel on a slight downhill slope, place chocks and other suitable objects, for example stones, under the wheels of the front and rear axles in the opposite direction to the direction of roll.

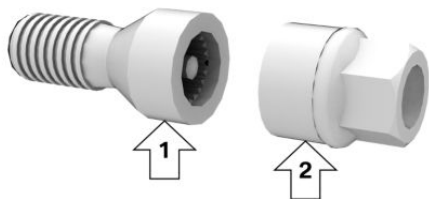
Thiefproof wheel studs

Principle

The wheel locking bolts have a special coding. The bolts can only be released with the adapter that matches the coding.

Overview

The adapter of the thiefproof wheel studs can be found in the on-board tool kit or in an oddments tray in the on-board tool kit.



- Wheel stud, arrow 1.
- Adapter, arrow 2.

Unscrewing

1. Place the adapter on the wheel stud.
2. Unscrew the wheel stud.

3. After unscrewing the wheel stud, remove the adapter again.

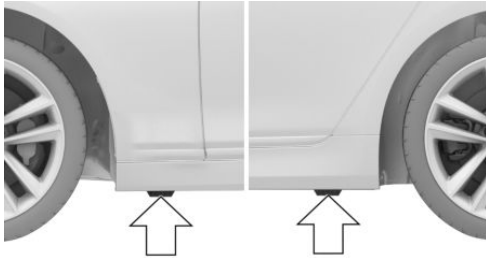
Screwing on

1. Place the adapter on the wheel stud. If necessary, turn the adapter until it fits on the wheel stud.
2. Screw on the wheel stud. The tightening torque is 140 Nm.
3. After screwing on the wheel stud, remove the adapter again and stow it.

Preparing the vehicle

- Park the vehicle on firm and non-slip ground at a safe distance from traffic.
- Switch on the hazard warning lights.
- Apply the parking brake.
- Engage a gear or select selector lever position P.
- As soon as the traffic permits, have all vehicle occupants get out of the vehicle and guide them out of the danger area, for example behind the crash barrier.
- Depending on the equipment, take the wheel change tools and, if necessary, the emergency wheel out of the vehicle.
- If applicable, set up warning triangle or flashing light at the correct distance.
- Additionally protect the vehicle against rolling away.
- Undo the wheel studs by half a turn.

Jacking points



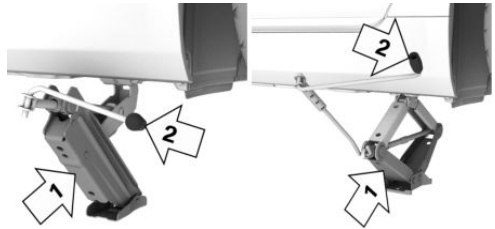
The jacking points are located in the marked positions.

Raising vehicle

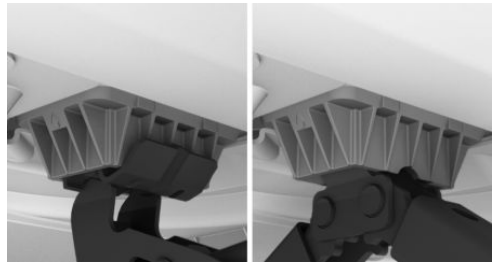
WARNING

Your hands or fingers could get trapped when using the jack. There is a risk of injury. Keep your hands in the described position when using the jack, and do not change this position.

1. Hold the jack with one hand, arrow 1, and grasp the jack crank or lever with your other hand, arrow 2.



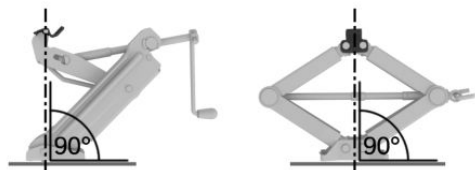
2. Guide the jack into the rectangular recess of the jacking point closest to the wheel to be changed.



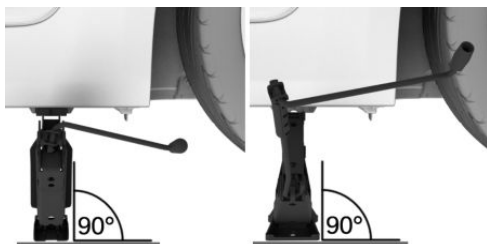
3. Turn the jack crank or lever clockwise to extend the jack.



4. Remove your hand from the jack as soon as the jack is under load and continue to turn the jack crank or lever with one hand.
5. Make sure that the base of the vehicle jack is extended perpendicular to and at right angles underneath the jacking point.



6. Make sure that the base of the jack is extended perpendicular to and at right angles below the jacking point.



7. Raise by cranking until the jack is supported on the ground with its entire surface and the wheel in question is at most 3 cm, 1.2 inches off the ground.

Fitting a wheel

Only fit one emergency wheel at most, as required.

1. Unscrew the wheel studs.
2. Remove the wheel.
3. Put on the new wheel or emergency wheel and tighten at least two wheel studs crosswise until finger-tight.

If non-original light alloy wheels not from the vehicle manufacturer are fitted, the wheel

studs belonging to the wheels may also have to be used.

4. Tighten the remaining wheel studs until finger-tight and then tighten all the wheel studs crosswise.
5. Turn the jack crank anticlockwise to retract the jack and lower the vehicle.
6. Remove the jack and stow it securely.

After changing the wheel

1. Tighten the wheel studs crosswise. The tightening torque is 140 Nm, 101 lb ft.
2. Stow the faulty wheel in the boot, if necessary.

Due to its size, the faulty wheel cannot be accommodated under the boot floor.

3. Check tyre inflation pressure at the next opportunity and correct as necessary.
4. Reinitialise the runflat indicator RPA.
Reset the Tyre Pressure Monitor TPM.
5. Check the tight fit of the wheel studs using a calibrated torque wrench.
6. Drive to the nearest Service Partner of the manufacturer or another qualified Service Partner or a specialist workshop to have the damaged tyre replaced.

Not for Australia/New Zealand: Emergency wheel

Principle

In case of a flat tyre, the emergency wheel can be used as a replacement for the defective tyre. The emergency wheel is intended for short-term use until the defective wheel has been replaced.

General

Only fit one emergency wheel at most.

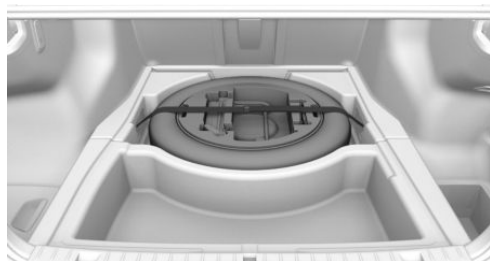
Additionally, regularly check the tyre inflation pressure of the emergency wheel in the boot and correct the pressure if necessary.

Safety note

WARNING

The emergency wheel has special dimensions. When driving with an emergency wheel, the driving properties may change, for example reduced directional stability when braking, longer braking distance and modified self-steering behaviour in the limit range. There is a risk of accident. Drive with care and do not exceed a speed of 80 km/h, 50 mph.

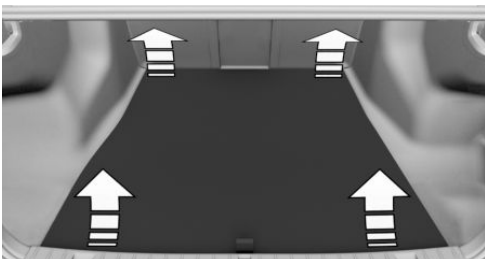
Overview



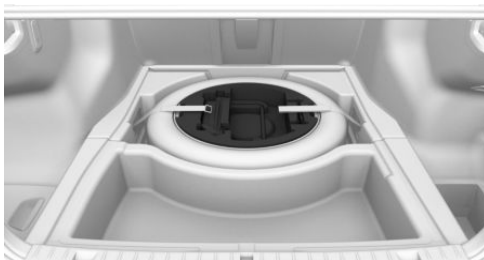
The emergency wheel and the wheel change tools are located in the boot under the floor.

Removing emergency wheel

1. Remove boot floor. To do so, pull the boot floor up directly behind the rear backrests.



2. Open lashing strap.



3. Remove emergency wheel from the storage tray. Do not remove any covers when doing this.

Inserting the emergency wheel

1. Place the emergency wheel in the storage tray.
2. Insert the tool holder.
3. Tie the lashing strap. Make sure that it is seated correctly and firmly.
4. Insert the boot floor.

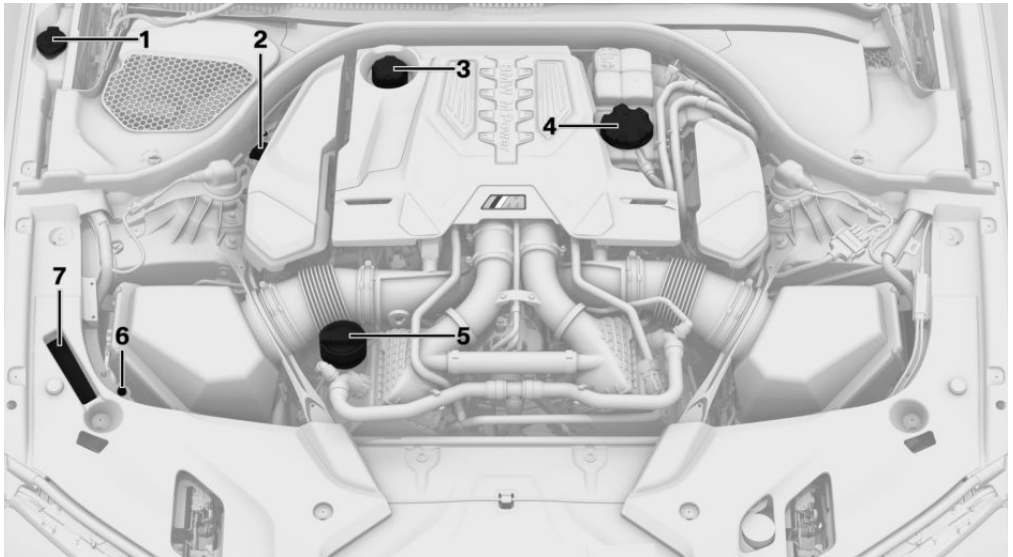
Engine compartment

Vehicle equipment

This chapter describes all standard, country-specific and special equipment available for the model series. It may therefore describe equipment and functions which are not installed in

your vehicle, for example on account of the optional equipment selected or the country variant. This also applies to safety-relevant functions and systems. Please comply with the relevant laws and regulations when using the corresponding functions and systems.

Overview



1 Filler neck for washing fluid	5 Oil filler neck
2 Starting assistance, positive battery terminal	6 Starting assistance, negative battery terminal
3 Charge air coolant tank	7 Vehicle identification number
4 Engine coolant tank	

Bonnet

Safety notes

WARNING

Incorrectly performed work in the engine compartment can damage components and poses a safety risk. There is a risk of accidents or material damage. Have work in the engine compartment undertaken by a Service Partner of the manufacturer or another qualified Service Partner or a specialist workshop.

WARNING

The engine compartment contains moving components. Certain components in the engine compartment can also move when the vehicle is switched off, for example the radiator fan. There is a risk of injury. Do not reach into an area where there are moving parts. Keep articles of clothing and hair away from moving parts.

WARNING

The bonnet has protruding parts on the inside, for example locking hooks. There is a risk of injury. When the bonnet is open, watch out for protruding parts and keep these areas clear.

WARNING

If the bonnet is not correctly locked, it can come open during the journey and impair visibility. There is a risk of accident. Stop immediately and close the bonnet correctly.

WARNING

Parts of the body can become trapped when opening and closing the bonnet. There is a risk of injury. When opening and closing, make sure that the area of movement of the bonnet is kept clear.

NOTE

Wipers that are folded away from the windscreen can become trapped if the bonnet is opened. There is a risk of material damage. Before opening the bonnet, make sure that the wipers, with wiper blades fitted, are in contact with the windscreen.

NOTE

When closing, the bonnet must lock into place on both sides. Applying additional pressure can damage the bonnet. There is a risk of material damage. Open the bonnet again and close it firmly. Avoid applying additional pressure.

Opening

1. Pull the lever, arrow 1.

The bonnet is released.

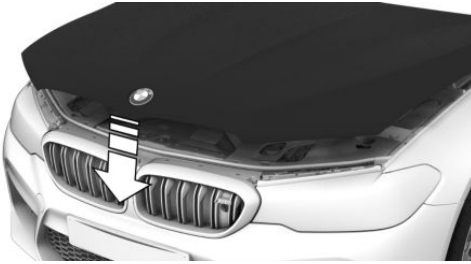


2. After releasing the lever, pull the lever again, arrow 2.

The bonnet is opened.

3. Watch out for any protruding parts of the bonnet.

Closing



Allow the bonnet to drop from a height of approximately 50 cm, 20 in.

The bonnet must engage on both sides.

Operating fluids

Vehicle equipment

This chapter describes all standard, country-specific and special equipment available for the model series. It may therefore describe equipment and functions which are not installed in your vehicle, for example on account of the optional equipment selected or the country variant. This also applies to safety-relevant functions and systems. Please comply with the relevant laws and regulations when using the corresponding functions and systems.

Fuel quality

General

Depending on the region, many filling stations sell fuel that is adapted to winter or summer conditions. Fuel that is sold in winter helps with cold starting, for example.

Petrol

General

For optimal fuel consumption, the petrol should be sulphur-free or have a low sulphur content.

Fuels labelled on the pump as containing metal must not be used.

You can fill up with fuels with a maximum ethanol content of 25 %, for example E10 or E25.



The engine has knock control. This means that different petrol grades can be used.

Safety notes

NOTE

Even small quantities of the wrong fuel or wrong fuel additives can damage the fuel system and engine. In addition, the catalytic converter will be permanently damaged. There is a risk of material damage. Do not use the following fuel or additives with petrol engines:

- ▷ Leaded petrol.
- ▷ Metallic additives, for example manganese or iron.

After filling with the wrong fuel, do not press the start/stop button. Contact a Service Partner of the manufacturer or another qualified Service Partner or a specialist workshop.

NOTE

Incorrect fuels can damage the fuel system and engine. There is a risk of material damage. Do not refuel with fuel with a higher ethanol content than recommended. Do not refuel with fuel containing methanol, for example M5 to M100.

NOTE

Fuel below the specified minimum quality can adversely affect engine function or lead to engine damage. There is a risk of material damage. Do not refuel with petrol below the specified minimum quality.

Petrol grade

The engine is designed to run on petrol to DIN EN 228.

Super Plus, RON 98.

Use this fuel to achieve the nominal performance and consumption figures.

Minimum grade

Super, RON 95.

BMW recommends
Shell Quality Fuels 

Engine oil

General

Engine oil consumption depends on the driving style and operating conditions.

Therefore check the engine oil level regularly each time you fill up with fuel by taking a detailed measurement.

Engine oil consumption may increase due to the following, for example:

- ▷ Dynamic driving style.
- ▷ Running in the engine.
- ▷ Engine idling.
- ▷ Use of engine oil grades rated as unsuitable.

Different Check Control messages are shown on the Control Display, depending on the engine oil level.

Safety notes

NOTE

Too little engine oil causes engine damage. There is a risk of material damage. Top up with engine oil immediately.

NOTE

Too much engine oil can damage the engine or the catalytic converter. There is a risk of material damage. Do not add too much engine oil. If there is too much engine oil, have the engine oil level corrected by a Service Partner of the manufacturer or another qualified Service Partner or a specialist workshop.

Electronic oil measurement

General

Electronic oil measurement uses two measuring methods:

- ▷ Monitoring.
- ▷ Detailed measurement.

When frequently making short trips or using a dynamic driving style, for example taking corners at high speed, perform a detailed measurement at regular intervals.

Monitoring

Principle

The engine oil level is monitored electronically during the journey and can be shown on the Control Display.

If the engine oil level is outside its permissible operating range, a Check Control message is shown.

Operating requirements

A current measurement is available after approximately 30 minutes of normal driving.

Displaying the engine oil level

Via iDrive:

1. "CAR"
2. "Vehicle status"
3.  "Engine oil level"

The engine oil level is displayed.

System limits

When frequently making short trips or using a dynamic driving style, it may not be possible to measure the oil level. In this case, the measurement for the last, sufficiently long journey is displayed.

Detailed measurement

Principle

The engine oil level is checked when the vehicle is stationary and is shown on a scale.

If the engine oil level is outside its permissible operating range, a Check Control message is shown.

General

During measurement, the idle speed is increased slightly.

Operating requirements

- ▶ Vehicle is standing on level ground.
- ▶ Selector lever in selector lever position N or P and accelerator pedal not pressed.
- ▶ Engine is running and is at operating temperature.

Carrying out a detailed measurement

Via iDrive:

1. "CAR"
2. "Vehicle status"
3.  "Engine oil level"
4. "Engine oil level measurement"
5. "Start measurement"

The engine oil level is checked and shown on a scale.

Adding engine oil

General

Do not top up engine oil unless a message is displayed in the instrument cluster. The top-up amount is specified in the message on the Control Display.

Only replenish with suitable types of engine oil.

Safely stop the vehicle and switch off drive-ready state before topping up with engine oil.

Do not add too much engine oil.

Safety notes

WARNING

Service products, for example oils, greases, coolants and fuels, can contain substances that are harmful to health. There is a risk of injury or even death. Please comply with the instructions on the containers. Do not allow service products to come into contact with clothing, skin or eyes. Do not pour service products into other bottles. Keep service products out of the reach of children.

NOTE

Too little engine oil causes engine damage. There is a risk of material damage. Top up with engine oil immediately.

NOTE

Too much engine oil can damage the engine or the catalytic converter. There is a risk of material damage. Do not add too much engine oil. If there is too much engine oil, have the engine oil level corrected by a Service Partner of the manufacturer or another qualified Service Partner or a specialist workshop.

Overview

The oil filler neck is in the engine compartment, see page 337.

Adding engine oil

1. Open the bonnet, see page 338.
2. Turn the cap anticlockwise to open.



3. Add engine oil.
4. Tighten cap.

Engine oil grades for topping up

General

Engine oil quality is a crucial factor determining the lifetime of the engine.

Only replenish with the types of engine oil that are listed.

Some engine oil grades may not be available in all countries.

Safety notes

NOTE

Oil additives can damage the engine. There is a risk of material damage. Do not use oil additives.

NOTE

Using the wrong engine oil can result in engine malfunctions and damage. There is a risk of material damage. When selecting the engine oil, make sure that the engine oil corresponds to the oil specification.

Suitable engine oil grades

Replenish with engine oils with the following oil specifications.

Oil specification

BMW Longlife-04.

BMW Longlife-12 FE.

Alternative engine oil grades

If suitable engine oils are not available, up to 1 litre, 2 pints, of an engine oil with the following oil specification can be used for topping up:

Oil specification

ACEA C2.

ACEA C3.

Viscosity classes

When selecting an engine oil, make sure that the engine oil belongs to one of the following viscosity classes:

Viscosity classes

SAE 0W-30.

SAE 5W-30.

SAE 0W-40.

SAE 5W-40.

Viscosity classes with a high viscosity grade can increase fuel consumption.

Further information on suitable engine oil specifications and viscosity classes can be obtained

from a Service Partner of the manufacturer or another qualified Service Partner or a specialist workshop.

Oil change

NOTE

If the engine oil is not changed at the correct time, engine wear may increase which could cause engine damage. There is a risk of material damage. Do not exceed the service date indicated in the vehicle.

The manufacturer of the vehicle recommends having the engine oil changed by a Service Partner of the manufacturer or another qualified Service Partner or a specialist workshop.

**BMW recommends
Original BMW Engine Oil.**

Coolant

General

Coolant is a mixture of water and an additive.

Not all commercially available additives are suitable for the vehicle. Do not mix additives of different colours. Comply with the 50:50 mixing ratio of water to additive. Information regarding suitable additives is available from a Service Partner of the manufacturer or another qualified Service Partner or a specialist workshop.

Safety notes

WARNING

If the cooling system is opened when the engine is hot, coolant can escape and cause scalding. There is a risk of injury. Only open the cooling system when the engine has cooled down.

WARNING

Additives are harmful to health and using the wrong additives can damage the engine. There is a risk of injury and material damage. Do not allow additives to come into contact with clothing, skin or eyes, and do not swallow them. Only use suitable additives.

Coolant level

General

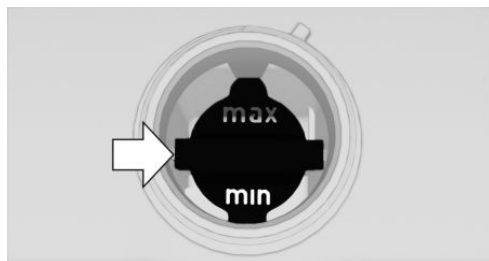
The vehicle has two cooling circuits. Always check the coolant levels of both coolant tanks and top up if necessary.

The coolant level is shown by Min and Max marks in the filler neck of the coolant tank.

To check the coolant level

1. Allow the engine to cool down.
2. Open the bonnet, see page 338.
3. Turn cap on coolant tank slightly anticlockwise, then allow the pressure to escape.
4. Open cap on coolant tank.

- The coolant level is correct if it is between the Min. and Max. marks in the filler neck.



- Tighten cap.

Topping up

- Allow the engine to cool down.
- Open the bonnet, see page 338.
- Turn cap on coolant tank slightly anticlockwise, then allow the pressure to escape.
- Open cap on coolant tank.
- If necessary, slowly top up to the correct level; do not overfill.
- Tighten cap.
- Have the cause of coolant loss rectified as soon as possible.

Disposal



When disposing of coolant and coolant additives, comply with the relevant environmental protection regulations.

Washer fluid

General

All washer jets are supplied from one reservoir.

Use a mixture of tap water and screenwash concentrate for the windscreen washer system, if necessary with the addition of antifreeze.

Recommended minimum fill level: 1 litre, 1.7 Imp. pints.

Safety notes

WARNING

Some antifreezes can contain toxic substances, and are flammable. There is a risk of fire and injury. Please comply with the instructions on the containers. Keep antifreezes away from sources of combustion. Do not pour service products into other bottles. Keep service products out of the reach of children.

WARNING

Washer fluid can ignite on contact with hot parts of the engine and catch fire. There is a risk of injury or material damage. Only top up washer fluid when the engine has cooled down. Then fully close the cap of the washer fluid reservoir.

NOTE

Silicone additives mixed with the washer fluid for their water beading effect on the windows may damage the washer system. There is a risk of material damage. Do not add silicone additives to the washer fluid.

NOTE

Mixing different screenwash concentrates or antifreezes may damage the washer system. There is a risk of material damage. Do not mix different screenwash concentrates or antifreezes. Please comply with the instructions and mixing ratios stated on the containers.

Overview



The reservoir for the washer fluid is located in the engine compartment.

Malfunction

Using undiluted cleaning fluid concentrate or antifreeze based on alcohol may result in false readings at low temperatures below -15 °C/+5 °F.

Maintenance

Vehicle equipment

This chapter describes all standard, country-specific and special equipment available for the model series. It may therefore describe equipment and functions which are not installed in your vehicle, for example on account of the optional equipment selected or the country variant. This also applies to safety-relevant functions and systems. Please comply with the relevant laws and regulations when using the corresponding functions and systems.

BMW Maintenance System

The maintenance system indicates what maintenance measures are required and thereby assists in maintaining the road safety and operational safety of the vehicle.

The exact work required and the maintenance intervals may vary depending on the country variant. Replacement work, spare parts, service products and consumables are calculated separately. Additional information is available from a Service Partner of the manufacturer or another qualified Service Partner or a specialist workshop.

Condition Based Service CBS

Principle

Sensors and special algorithms monitor the conditions in which the vehicle is used. CBS uses this information to determine what maintenance is required.

The system therefore allows the scope of the maintenance work to be adapted to the individual usage profile.

General

Information on service requirements, see page 156, can be shown on the Control Display.

Service data in the vehicle key

Information on maintenance requirements is continuously stored in the vehicle key. The Service Partner can read out this data and suggest a programme of maintenance for your vehicle.

It is therefore important to give the service advisor the vehicle key that was last used to drive the vehicle.

Periods out of use

Periods when the vehicle is out of use with its battery disconnected are not taken into account.

In such cases, have any time-dependent maintenance procedures, for example those concerning the brake fluid and, where applicable, the engine oil and microfilter/activated charcoal filter, updated by a Service Partner of the manufacturer or another qualified Service Partner or a specialist workshop.

Service history

Maintenance and repairs

Have maintenance and repairs carried out by a Service Partner of the manufacturer or another qualified Service Partner or a specialist workshop.

Entries

The maintenance work carried out is entered in the maintenance records and the vehicle data. As with a service booklet, the entries provide evidence of regular maintenance.

If an entry is made in the electronic service history of the vehicle, service-relevant data is saved

both in the vehicle and in the central IT systems of BMW AG, Munich.

The data entered in the electronic service history can also be viewed by the new vehicle owner after a change of vehicle owner. A Service Partner of the manufacturer or another qualified Service Partner or a specialist workshop can view the data entered in the electronic service history.

Objection

The vehicle owner can contact a Service Partner of the manufacturer or another qualified Service Partner or a specialist workshop to lodge an objection to entries being made in the electronic service history and to associated storage in the vehicle and subsequent transfer to the vehicle manufacturer of any data relating to his/her time as the vehicle owner. In such cases, no entries will be made in the electronic service history of the vehicle.

Displays

Maintenance entered is shown on the Control Display, see page 157.

For Australia/New Zealand: maintenance

No maintenance work other than normal maintenance is required to keep the emission levels of your vehicle within the design limits.

Socket for on-board diagnosis OBD

General

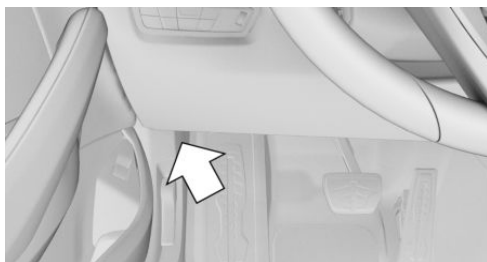
Devices connected to the OBD socket trigger the alarm system when the vehicle is locked. Remove any devices connected to the OBD socket before locking the vehicle.

Safety note

⚠ NOTE

Incorrect use of the OBD on-board diagnosis socket can result in malfunctions in the vehicle. There is a risk of material damage. Only have service and maintenance work involving the OBD on-board diagnosis socket carried out by a Service Partner of the manufacturer or another qualified Service Partner or a specialist workshop or other authorised persons. Only connect devices that have been tested and found to be safe for use with the OBD on-board diagnosis socket.

Position



The OBD socket for checking emissions-relevant components is located on the driver's side.

Engine warning light



- When the warning light flashes:
May have engine failure that may cause damage to the catalyst device. Have the vehicle checked as soon as possible.
- When the warning light illuminates:
High exhaust gas value. Have the vehicle checked as soon as possible.

Vehicle recycling

The manufacturer of the vehicle recommends handing the vehicle in at a take-back point nominated by the manufacturer at the end of its life cycle. The regulations concerning the returning of end-of-life vehicles may vary from country to country. Additional information is available from a Service Partner of the manufacturer or another qualified Service Partner or a specialist workshop.

Replacing parts

Vehicle equipment

This chapter describes all standard, country-specific and special equipment available for the model series. It may therefore describe equipment and functions which are not installed in your vehicle, for example on account of the optional equipment selected or the country variant. This also applies to safety-relevant functions and systems. Please comply with the relevant laws and regulations when using the corresponding functions and systems.

On-board tool kit



The on-board tool kit is located in the left storage compartment of the boot.

Wiper blades

Safety notes

⚠ NOTE

The windscreen may sustain damage if a wiper falls onto it without the wiper blade fitted. There is a risk of material damage. Hold the wiper firmly when changing the wiper blade. Do not fold in or switch on the wiper without a wiper blade installed.

⚠ NOTE

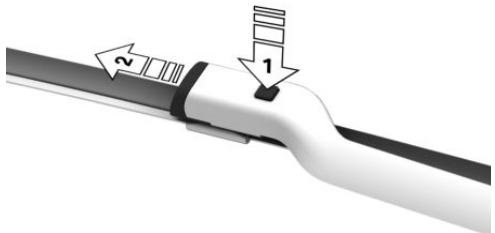
Wipers that are folded away from the windscreen can become trapped if the bonnet is opened. There is a risk of material damage. Before opening the bonnet, make sure that the wipers, with wiper blades fitted, are in contact with the windscreen.

Replacing

1. To replace the wiper blade, move the wiper to the fold-out position, see page 139.
2. Lift the wipers away from the windscreen and hold them securely.



3. Press the button, arrow 1, and pull out wiper blade, arrow 2.



4. Insert the new wiper blade and press into the holder until it engages.
5. Fold in the wipers.

Bulbs and lights

General

Lights and bulbs are an important aspect of driving safety.

Some equipment versions have light-emitting diodes behind a cover as a light source. These light-emitting diodes are similar to conventional lasers and are classified by legislation as Class 1 light-emitting diodes.

In the case of a defect, the manufacturer of the vehicle recommends having respective work carried out by a Service Partner of the manufacturer or another qualified Service Partner or a specialist workshop.

A box of spare bulbs is available from a Service Partner of the manufacturer or another qualified Service Partner or a specialist workshop.

system, including bulb replacement, performed by a Service Partner of the manufacturer or another qualified Service Partner or a specialist workshop.

WARNING

Intense brightness can irritate or harm the retina of the eye. There is a risk of injury. Do not look directly into the headlights or other light sources. Do not remove covers from LEDs.

NOTE

Dirty bulbs have a reduced lifetime. There is a risk of material damage. Do not touch the glass of new bulbs with your bare hands. Use a clean tissue or similar, or hold the bulb by its base.

Safety notes

WARNING

Bulbs can become hot during operation. Contact with the bulbs can lead to burns. There is a risk of injury. Only replace bulbs when they have cooled down.

WARNING

Short circuits can occur when working on lighting systems that are switched on. There is a risk of injury or material damage. Switch the respective lights off when working on the lighting system. Where applicable, observe the enclosed instructions from the bulb manufacturer.

WARNING

Concentrated laser light can cause irritation or lasting damage to the retina of the eye. There is a risk of injury. The manufacturer of your vehicle recommends having work on the lighting

Headlight glass

During cool or humid weather, the headlight glass can mist over on the inside. When driving with the lights switched on, the condensation disappears after a short time. There is no need to replace the headlight glass.

If moisture increasingly forms, for example if there are water droplets in the lamp despite the headlights being switched on, have the headlights checked.

Front lights

Adaptive LED headlights

Comply with the safety notes, see page 351.

All lights use LED technology.

In the event of a fault, contact a Service Partner of the manufacturer or another qualified Service Partner or a specialist workshop.

Rear lights

General

Comply with the safety notes, see page 351.

All rear lights except the two reversing lights in the boot lid are in LED technology.

In the event of a fault, contact a Service Partner of the manufacturer or another qualified Service Partner or a specialist workshop.

Reversing light, replacing the lamps

General

Comply with the safety notes, see page 351.

21 watt bulb, H21W.

Without warning triangle: remove panel

1. Opening of the boot lid.
2. Press the unlocking mechanism, arrow 1, and take off the panel, arrow 2.



With warning triangle: remove bracket

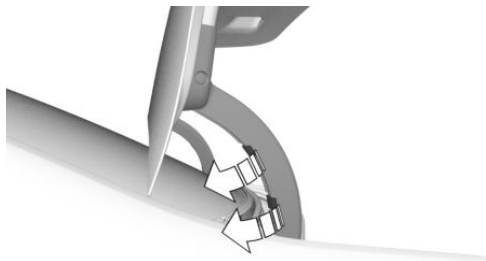
1. Opening of the boot lid.
2. Take out, see page 359, warning triangle.
3. Press in both catches with the screwdriver from the on-board tool kit in the direction of

the arrow, arrow 1, and remove the warning triangle holder, arrow 2.

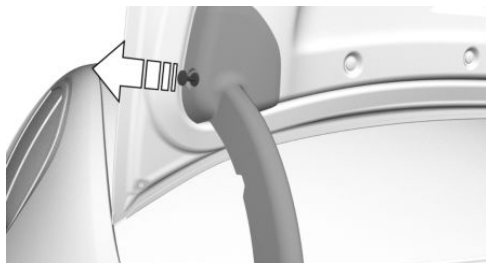


Removing the hinge cover

1. Open the two clips on the hinge cover.



2. At the expander rivet, use the screwdriver to carefully lever out the inner pin by a small amount. Then use the screwdriver to carefully lever out the expander rivet completely.



- Carefully lift the hinge cover from the hinge arm, arrow 1, until the retainer, arrow 2, comes loose behind the lining.



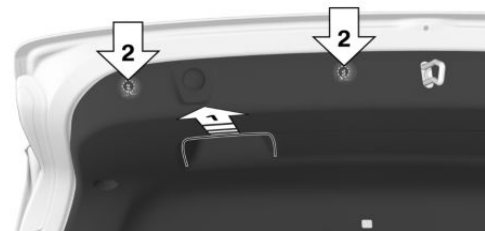
- Pull off the hinge cover downwards.
- Remove the second hinge cover accordingly.

Removing the boot lid lining

- Use the screwdriver to carefully lever out the eight expander rivets. Operate the expander rivets as described above.

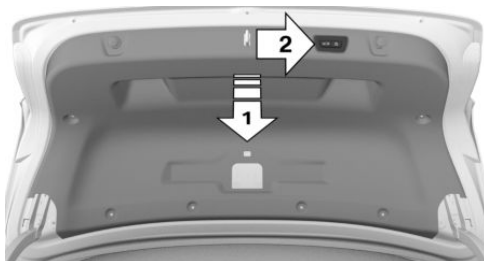


- On one side, reach into the handle recess and carefully pull the boot lid lining towards the back, arrow 1, until the two retainers, arrows 2, come loose behind the boot lid lining.



- Repeat this procedure for the left-hand side.

- Carefully detach the boot lid lining from the boot lid, arrow 1, and, if applicable, pull the cable with connector off the switch unit, arrow 2.



- Take off the boot lid lining.

Replacing the reversing light

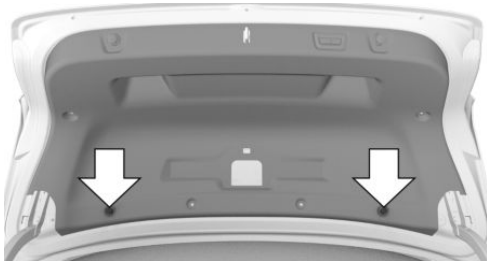
- Turn the bulb holder in the direction indicated on the reflector and pull it out.



- Press the bulb gently into the bulb holder, turn anticlockwise and remove.
- Fit the bulb holder.

Fitting the boot lid lining

1. If applicable, connect the cable to the switch unit. Ensure that the connector engages.
2. Place the boot lid lining at the boot lid and attach with two expander rivets.



3. Press against the boot lid lining, arrows, so that the four retainers snap into place in the boot lid.

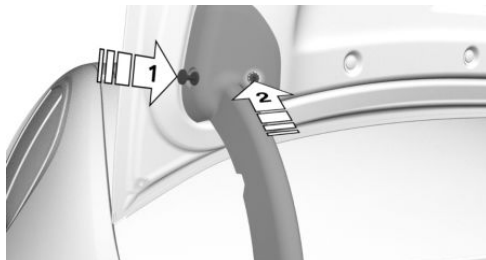


4. Attach the boot lid lining with the remaining expander rivets and press the expander rivets into the pins.
5. On one side, engage the hinge cover on the boot lid lining, arrow 1, fold the hinge cover onto the hinge arm, arrow 2.



6. Secure the hinge cover with the expander rivet, arrow 1, and press onto the hinge cover

so that the retainer engages in the boot lid, arrow 2.



7. Close the clips on the hinge cover.
8. Fit the other second hinge cover accordingly.
9. Secure the bracket for the warning triangle and the warning triangle or fit the panel.

Vehicle battery

General

The battery is maintenance-free.

More information regarding the battery can be obtained from a Service Partner of the manufacturer or another qualified Service Partner or a specialist workshop.

Safety note

WARNING

Vehicle batteries that are classified as unsuitable may damage systems or result in functions no longer being carried out. There is a risk of injury or material damage. Only use vehicle batteries that have been classified as suitable by the vehicle manufacturer.

Registering the battery with the vehicle

The manufacturer of the vehicle recommends having a Service Partner of the manufacturer or another qualified Service Partner or an authorised workshop register the vehicle battery with

the vehicle after the battery has been replaced. Once the battery has been registered again, all comfort functions will be available without restriction and any Check Control messages relating to the comfort functions will no longer be displayed.

Hazard symbols

The following hazard symbols can be found on the vehicle battery:

Symbol	Meaning
	No smoking, no naked flames, no sparks.
	Wear protective goggles.
	Keep away from children.
	Risk of acid burns: wear gloves, do not tilt the battery.
	Rinse any splashes of acid with water immediately. If acid comes into contact with eyes or is swallowed, seek medical attention immediately.
	No direct sunlight, no frost.
	Follow the user manual.
	Explosive gas mixture. Do not seal any openings on the battery.

Replacing the battery

General

The manufacturer of the vehicle recommends only having the vehicle battery replaced by a Service Partner of the manufacturer or another qualified Service Partner or an authorised workshop. If the battery is not replaced correctly, the vehicle may not recognise it properly and perfect functioning cannot be guaranteed.

Safety note

DANGER

Touching live components can result in an electric shock. There is a risk of injury or even death. Do not touch any components that could be live.

Notes on removal

Observe the following notes on removing the vehicle battery:

- ▷ Park the vehicle and switch off consumers.
- ▷ First disconnect the power at the negative terminal. Then disconnect the power at the positive terminal.

Notes on installation

Observe the following notes on installing the vehicle battery:

- ▷ Remove any foreign bodies from the battery holder.
- ▷ Only install the battery in the intended position in the vehicle.
- ▷ Keep the battery and vehicle connection contacts clean.
- ▷ First connect the power at the positive terminal. Then connect the power at the negative terminal.

- ▷ Use the connections, connectors and covers provided.
- ▷ Connect a hose to the gas outlet opening if necessary.

Initial operation

The battery is operational. No special precautions are required for start-up.

Charging the battery

General

Ensure the battery is sufficiently charged to guarantee the entire lifetime of the battery.

Charge the battery under the following circumstances:

- ▷ If the inspection glass on the top of the battery is black.
- ▷ If there is insufficient starting power.

The following conditions can have a negative effect on battery performance:

- ▷ Frequently driving short distances.
- ▷ If the vehicle is not used for periods of longer than one month.

Safety notes

NOTE

Incompatible external battery chargers can damage the vehicle. There is a risk of material damage. Use battery chargers that have been categorised as suitable for the respective vehicle type by the vehicle manufacturer. Observe the maximum charge voltage.

Maximum charge voltage: 14.4 Volt.

NOTE

Battery chargers for the vehicle battery may operate with high voltages and high currents which can overload or damage the 12-volt on-board network. There is a risk of material dam-

age. Only connect battery chargers for the vehicle battery to the jump-starting connections in the engine compartment.

Battery charger

Battery chargers developed especially for the vehicle and suitable for the on-board network can be obtained from a Service Partner of the manufacturer or another qualified Service Partner or a specialist workshop.

Charging the battery

Only charge the battery via the jump-starting connections, see page 363, in the engine compartment and with the engine switched off.

Power failure

Following an electrical power failure, some equipment will have to be reinitialised or individual settings will need to be updated, for example:

- ▷ With memory function: save positions again.
- ▷ Time: update.
- ▷ Date: update.
- ▷ Glass Roof: initialise system.

Storing the battery

Observe the following information on storing vehicle batteries:

- ▷ Store the battery in a cool and dry place.
- ▷ Protect the battery from direct sunlight and frost.
- ▷ Only clean the battery with a damp, anti-static cloth.
- ▷ Store the battery upright and secure it against falling over.
- ▷ Install the oldest batteries first.
- ▷ Do not remove the protective cap from the contacts.
- ▷ Charge or install the battery by the date on the battery label at the latest. Once fully

charged, the battery will work for another 10 months.

Disposing of the old battery



Dispose of old batteries at a Service Partner of the manufacturer or another qualified Service Partner or a specialist workshop or hand them in to an authorised collecting point.

Warranty

See the vehicle purchase contract for information on the battery warranty.

Fuses

General

The fuses are located at different positions in the vehicle.

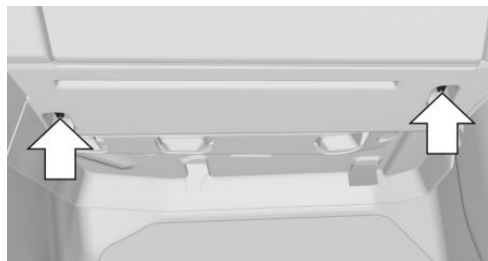
Safety note

WARNING

Incorrect or repaired fuses can overload electrical cables and components. There is a risk of fire. Do not repair blown fuses or replace them with fuses with a different colour or amp rating.

In the interior

The fuses are located in the interior, behind a cover in the front seat passenger footwell.



Undo fastenings, arrow, and open cover.

The fuse box is located at the front right.

Inside the boot

The fuses are located behind a cover on the right-hand side in the boot.



Remove the cover from the right-hand trim panel.

The fuse box may be located behind sound insulation.

Information on the fuse types and locations, as well as the positions of any other fuse boxes, is available on the Internet: www.bmw.com/fuse-card.

Where applicable, information on the fuse types and locations is also found on a separate sheet in the fuse box.

Other fuse boxes

There are other fuse boxes in the vehicle. In the event of a fault, contact a Service Partner of the manufacturer or another qualified Service Partner or a specialist workshop.

Replacing fuses

The vehicle manufacturer recommends having fuses changed by a Service Partner of the manufacturer or another qualified Service Partner or a specialist workshop.

Help in case of a breakdown

Vehicle equipment

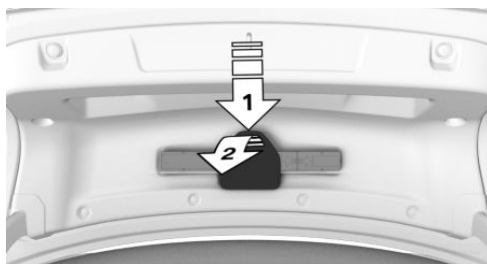
This chapter describes all standard, country-specific and special equipment available for the model series. It may therefore describe equipment and functions which are not installed in your vehicle, for example on account of the optional equipment selected or the country variant. This also applies to safety-relevant functions and systems. Please comply with the relevant laws and regulations when using the corresponding functions and systems.

Hazard warning lights



The button is located in the centre console.

Warning triangle



The warning triangle is located inside the boot lid.

Press the release catch, arrow 1, and swivel the cover down, arrow 2.

First-aid kit

General

Some items in the kit have a limited shelf life.

Check the use-by dates of the contents regularly and replace any items that have expired in good time.

Storage

The first-aid kit is located in the net on the left side of the boot.

BMW Emergency Service

Principle

BMW Group breakdown assistance can be contacted if you require help in the event of a breakdown.

General

In the case of a breakdown, data on the vehicle condition can be transferred to the BMW breakdown assistance. It is possible that malfunctions can be remedied directly.

There are various ways of contacting BMW breakdown assistance.

- ▷ Via a Check Control message, see page [150](#).
- ▷ Calling with a mobile phone.
- ▷ Via the BMW Connected app.

Operating requirements

- ▷ Activated ConnectedDrive contract, equipment with intelligent emergency call or BMW ConnectedDrive services.
- ▷ Mobile reception.
- ▷ Standby state is switched on.

Starting manually

When equipped with Teleservice, support is provided first through Teleservice Diagnosis and then by Teleservice Assistance.

Via iDrive:

1. "APPS"
 2. "Installed apps"
 3. "BMW Assistance"
 4. If applicable, "BMW Roadside Assistance"
- A voice connection is established.

Teleservice Diagnosis

Teleservice Diagnosis enables the detailed vehicle data required for diagnosis to be transferred via mobile communications. This data is transferred automatically. It may be necessary to approve this on the Control Display.

Teleservice Assistance

Teleservice Assistance is a country-specific feature that allows BMW breakdown assistance to carry out a more in-depth diagnosis of the vehicle via mobile communications.

Teleservice Assistance can be started after a request by BMW breakdown assistance.

1. Park the vehicle safely.
2. Apply the parking brake.
3. Control Display is switched on.
4. Confirm Teleservice Assistance.

BMW Accident Assistance

Principle

BMW Group Accident Assistance can be contacted if help is required in the event of an accident.

General

If the vehicle sensors detect a minor to moderately severe accident, which did not trigger any airbags, a Check Control message is displayed in the instrument cluster. A corresponding text message also appears on the Control Display.

When BMW Accident Assistance is activated, data on the vehicle condition is transferred to BMW.

Operating requirements

- ▷ Activated ConnectedDrive contract, equipment with intelligent emergency call or BMW ConnectedDrive services.
- ▷ Mobile reception.
- ▷ Standby state is switched on.

Starting BMW Accident Assistance

If an accident is detected automatically

A text message prompting the driver to call BMW Accident Assistance is shown on the Control Display.

The connection can be established directly:
"Call BMW Accident Assistance"

The Check Control message for BMW Accident Assistance can also be called up from the saved Check Control messages, see page 150, for a certain length of time.

Starting manually

BMW Accident Assistance can also be contacted independently of the automatic accident detection function.

Via iDrive:

1. "APPS"
2. "Installed apps"
3. "BMW Assistance"
4. "Call BMW Accident Assistance"

Follow the displays on the Control Display. A voice connection is established.

Emergency call

Intelligent emergency call

Principle

The system can be used to trigger an emergency call automatically or manually in emergency situations.

General

Press the SOS button in an emergency only.

The intelligent emergency call system establishes a connection with the BMW emergency call centre.

Even if no emergency call through BMW is possible, in some cases an emergency call may still be established to a public emergency call number. This depends on factors such as the specific mobile telephone network and national regulations.

For technical reasons, it might not be possible to make an emergency call in highly adverse conditions.

Overview



SOS button.

Operating requirements

- ▷ Standby state is switched on.
- ▷ Emergency call system is functional.
- ▷ If the vehicle is equipped with intelligent emergency call: the SIM card integrated in the vehicle is activated.

Automatic triggering

In certain circumstances, for example deployment of the airbags, an emergency call may be placed automatically immediately after an accident of corresponding severity. An automatic emergency call is not affected by pressing the SOS button.

Manual triggering

1. Tap on cover flap.
 2. Press and hold the SOS button until the LED in the button area is illuminated green.
- ▷ The LED is illuminated green when the emergency call has been activated.
- If a cancellation request is displayed on the Control Display, the emergency call can be cancelled.
- If the situation permits, wait in the vehicle until voice contact has been established.
- ▷ The LED flashes green when the connection to the emergency number has been established.

When an emergency call is sent via BMW, data is sent to the emergency call centre in order to decide what rescue measures are required. The data may include, for example, the current position of the vehicle, if this can be determined.

If questions posed by the emergency call centre remain unanswered, rescue measures are implemented automatically.

Even if the vehicle occupants can no longer hear the emergency call centre through the loudspeakers, the emergency call centre may still be able to hear the vehicle occupants speak.

The emergency call centre ends the emergency call.

- ▷ Do not inhale the extinguishing agent. If the extinguishing agent is inhaled, move the casualty out into the fresh air. If the casualty experiences breathing difficulties, contact a doctor immediately.
- ▷ Do not allow the extinguishing agent to come into contact with the skin. Prolonged contact with the extinguishing agent can cause the skin to dry out.
- ▷ Do not allow the extinguishing agent to come into contact with the eyes. If it does come into contact with the eyes, rinse them immediately with plenty of water. In case of prolonged discomfort, contact a doctor.

Fire extinguisher

Principle

The fire extinguisher can be used to put out vehicle fires.

General

Depending on the vehicle's equipment and the country variant, the vehicle may have a fire extinguisher.

Overview

The fire extinguisher is located at the front of the front passenger seat.

Safety note

WARNING

Incorrect use of the fire extinguisher can cause injury. There is a risk of injury. Observe the information below when using the fire extinguisher:

Removing the fire extinguisher

Open the buckles on the retaining strap.

Using the fire extinguisher

To use the fire extinguisher, follow the manufacturer's instructions on the fire extinguisher and the information supplied with it.

Stowing the fire extinguisher

1. Insert the fire extinguisher into the holder.
2. Hook in and close the buckles.

Maintenance and refilling

Have the fire extinguisher checked every 2 years by a Service Partner of the manufacturer or another qualified Service Partner or a specialist workshop.

Take note of the next maintenance date for the fire extinguisher.

Replace the fire extinguisher after use or have it refilled.

Starting assistance

General

If the vehicle battery is discharged, the engine can be started from another vehicle's battery using two jump leads. Only use jump leads with fully insulated terminal clamps.

Safety notes

DANGER

Touching live components can result in an electric shock. There is a risk of injury or even death. Do not touch any components that could be live.

WARNING

Connecting the jump leads in the wrong sequence can cause sparks. There is a risk of injury. Please comply with the correct sequence when connecting.

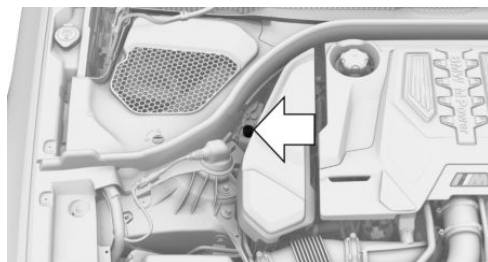
NOTE

Contact between the bodywork of the two vehicles can result in a short circuit during starting assistance. There is a risk of material damage. Make sure there is no contact between the bodywork.

Preparations

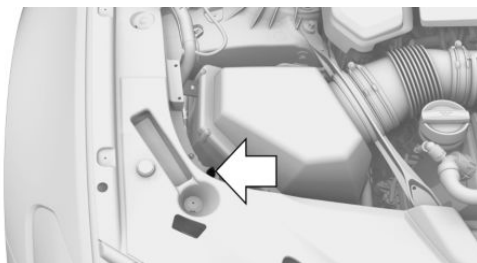
1. Check whether the battery in the other vehicle shows 12 volts. Information about the voltage is provided on the battery.
2. Switch off the engine of the other vehicle.
3. Switch off any power consumers in both vehicles.

Jump-starting connections



The jump-starting connection in the engine compartment serves as the positive battery terminal.

Open the cover of the jump-starting connection.



A special nut is used as the battery negative terminal.

Connecting the cables

Before starting, switch off all unnecessary power consumers, for example the radio, on both vehicles.

1. Open the cover of the jump-starting connection.
2. Connect a terminal clamp on the positive/+ jump lead to the positive terminal of the battery or the corresponding jump-starting connection on the other vehicle.
3. Connect the second terminal clamp to the battery's positive terminal or to the corresponding jump-starting connection on the vehicle being started.

4. Connect a terminal clamp on the negative/– jump lead to the negative terminal of the battery or the corresponding engine or body earth connection on the other vehicle.
5. Connect the second terminal clamp to the negative terminal of the battery or to a corresponding engine or body earth connection on the vehicle being started.

Starting the engine

Never use spray products to start the engine.

1. Start the engine of the other vehicle and allow it to run for a few minutes at a slightly higher idle speed.
2. Start the engine of the vehicle to be started in the usual way.
If an initial attempt to start the engine fails, wait a few minutes before trying again to allow the discharged battery to recharge.
3. Allow both engines to run for a few minutes.
4. Disconnect the jump leads in reverse order to connection.

Check the battery and have it recharged if necessary.

Tow-starting and towing

Safety note

WARNING

Due to system limitations, individual functions may not work properly when tow-starting/ towing with activated Intelligent Safety Systems. There is a risk of accident. Switch off all Intelligent Safety Systems before tow-starting/ towing.

Transporting the vehicle

General

Do not have the vehicle towed.

Safety notes

NOTE

If the vehicle is towed with one axle raised, the vehicle can be damaged. There is a risk of material damage. Only have the vehicle transported on a truck bed.

NOTE

The vehicle may be damaged when raising and securing it.

There is a risk of material damage.

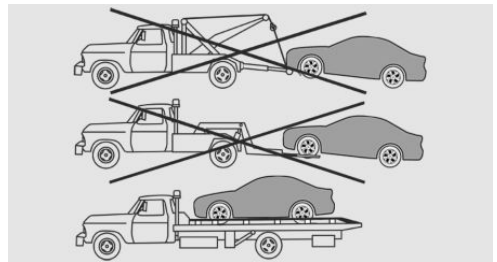
- ▷ Raise the vehicle with suitable equipment.
- ▷ Do not raise or secure the vehicle by its towing eye, body parts or chassis parts.

Pushing the vehicle

To remove a broken-down vehicle from danger, it can be pushed for a short distance.

To roll or push the vehicle, see page [141](#).

Towing truck



Only have the vehicle transported on a truck bed.

Towing other vehicles

General

Switch on the hazard warning lights in line with local regulations.

If the electrical system of the vehicle being towed has failed, the vehicle must be made identifiable to other road users, for instance by placing a sign or the warning triangle in the rear window.

Safety notes

WARNING

If the gross vehicle weight of the towing vehicle is less than that of the vehicle being towed, the towing eye may be pulled off or it may not be possible to control the vehicle. There is a risk of accident. Make sure that the gross vehicle weight of the towing vehicle is greater than the weight of the vehicle being towed.

NOTE

If the tow bar or the towing rope is not attached correctly, other vehicle parts can be damaged. There is a risk of material damage. Attach the tow bar or towing rope to the towing eye correctly.

Tow bar

The towing eyes of both vehicles should be on the same side.

If it is impossible to avoid attaching the tow bar at an angle, note the following:

- ▶ Tow bar clearance may be limited when cornering.
- ▶ The tow bar will generate lateral forces if it is attached at an angle.

Towing rope

Note the following if using a towing rope:

- ▶ Use nylon ropes or straps that will allow the vehicle to be towed smoothly.
- ▶ Fasten the towing rope so it is not twisted.
- ▶ Check the towing eye and towing rope fastening regularly.
- ▶ Do not exceed a towing speed of 50 km/h, 30 mph.
- ▶ Do not exceed a towing distance of 5 km, 3 miles.
- ▶ Ensure that the towing rope is taut when the towing vehicle drives off.

Towing eye

General



Always keep the screw-on towing eye in the vehicle.

The towing eye can be screwed into the front or rear end of the vehicle.

The towing eye is located in the on-board tool kit, see page 350.

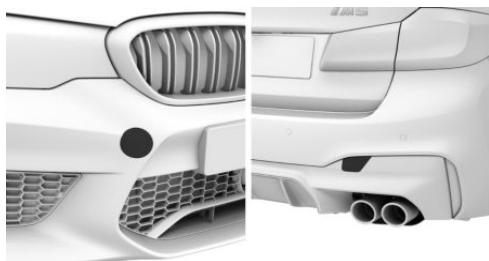
- ▶ Only use the towing eye supplied with the vehicle and make sure that it is screwed in fully and is tight.
- ▶ Only use the towing eye for towing on paved roads.
- ▶ Avoid transverse loads on the towing eye, for example do not raise the vehicle by the towing eye.

Safety note

NOTE

If the towing eye is not used as intended, the vehicle or towing eye may be damaged. There is a risk of material damage. Observe the notes on using the towing eye.

Thread for towing eye



Press the marking on the edge of the cover to push it out.

Tow-starting

Do not attempt to tow-start the vehicle.

If necessary, start the engine using starting assistance, see page [363](#).

Have the cause of the starting problems rectified by a Service Partner of the manufacturer or another qualified Service Partner or a specialist workshop.

General care

Vehicle equipment

This chapter describes all standard, country-specific and special equipment available for the model series. It may therefore describe equipment and functions which are not installed in your vehicle, for example on account of the optional equipment selected or the country variant. This also applies to safety-relevant functions and systems. Please comply with the relevant laws and regulations when using the corresponding functions and systems.

Washing the vehicle

General

Regularly remove foreign bodies, for example leaves, from the area below the windscreen with the bonnet raised.

Wash the vehicle frequently, especially in winter. Heavy soiling and road salt can cause damage to the vehicle.

Steam-jet cleaners and high-pressure cleaners

Safety note

NOTE

When cleaning with high-pressure cleaners, excessive pressure or excessive temperatures can damage various components. There is a risk of material damage. Maintain a sufficient distance and do not spray for an extended period of time. Comply with the instructions for the high-pressure cleaner.

Distances and temperature

- ▷ Maximum temperature: 60 °C/140 °F.
- ▷ Minimum distance to sensors, cameras, seals: 30 cm, 12 in.
- ▷ Minimum distance to the Glass Roof: 80 cm, 31.5 in.

Automatic car washes

Safety note

NOTE

The vehicle can be damaged if automatic washing bays or car washes are used incorrectly. There is a risk of material damage. Observe the following notes:

- ▷ Textile car washes or systems using soft brushes are preferable, to avoid damage to the paintwork.
- ▷ Avoid washing bays or car washes with guide rails higher than 10 cm, 4 in, to avoid damage to the body.
- ▷ Note the maximum tyre width of the guide rail to avoid damage to tyres and rims.
- ▷ Fold in the exterior mirrors to avoid damaging them.
- ▷ Deactivate the wipers and the rain sensor (if fitted) to avoid damage to the wiper system.

Entering a car wash with an M Steptronic sport transmission

Safety note

NOTE

Selector lever position P is automatically engaged when standby state is switched off. There is a risk of material damage. Do not switch off standby state in car washes.

General

In a car wash, the vehicle must be able to roll freely.

To roll or push the vehicle, see page 141.

Some car washes require you to get out of the vehicle. It is not possible to lock the vehicle from the outside in selector lever position N. If an attempt is made to lock the vehicle, a signal sounds.

Exiting from a car wash

Make sure that the vehicle key is in the vehicle. Switch on drive-ready state, see page 38.

Headlights

Do not rub wet headlights dry and do not use abrasive or corrosive cleaning agents.

Soak impurities such as insect residues with shampoo and wash off with water.

Remove ice with a de-icer spray; do not use an ice scraper.

After washing the vehicle

After the vehicle has been washed, briefly apply the brakes to dry them, otherwise braking effectiveness may be temporarily reduced. The heat generated by braking dries the brake discs and brake pads and protects them against corrosion.

Completely remove residues on the windscreens to avoid affecting visibility due to smearing and to reduce wiping noise and wiper blade wear.

Vehicle care

Care products

General

BMW recommends using care and cleaning products from BMW. Suitable care products are available from a Service Partner of the manufacturer or another qualified Service Partner or a specialist workshop.

Safety note

WARNING

Cleaning agents can contain hazardous substances or constitute a health risk. There is a risk of injury. When cleaning the interior, open the doors or windows. Use only products that are intended for cleaning the vehicle's interior. Observe the notes on the packaging.

Vehicle paintwork

General

Regular care promotes driving safety and preserves your vehicle's value. Environmental effects in areas with high air pollution or natural contaminants, for example tree resin or pollen, may affect the vehicle paintwork. Take such factors into consideration when deciding on the frequency and scope of vehicle care measures.

Immediately remove aggressive substances, for example spilled fuel, oil, grease or bird droppings so as to prevent damage and discolouration of the paintwork.

Matt paintwork

Only use cleaning and care products that are suitable for vehicles with matt paintwork.

Leather care

Remove dust from the leather at regular intervals with a cloth or vacuum cleaner.

Dust and road dirt will otherwise become worked into pores and folds, resulting in considerable abrasion and causing the leather surface to become prematurely brittle.

In order to protect against discolouration, for example from clothing, clean and care for the leather approximately every two months.

Clean light-coloured leather more frequently as it has the tendency to soil faster.

Use leather cleaner, otherwise dirt and grease will attack the protective coating of the leather.

Care of upholstery fabrics

General

Regularly clean the upholstery with a vacuum cleaner.

In the event of heavy soiling, for example stains caused by drinks, use a soft sponge or a lint-free microfibre cloth with suitable interior cleaning agents.

Clean the upholstery up to the seams using wide wiping actions. Avoid rubbing vigorously.

Safety note



NOTE

Open Velcro fasteners on articles of clothing can damage the seat covers. There is a risk of material damage. Make sure that any Velcro fasteners on your clothing are closed.

Care of special parts

Light alloy wheels

When cleaning the wheels while they are installed on the vehicle, only use neutral rim cleaner with a pH value of between 5 and 9. Do not use abrasive cleaners or steam cleaners above 60 °C/140 °F. Observe the manufacturer's instructions.

Corrosive, acidic or alkaline cleaners may destroy the protective coatings of adjacent parts, for example brake discs.

After cleaning, briefly apply the brakes to dry them. The heat generated by braking dries the brake discs and brake pads and protects them against corrosion.

Chrome surfaces

Chrome-like surfaces should be cleaned carefully with plenty of water, particularly if affected by road salt, if necessary with added car shampoo.

Rubber parts

The surfaces of rubber parts can be contaminated or lose their shine due to environmental influences. Only use water and suitable care products for cleaning.

Rubber parts subjected to high wear and tear should be treated regularly with rubber care products. Do not use silicone-based care products for treating rubber seals, otherwise these could be damaged and become a source of noise.

Fine wood parts

Clean fine wood trims and fine wood parts with a damp cloth only. Then dry them with a soft cloth.

Kenaf

Treat parts made from kenaf fibres with a suitable care product only.

Plastic parts

NOTE

Cleaning agents containing alcohol or solvents, such as nitro thinners, cold cleaners, fuel or similar can damage plastic parts. There is a risk of material damage. Clean with a microfibre cloth. Lightly moisten the cloth with water, if necessary.

Clean with a microfibre cloth.

Lightly moisten the cloth with water, if necessary.

Do not soak the roof lining.

Seat belts

WARNING

Chemical cleaners can cause irreparable damage to the fabric of the seat belts. The protective function of the seat belts will be lost. There is a risk of injury or even death. Only use a mild soap and water solution for cleaning the seat belts.

Dirt on the belt straps can interfere with the action of the reel and is a safety hazard.

Only clean the belt straps with a mild soap solution while still fitted to the vehicle.

Do not allow seat belts to retract until they are dry.

Carpets and foot mats

WARNING

Objects in the driver's footwell can restrict the pedal travel or block a pedal that has been pressed. There is a risk of accident. Stow items in the vehicle so that they are secure and cannot get into the driver's footwell. Only use floor mats that are suitable for the vehicle and can be securely fastened to the floor. Do not use loose floor mats, and do not place several floor

mats on top of one another. Make sure that there is sufficient space for the pedals. Ensure that floor mats are securely reattached after removal, for example for cleaning.

Floor mats can be removed from the vehicle to enable the interior to be cleaned more thoroughly.

In the event of heavy soiling, clean floor carpets using a microfibre cloth and water or textile cleaner. Rub back and forth in the direction of travel to prevent matting.

Sensors and camera lenses

Clean sensors or camera lenses using a cloth moistened with a small amount of glass cleaner.

Displays, screens and protective glass of the Head-Up Display

NOTE

Chemical cleaners, moisture or fluids of all kinds can damage the surface of displays and screens. There is a risk of material damage. Clean with a clean, anti-static microfibre cloth.

NOTE

Incorrect cleaning can damage the surfaces of displays. There is a risk of material damage. Avoid applying excessive pressure and do not use abrasive materials.

Clean with a clean, anti-static microfibre cloth.

Clean the protective glass of the Head-Up Display with a microfibre cloth and commercially available dishwashing liquid.

Laying up the vehicle

Special measures need to be taken if putting the vehicle out of use for longer than three months. Additional information is available from a Service

Partner of the manufacturer or another qualified
Service Partner or a specialist workshop.

Technical data

Vehicle equipment

This chapter describes all standard, country-specific and special equipment available for the model series. It may therefore describe equipment and functions which are not installed in

your vehicle, for example on account of the optional equipment selected or the country variant. This also applies to safety-relevant functions and systems. Please comply with the relevant laws and regulations when using the corresponding functions and systems.

General

The technical data and specifications in the Owner's Handbook are reference figures. Data relating to a specific vehicle can deviate from this, for example, due to selected special equipment, country variants or country-specific measurement methods. Detailed values can be found in the permit documents, on information plates

on the vehicle or can be requested from a Service Partner of the manufacturer or another qualified Service Partner or a specialist workshop. The information in the vehicle documents always takes precedence over the information in the Owner's Handbook.

Dimensions

Dimensions can vary depending on the model version, equipment or country-specific measurement method. The heights specified do not take into account add-on parts such as a roof aerial, roof railing or

spoiler. The heights can deviate, for example, due to selected special equipment, tyres, loads and suspension design.

BMW M5		
Width with mirrors	mm (in)	2126 (83.7)
Width without mirrors	mm (in)	1903 (74.9)
Height	mm (in)	1473 (58)
Length	mm (in)	4966 (195.5)
Wheelbase	mm (in)	2982 (117.4)
Smallest turning circle dia.	m (ft)	12.6 (41.3)

Weights

BMW M5

Kerb weight ready for road, with 75 kg, 165 lb, load, tank 90 % full, no optional extras	kg (lb)	1950 (4299)
Permitted gross weight	kg (lb)	2440 (5379)
Load	kg (lb)	565 (1246)
Front axle load limit	kg (lb)	1215 (2679)
Rear axle load limit	kg (lb)	1260 (2778)
Roof load	kg (lb)	100 (220)

Towing a trailer

BMW M5

Towing loads according to EU operating permit. Consult a Service Partner of the manufacturer or another qualified Service Partner or a specialist workshop about options for increasing the loads.

Unbraked	kg (lb)	750 (1653)
With brake on upward gradient up to 12 %	kg (lb)	2000 (4409)
With brake on upward gradient up to 8 %	kg (lb)	2000 (4409)
Maximum trailer nose weight	kg (lb)	90 (198)
Minimum trailer nose weight	kg (lb)	25 (55)
Rear axle load limit	kg (lb)	1420 (3131)
Permitted gross weight	kg (lb)	2530 (5578)

Filling capacities

BMW M5

Fuel tank, approximately.	Litres (gal)	68.0 (15.0)

Observe the additional information on fuel quality, see page [340](#).

Appendix

General

Here is where any updates to the Owner's Handbook for the vehicle are listed.

Updates after going to press

After the copy deadline for the Integrated Owner's Handbook in the vehicle, the following chapters were updated in the printed Owner's Handbook:

- ▷ Notes: vehicle identification number: type plate.
- ▷ Notes: vehicle identification number: wind-screen.
- ▷ Operation: safety: Lane Departure Warning: warning function.
- ▷ Driving hints: observe when driving: driving on a race track.
- ▷ Mobility: wheels and tyres: changing wheels and tyres: changing run-flat tyres.

Everything from A to Z

Index

A

- A/C button, see Cooling function [264](#)
- ABS, anti-lock braking system [212](#)
- Acceleration assistant, see Launch Control [145](#)
- Accessories and parts [9](#)
- Accident Assistance [360](#)
- Accident prevention, see Active Protection [209](#)
- ACC, see Active Cruise Control [224](#)
- Activated carbon filter [266](#)
- Activation, airbags [177](#)
- Activation, towing a trailer [307](#)
- Active bonnet, see Active pedestrian protection [178](#)
- Active Cruise Control with Stop&Go function ACC [224](#)
- Active Guard Plus, see Intelligent Safety [179](#)
- Active Guard, see Intelligent Safety [179](#)
- Active M differential [218](#)
- Active PDC, see Emergency braking function [239](#)
- Active pedestrian protection [178](#)
- Active Protection [209](#)
- Active seat ventilation [116](#)
- Active shock absorber adjustment, see Adaptive M suspension [260](#)
- Adaptive brake assist [212](#)
- Adaptive brake light, see Dynamic brake lights [209](#)
- Adaptive Headlights [169](#)
- Adaptive M suspension [260](#)
- Additives, engine oil grades [343](#)
- Age of tyres [317](#)
- Airbags [175](#)
- Airbags, indicator/warning lamp [176](#)
- Airbag switch, see Key switch [177](#)
- Air conditioning [262](#)
- Air distribution, manual [266](#)
- Air flow, automatic air conditioning [265](#)
- Air outlets, see Ventilation [267](#)
- Air pressure, tyres [314](#)
- Air quality [262](#)
- Alarm, false [97](#)
- Alarm system [96](#)
- All-season tyres, see Winter tyres [318](#)
- Alternating-code hand-held transmitter [278](#)
- Amazon Alexa Car Integration [51](#)
- Ambient Air Package [272](#)
- Ambient lighting [173](#)
- Angle, backrest [104](#)
- Animal recognition, see Night Vision [190](#)
- Antifreeze protection, see Washer fluid [345](#)
- Antifreeze, see Washer fluid [345](#)
- Anti-lock braking system, ABS [212](#)
- Anti-theft alarm system, see Alarm system [96](#)
- Anti-theft system, locking [79](#)
- Anti-theft system, see Thiefproof wheel studs [333](#)
- Anti-theft, wheel studs [333](#)
- Anti-trap mechanism, Glass Roof [101](#)
- Anti-trap mechanism, windows [98](#)
- Apple CarPlay preparation, connection to vehicle [74](#)
- Apps, see Owner's Handbook for Navigation, Entertainment, Communication [6](#)
- Aquaplaning [300](#)
- Ashtray [280](#)
- Attention camera for driver, see Driver Attention Camera [63](#)
- Attentiveness assistant [210](#)
- AUC automatic air recirculation control AUC [265](#)
- Audio, see Owner's Handbook for Navigation, Entertainment, Communication [6](#)
- AUTO H button, see Parking brake [133](#)
- Automatic activation, see Individual activation [116](#)
- Automatic air conditioning [262](#)
- Automatic air recirculation control AUC [265](#)
- Automatic anti-glare control, see High-beam assistance [170](#)

Automatic car wash [367](#)
Automatic driving lights control [167](#)
Automatic Hold, see Parking brake [133](#)
Automatic locking [95](#)
Automatic parking [251](#)
Automatic parking function, exterior mirror [112](#)
Automatic start-stop function [130](#)
Automatic transmission, see M Steptronic sport transmission [139](#)
Automatic unlocking [95](#)
Automating habits [53](#)
AUTO programme, automatic air conditioning [264](#)
AUTO programme, intensity [265](#)
Auto Start Stop function [130](#)
Average consumption, see Journey data [161](#)
Avoidance assistant [185](#)
Avoiding false alarms [97](#)
Axle load limit [373](#)
Axle loads, weight [373](#)

B

Backrest angle [104](#)
Backrest contour, see Lumbar support [105](#)
Backrest, seats [103](#)
Backrest width [105](#)
Bag holders [291](#)
Ball linkage electrically swivellable [308](#)
Bar for tow-starting/towing [365](#)
Battery changing, vehicle key [81](#)
Battery, disposing of [357](#)
Battery, vehicle [354](#)
Belts, see Seat belts [105](#)
Black ice, see Outside temperature warning [154](#)
Blower, see Air flow [265](#)
Bluetooth connection [71](#)
Blu-ray, see Owner's Handbook for Navigation, Entertainment, Communication [6](#)
BMW display key [82](#)
BMW display key, malfunction [86](#)
BMW Gesture Control [54](#)
BMW Intelligent Personal Assistant [52](#)
BMW Maintenance System [347](#)
BMW M Technology [296](#)

BMW Services, see Owner's Handbook for Navigation, Entertainment, Communication [6](#)
Bonnet [338](#)
Boot [290](#)
Boot, extending [292](#)
Boot lid [92](#)
Boot lid contactless opening and closing [90](#)
Boot lid, emergency release [94](#)
Boot lid, vehicle key [80](#)
Boot with emergency wheel, expanding [293](#)
Bottle holder, see Cupholder [288](#)
Brake assist [212](#)
Brake assist, adaptive [212](#)
Brake discs, see Brake system [298](#)
Brake lights, adaptive, see Dynamic brake lights [209](#)
Brake lights, dynamic [209](#)
Brake pads, see Brake system [298](#)
Brake system [298](#)
Braking, notes [300](#)
Braking safely [300](#)
Breakdown assistance [359](#)
Breakdown, help [359](#)
Break recommendations, see Attentiveness assistant [210](#)
Brightness, Control Display [64](#)
Bulbs and lights [351](#)
Buttons on the steering wheel [32](#)
Button SOS, see Intelligent emergency call [361](#)
Button, start/stop [130](#)

C

Camera-based assistance systems, see Intelligent Safety [179](#)
Camera lenses, care [370](#)
Camera, rear-view camera, without Surround View [241](#)
Camera, see Surround View [244](#)
CANCEL button, see Active Cruise Control [224](#)
CANCEL button, see Cruise Control [221](#)
Can holder, see Cupholder [288](#)
Carbon ceramic brakes [296](#)
Care, Head-Up Display [370](#)
Care of displays, screens [370](#)
Care of upholstery fabrics [369](#)

- Care products [368](#)
Care, see Vehicle wash [367](#)
Care, vehicle [368](#)
Caring Car [53](#)
Car key, see Vehicle key [78](#)
Carpet, care [370](#)
CarPlay, connection to vehicle [74](#)
Carrying children [117](#)
Carrying children safely [117](#)
Cartridge change, see Ambient Air Package [272](#)
Car wash [367](#)
Car washes [367](#)
Catalytic converter, see Hot exhaust system [299](#)
CBS Condition Based Service [347](#)
Central key, see Vehicle key [78](#)
Central locking system [87](#)
Central screen, see Control Display [43](#)
Centre armrest [288](#)
Centre armrest, front [288](#)
Centre console [34](#)
Ceramic brakes [296](#)
Changes, technical, see Your own safety [8](#)
Changing bulbs, see Lights and bulbs [351](#)
Changing gear [143](#)
Changing gear, M Steptronic sport transmission [139](#)
Changing tyres [317](#)
Changing wheels [317](#)
Changing wheels/tyres [317](#)
Charging a smartphone, see Wireless charging dock [283](#)
Charging dock for smartphones, see Wireless charging dock [283](#)
Chassis number, see Vehicle identification number [12](#)
Check Control [149](#)
Child locks [128](#)
Child restraint systems, i-Size [120](#)
Child restraint systems, see Carrying children safely [117](#)
Child seat classes, see ISOFIX child restraint systems [120](#)
Child seat mounting [118](#)
Child seat mountings, ISOFIX [120](#)
Child seats, see Carrying children safely [117](#)
Chrome-plated surfaces, care [369](#)
Chrome surfaces, care [369](#)
Cigarette lighter [280](#)
Cleaning, Head-Up Display [370](#)
Cleaning of displays, screens [370](#)
Closing during rain, see Closing the Glass Roof automatically [95](#)
Closing the Glass Roof automatically [95](#)
Coat hooks [289](#)
Comfort Access [88](#)
Comfort closing, vehicle key [80](#)
Comfort opening, vehicle key [79](#)
Communication, see Owner's Handbook for Navigation, Entertainment, Communication [6](#)
Compact wheel, see Emergency wheel [335](#)
Compatible devices, see Suitable devices [71](#)
Compound brakes [296](#)
Compressor [320](#)
Concierge Service, see Owner's Handbook for Navigation, Entertainment, Communication [6](#)
Condensation when vehicle is parked [301](#)
Condensation, windscreen [266](#)
Condition Based Service CBS [347](#)
Connected Command [53](#)
ConnectedDrive, see Owner's Handbook for Navigation, Entertainment, Communication [6](#)
Connecting a device [70](#)
Connecting, electrical devices, see Sockets [281](#)
Connecting, mobile devices [70](#)
Connection point, starting assistance [363](#)
Connections, Screen Mirroring [75](#)
Consumption display, widget in the instrument cluster [149](#)
Consumption, see Current consumption [149](#)
Consumption, see Journey data [161](#)
Contactless opening and closing of the boot lid [90](#)
Contacts, see Owner's Handbook for Navigation, Entertainment, Communication [6](#)
Control Display [43](#)
Control Display, brightness [64](#)
Controller [43](#)
Control systems, driving stability [212](#)
Converting the headlights, see Right-hand/left-hand traffic [172](#)
Coolant [344](#)
Coolant level [344](#)

Coolant temperature, see Engine temperature [154](#)
Cooling effect, maximum [264](#)
Cooling function [264](#)
Cooling system [344](#)
Cornering light [170](#)
Corrosion of brake discs [301](#)
Crossing traffic warning [256](#)
Cruise Control, active with Stop&Go function [224](#)
Cruise control, see Active Cruise Control [224](#)
Cruise Control, see Cruise Control [221](#)
Cruise Control with distance control, see Active Cruise Control [224](#)
Cruise Control without distance control, see Cruise Control [221](#)
Cupholder [288](#)
Cupholder, front [288](#)
Cupholder, rear [288](#)
Current consumption [149](#)
Customer support, see Owner's Handbook for Navigation, Entertainment, Communication [6](#)

D

Damage, tyres [316](#)
Damper control [260](#)
Data memory [9](#)
Data protection, settings [65](#)
Data, see Deleting personal data [65](#)
Data, technical [372](#)
Date [61](#)
Daytime driving lights [169](#)
DCC, see Cruise Control [221](#)
Deactivation, airbags [177](#)
Defrosting, see Defrosting the windscreen [266](#)
Defrosting, windscreen [266](#)
Deleting personal data [65](#)
Departure schedule, see Independent ventilation [270](#)
Departure time, independent ventilation [271](#)
Desired speed, see Active Cruise Control [224](#)
Destination entry, see Owner's Handbook for Navigation, Entertainment, Communication [6](#)
Device list [76](#)
Diagnosis connection [348](#)
Differential lock [218](#)
Dimensions [372](#)
Dimensions, see Technical data [372](#)
Dimming exterior mirror [112](#)
Dimming rear-view mirror [112](#)
Dipping headlights, see High-beam assistance [170](#)
Direction indicators, see Turn indicators [136](#)
Direct selection buttons, see Favourites buttons [42](#)
Display and input [40](#)
Display in the windscreen, see Head-Up Display [163](#)
Display key, malfunction [86](#)
Display key, see BMW display key [82](#)
Display lighting, see Instrument lighting [172](#)
Displays [148](#)
Displays and symbols [7](#)
Displays, screens [370](#)
Disposal, coolant [345](#)
Disposal, vehicle battery [357](#)
Disposing of the old battery [357](#)
Distance warning, see PDC [237](#)
Door opening angle, Surround View [246](#)
Downhill gradients [301](#)
Drivelogic [144](#)
Drive mode [142](#)
Drive-off assistant [212](#)
Drive programs, see Drivelogic [144](#)
Driver activity, see Driver Attention Camera [63](#)
Driver assistance, driving, see Intelligent Safety [179](#)
Driver assistance, see Intelligent Safety [179](#)
Driver Attention Camera [63](#)
Drive-ready state, engine start [38](#)
Drive-ready state, rest state and standby state [37](#)
Driver profiles [66](#)
Driver profile, setting up [66](#)
Driver profiles, welcome screen [66](#)
Driving [130](#)
Driving Assistant, see Intelligent Safety [179](#)
Driving comfort [260](#)
Driving hints [299](#)
Driving information, general [299](#)
Driving information, running in [298](#)

Driving lights control, automatic [167](#)
Driving path lines, rear-view camera [242](#)
Driving path lines, Surround View [246](#)
Driving Stability Control Systems [212](#)
Driving through water [300](#)
Drying air, see Cooling function [264](#)
DSC Dynamic Stability Control [214](#)
Dynamic brake lights [209](#)
Dynamic damping, see Adaptive M suspension [260](#)
Dynamic Marker Light [194](#)
Dynamic Stability Control DSC [214](#)

E

Efficiency display, widget in the instrument cluster [149](#)
Electrical power window switches [97](#)
Electric glass roof [100](#)
Electronic oil measurement [341](#)
Electronic Stability Programme, ESP, see DSC [214](#)
E-mail, see Owner's Handbook for Navigation, Entertainment, Communication [6](#)
Emergency assistance, see Accident Assistance [360](#)
Emergency assistance, see Breakdown assistance [359](#)
Emergency boot release [94](#)
Emergency braking function when parking, Active PDC [239](#)
Emergency release, boot lid [94](#)
Emergency release, fuel filler flap [313](#)
Emergency release, transmission lockout [146](#)
Emergency service, see Accident Assistance [360](#)
Emergency services, see Breakdown assistance [359](#)
Emergency wheel [335](#)
Energy recuperation [149](#)
Engine, automatic start-stop function [130](#)
Engine compartment [337](#)
Engine coolant [344](#)
Engine Dynamics Control [146](#)
Engine oil change [344](#)
Engine oil filler neck [342](#)
Engine oil grades for topping up [343](#)
Engine oil level, checking electronically [341](#)
Engine oil, replenishing [342](#)
Engine oil temperature [154](#)
Engine start, see Drive-ready state [38](#)
Engine start, starting assistance [363](#)
Engine temperature [154](#)
Entering an address, Navigation, see Owner's Handbook for Navigation, Entertainment, Communication [6](#)
Entering letters and numbers [41](#)
Entertainment, see Owner's Handbook for Navigation, Entertainment, Communication [6](#)
Entry comparison, navigation [41](#)
Equipment, interior [277](#)
ESP, Electronic Stability Programme, see DSC [214](#)
Exchanging wheels and tyres [317](#)
Exhaust gas particle filter [299](#)
Exhaust, see Exhaust system [299](#)
Exhaust system [299](#)
Exhaust system, sound [147](#)
Exterior lights when unlocking [79](#)
Exterior lights with the vehicle locked [80](#)
Exterior mirror, automatically dimming [112](#)
Exterior mirror, automatic parking function [112](#)
Exterior mirrors [111](#)
Exterior mirrors, malfunction [111](#)
External start, see Starting assistance [363](#)
Eye for securing cable, towing a trailer [309](#)
Eye for towing [365](#)
Eyes, see Lashing eye in the boot [291](#)

F

Factory settings, see Resetting vehicle configuration [64](#)
Failure message, see Check Control [149](#)
False alarm, see Avoiding false alarms [97](#)
Fan run-on, see Exhaust gas particle filter [299](#)
Fastening seat belts, see Seat belts [105](#)
Fatigue warning function [210](#)
Fault displays, see Check Control [149](#)
Favourites buttons, iDrive [42](#)
Filler neck for engine oil [342](#)
Filter, see Microfilter/activated carbon filter [266](#)

Fine wood parts, care [369](#)
Fire extinguisher [362](#)
First-aid kit [359](#)
First-aid set, see First-aid kit [359](#)
Flank protection, Surround View [246](#)
Flank protection without Surround View [240](#)
Flat tyre message, RPA [330](#)
Flat tyre message, TPM [327](#)
Flat tyre, remedying [319](#)
Flat tyre, runflat indicator RPA [329](#)
Flat tyre, see Tyre Pressure Monitor [324](#)
Flat tyre warning lamp, RPA [330](#)
Flat tyre warning lamp, TPM [327](#)
Flat tyre, wheel change [331](#)
Flooding [300](#)
Floor carpet, care [370](#)
Fog lights, replacing, see Lights and bulbs [351](#)
Fold-out position of windscreen wipers [139](#)
Foot brake [300](#)
Foot mats, care [370](#)
Fording depth [300](#)
Four-wheel drive, see M xDrive [217](#)
Front airbags [175](#)
Front collision warning, see Intelligent Safety [179](#)
Front-end collision warning with City braking function [181](#)
Front-end collision warning with light braking function [181](#)
Front head restraints [109](#)
Front neck supports, see Head restraints [109](#)
Front passenger's mirror, tilting down, see Automatic parking function [112](#)
Front passenger airbags, deactivation/activation [177](#)
Front passenger airbags, indicator lamp [178](#)
Front seats [103](#)
Fuel [340](#)
Fuel filler flap [312](#)
Fuel filler flap, manual release [313](#)
Fuel gauge [154](#)
Fuel quality [340](#)
Fuel recommendation [340](#)
Fuel tank cap [312](#)
Fuel, tank capacity [373](#)
Fuel, tank capacity, see Technical data [372](#)

Fuses [357](#)

G

Garage door opener, see Integrated universal remote control [277](#)
General driving information [299](#)
General settings [60](#)
Gesture Control [54](#)
Gestures, see BMW Gesture Control [54](#)
Give way warning [206](#)
Glare protection, see Sun visor [279](#)
Glass Roof, electric [100](#)
Glass Roof, initialising system [102](#)
Glove box [286](#)
GPS, navigation, see Owner's Handbook for Navigation, Entertainment, Communication [6](#)
GPS positioning, vehicle position [63](#)

H

Handbrake, see Parking brake [133](#)
Hand-held transmitter, alternating-code [278](#)
Hands-free system, see Owner's Handbook for Navigation, Entertainment, Communication [6](#)
Hazard warning lights [359](#)
Head airbags [175](#)
Head Light, adaptive [169](#)
Headlight cleaning system, see Wiper system [136](#)
Headlight courtesy delay feature [168](#)
Headlight courtesy delay feature, switching on [81](#)
Headlight flasher [136](#)
Headlight glass [351](#)
Headlights, care [368](#)
Head restraints and seats [103](#)
Head-Up Display [163](#)
Head-Up Display, care [370](#)
Head-Up Display, M View [164](#)
Head-Up Display, saving position, see Memory function [113](#)
Head-Up Display, standard view [163](#)
Heavy transported loads, stowing [290](#)
Help in case of a breakdown [359](#)
Help in driving off, see Drive-off assistant [212](#)

High-beam assistance [170](#)
 High-beam headlights [136](#)
 High-performance engine, V8 [296](#)
 Hill Start Assist, see Drive-off assistant [212](#)
 Holder for beverages [288](#)
 HomeLink, see Integrated universal remote control [277](#)
 Home page, see Internet [6](#)
 Horn [32](#)
 Hot exhaust system [299](#)

I

iBrake – PostCrash [210](#)
 Ice warning, see Outside temperature warning [154](#)
 Identification number, see Vehicle identification number [12](#)
 iDrive [40](#)
 Ignition key, see Vehicle key [78](#)
 Important considerations [117](#)
 Independent ventilation [270](#)
 Indicator and warning lamps [150](#)
 Indicator lamp, front passenger airbags [178](#)
 Individual activation [116](#)
 Individual air distribution [266](#)
 Individual settings, see Driver profiles [66](#)
 Individual settings, see M Setup [212](#)
 Inductive charging, smartphone, see Wireless charging dock [283](#)
 Inflation pressure check, see Tyre Pressure Monitor [324](#)
 Inflation pressure, tyres [314](#)
 Inflation pressure warning RPA, tyres [329](#)
 Information window, Control Display [63](#)
 Initialisation, Tyre Pressure Monitor TPM [326](#)
 Initialising, runflat indicator RPA [330](#)
 Input and display [40](#)
 Instrument cluster [148](#)
 Instrument cluster switch, see Turn indicators [136](#)
 Instrument cluster switch, see Wiper system [136](#)
 Instrument lighting [172](#)
 Integrated key [86](#)
 Integrated Owner's Handbook in the vehicle [14](#)

Integrated universal remote control [277](#)
 Intelligent Auto Start Stop function [132](#)
 Intelligent emergency call [361](#)
 Intelligent Personal Assistant [52](#)
 Intelligent Safety [179](#)
 Intended use [8](#)
 Intensity, AUTO programme [265](#)
 Interior camera, see Driver Attention Camera [63](#)
 Interior equipment [277](#)
 Interior light [172](#)
 Interior light when unlocking [79](#)
 Interior light with the vehicle locked [80](#)
 Interior movement detector [97](#)
 Internet connection [73](#)
 Internet hotspot [73](#)
 Internet site [6](#)
 Interval Display, see Service requirements [156](#)
 Ionisation, see Ambient Air Package [272](#)
 i-Size child restraint systems [120](#)
 ISOFIX, child seat mountings [120](#)

J

Jacking points [334](#)
 Journey data [161](#)
 Joystick, M Steptronic sport transmission [139](#)
 Jump-starting connections [363](#)
 Jump starting, see Starting assistance [363](#)

K

Kenaf, care [369](#)
 Keyless Go, see Comfort Access [88](#)
 Key, mechanical [86](#)
 Key, see BMW display key [82](#)
 Key, see Vehicle key [78](#)
 Key switch for front passenger airbags [177](#)
 Kick-down, M Steptronic sport transmission [139](#)
 Knee airbag [176](#)

L

Labelling of recommended tyres [318](#)
 Lane boundary, warning [194](#)
 Lane Change Warning [198](#)
 Lane control assistant [233](#)

Lane Departure Warning [194](#)
Language, set on the Control Display [62](#)
Laser high-beam headlights [171](#)
Lashing eyes in the boot [291](#)
Lashing straps, see Lashing eyes in the boot [291](#)
Launch Control [145](#)
Laying up the vehicle [370](#)
Laying up, vehicle [370](#)
Leather care [369](#)
Leaving a parking space, see Park Assistant [251](#)
LED headlights, replacing, see Lights and bulbs [351](#)
LEDs, replacing, see Lights and bulbs [351](#)
Left-hand traffic, light setting [172](#)
Light alloy wheels, care [369](#)
Light-emitting diodes, replacing LEDs, see Lights and bulbs [351](#)
Lighter [280](#)
Lighter, front [281](#)
Lighter, rear [281](#)
Light in exterior mirror, see Crossing traffic warning [256](#)
Lighting [167](#)
Lighting, loudspeaker, see Bowers & Wilkins [173](#)
Light in the exterior mirror, see Lane Change Warning [198](#)
Lights [167](#)
Light switch [167](#)
LIM button, see Manual Speed Limiter [220](#)
List of all messages [60](#)
Loading [290](#)
Loading the boot, see Stowing transported loads [290](#)
Locking, automatic [95](#)
Locking, see Opening and closing [78](#)
Locking settings [94](#)
Locking, vehicle key [79](#)
Lock, power window switches, see Safety switch [99](#)
Logging on, mobile devices, see Connections [70](#)
Loudspeaker lighting, see Bowers & Wilkins [173](#)
Low-beam headlights [168](#)
Low Speed Assistant [144](#)

Luggage compartment lid, see Boot lid [92](#)
Luggage rack, see Roof rack [302](#)
Lumbar support [105](#)

M

Maintenance [347](#)
Maintenance requirement, see CBS Condition Based Service [347](#)
Maintenance, see Service requirements [156](#)
Maintenance System, BMW [347](#)
Make-up mirror [280](#)
Malfunction, BMW display key [86](#)
Malfunction displays, see Check Control [149](#)
Malfunction, vehicle key [81](#)
Managing devices [76](#)
Manual air distribution [266](#)
Manual air flow [265](#)
Manual operation, fuel filler flap [313](#)
Manual operation, M Steptronic sport transmission [139](#)
Map update, see Owner's Handbook for Navigation, Entertainment, Communication [6](#)
Marker light [194](#)
Massage seat, front [114](#)
Matt paintwork [369](#)
Maximum cooling effect [264](#)
Maximum speed, display, see Speed Limit Info [158](#)
Maximum speed of winter tyres [318](#)
Maximum speed range [302](#)
M carbon ceramic brakes [296](#)
M compound brakes [296](#)
M differential, active [218](#)
MDM, M Dynamic Mode [215](#)
M Driver's Package, driving instructions [302](#)
M Dynamic Mode MDM [215](#)
Media of the Owner's Handbook [14](#)
Memory function [113](#)
M Engine Dynamics Control [146](#)
Menu, instrument cluster, see Selection lists [160](#)
Messages [60](#)
Messages, see Check Control [149](#)
Microfilter [266](#)
Minimum tread depth, tyres [316](#)

Mirrors [112](#)
Mirror, vanity [280](#)
Mobile communication in the vehicle [300](#)
Mobile devices, managing [76](#)
Mobile phone, see Owner's Handbook for Navigation, Entertainment, Communication [6](#)
Mobile Service, see Accident Assistance [360](#)
Mobile Service, see Breakdown assistance [359](#)
Mobile telephone, connecting [70](#)
Mobile telephone, see Owner's Handbook for Navigation, Entertainment, Communication [6](#)
Mobility System [319](#)
MODE button, see Active Cruise Control [224](#)
Moisture in the headlights, see Headlight glass [351](#)
Monitor, see Control Display [43](#)
Mounting child restraints [118](#)
MP3 player, see Owner's Handbook for Navigation, Entertainment, Communication [6](#)
M Setup [212](#)
M Steptronic sport transmission [139](#)
M suspension, adaptive, see Adaptive M suspension [260](#)
M Technology [296](#)
Multifunction steering wheel, buttons [32](#)
Multimedia, see Owner's Handbook for Navigation, Entertainment, Communication [6](#)
Music hard disc, see Owner's Handbook for Navigation, Entertainment, Communication [6](#)
Music tracks, Gesture Control [55](#)
M View, Head-Up Display [164](#)
M xDrive [217](#)

N

Navigation, see Owner's Handbook for Navigation, Entertainment, Communication [6](#)
Net, boot [291](#)
Neutral cleaner, light alloy wheels [369](#)
New wheels and tyres [317](#)
Night-vision device, see Night Vision [190](#)
Night Vision with person and animal recognition [190](#)
No Passing Information, see Speed Limit Info [158](#)
Nose weight [373](#)

Nose weight, see Trailer nose weight [373](#)
Notes [6](#)
Nylon rope for tow-starting/towing [365](#)

O

OBD on-board diagnosis [348](#)
Object recognition, see Night Vision [190](#)
Obstacle marker, rear-view camera [242](#)
Obstacle marking, Surround View [246](#)
Octane number, see Petrol grade [340](#)
Odometer, see Journey data [161](#)
Oil change [344](#)
Oil change interval, see Service requirements [156](#)
Oil filler neck [342](#)
Oil grades for topping up, engine [343](#)
Oil level, checking electronically [341](#)
Oil, replenishing [342](#)
On-board computer, see Journey data [161](#)
On-board diagnosis OBD [348](#)
On-board literature, printed [14](#)
On-board monitor, see Control Display [43](#)
On-board tool kit [350](#)
Opening and closing [78](#)
Operating menus, iDrive [40](#)
Operating principle, iDrive [40](#)
Operation, app [53](#)
Outside air, see AUC [265](#)
Outside temperature [154](#)
Overheating of the engine, see Engine temperature [154](#)
Overtaking restrictions [158](#)
Owner's Handbook by voice control [53](#)
Owner's Handbook, printed [14](#)

P

Paintwork, vehicle [368](#)
Panorama View, see Surround View [244](#)
Park Assistant [251](#)
Park Assistant Plus, see Surround View [244](#)
Park Distance Control PDC [237](#)
Parking aid, see PDC [237](#)
Parking Assistant Plus, see Surround View [244](#)
Parking Assistant, see Park Assistant [251](#)

Parking, Automatic Hold, see Parking brake [133](#)
Parking brake [133](#)
Parking lights [168](#)
Particle filter, see Exhaust gas particle filter [299](#)
Part replacement [350](#)
Parts and accessories [9](#)
PDC Park Distance Control [237](#)
Pedestrian protection, active [178](#)
Permitted gross weight while towing a trailer [373](#)
Personal data, deleting [65](#)
Personal profile, see Driver profiles [66](#)
Personal settings [65](#)
Person recognition, see Night Vision [190](#)
Person warning with braking function [187](#)
Petrol [340](#)
Petrol grade [340](#)
Petrol particle filter, see Exhaust gas particle filter [299](#)
Phone call, Gesture Control [55](#)
Place for children [117](#)
Plasters, see First-aid kit [359](#)
Plastic parts, care [370](#)
Pockets, doors [287](#)
Positioning, vehicle position [63](#)
PostCrash – iBrake [210](#)
Power display, see Sport displays [162](#)
Power failure [356](#)
Power window switches [97](#)
Pressure Monitor, see Tyre Pressure Monitor [324](#)
Pressure, tyres [314](#)
Pressure warning RPA, tyres [329](#)
Prevention of rear collision [204](#)
Printed on-board literature [14](#)
Profiles, see Driver profiles [66](#)
Protection function, Glass Roof, see Anti-trap mechanism [101](#)
Protection function, windows, see Anti-trap mechanism [98](#)

R

Racing track [303](#)
Radiator fan, see Exhaust gas particle filter [299](#)
Radio, see Owner's Handbook for Navigation, Entertainment, Communication [6](#)
Radio signals [300](#)
Rain sensor [137](#)
Range [156](#)
Rear automatic air conditioning [268](#)
Rear collision warning, see Prevention of rear collision [204](#)
Rear fog light [171](#)
Rear fog light, replacing, see Lights and bulbs [351](#)
Rear head restraints [110](#)
Rear luggage rack [303](#)
Rear neck supports, see Head restraints [110](#)
Rear seat backrests, folding down [292](#)
Rear-view camera, see Surround View [244](#)
Rear-view camera, without Surround View [241](#)
Rear-view mirror, automatic-dim [112](#)
Rear-view mirror, internal [112](#)
Rear-view mirrors, external [111](#)
Rear window heating [266](#)
Recirculated-air mode [265](#)
Recirculating air filter, see Microfilter/activated carbon filter [266](#)
Recirculation, see Recirculated-air mode [265](#)
Recommended makes of tyre [318](#)
Recycling [349](#)
Refuelling [312](#)
Remote 3D View [251](#)
Remote control for audio, see Owner's Handbook for Navigation, Entertainment, Communication [6](#)
Remote control, see Vehicle key [78](#)
Remote control, universal [277](#)
Remote services, app, see Owner's Handbook for Navigation, Entertainment, Communication [6](#)
Remote Software Upgrade [57](#)
Replacement of parts [350](#)
Replacement wheel, see Emergency wheel [335](#)
Replacing bulbs, see Lights and bulbs [351](#)
Replacing front lights, see Bulbs and lights [351](#)
Replacing headlights, see Bulbs and lights [351](#)
Replacing laser headlights, see Bulbs and lights [351](#)
Replacing lights, see Bulbs and lights [351](#)

- Replacing parts [350](#)
- Replacing rear light, see Bulbs and lights [351](#)
- Replacing tail lights, see Bulbs and lights [351](#)
- Replacing wheels and tyres [317](#)
- Reserve warning, see Range [156](#)
- Reservoir for washer fluid [345](#)
- Resetting, Tyre Pressure Monitor TPM [326](#)
- Resetting, vehicle configuration [64](#)
- Resetting vehicle settings [64](#)
- Restraint systems for children, see Carrying children safely [117](#)
- Rest state, standby state and drive-ready state [37](#)
- RESUME button, see Active Cruise Control [224](#)
- Retreaded tyres [318](#)
- Reuse, recycling [349](#)
- Reversing assistant, see Parking Assistant [251](#)
- Revolution counter [154](#)
- Right-hand traffic, light setting [172](#)
- Rim cleaner, light alloy wheels [369](#)
- Road priority warning [206](#)
- Roller sunblinds, rear side window [99](#)
- Roller sunblinds, rear side windows [99](#)
- RON, petrol grade [340](#)
- Roof lining [36](#)
- Roof load [373](#)
- Roof rack [302](#)
- Rope for tow-starting/towing [365](#)
- Roundabout light [170](#)
- Route, navigation, see Owner's Handbook for Navigation, Entertainment, Communication [6](#)
- RPA runflat indicator [329](#)
- RTTI, see Owner's Handbook for Navigation, Entertainment, Communication [6](#)
- Rubber parts, care [369](#)
- Runflat indicator RPA [329](#)
- Running in [298](#)
- Run-on of fan, see Exhaust gas particle filter [299](#)
- Safety systems, see Airbags [175](#)
- Safety systems, see Intelligent Safety [179](#)
- Saving energy, see Shift point indicator [157](#)
- Saving fuel [310](#)
- Saving mirror position, see Memory function [113](#)
- Saving seat position, see Memory function [113](#)
- Saving steering wheel position, see Memory function [113](#)
- Scent cartridge, see Ambient Air Package [272](#)
- Scenting, see Ambient Air Package [272](#)
- Scent, see Ambient Air Package [272](#)
- Screen Mirroring, connection [75](#)
- Screen, see Control Display [43](#)
- Screwdriver, see On-board tool kit [350](#)
- Sealant, see Mobility System [319](#)
- Seat belt reminder for driver and front passenger seat [108](#)
- Seat belt reminder for rear seats [108](#)
- Seat belts [105](#)
- Seat belts, care [370](#)
- Seat heating [115](#)
- Seat heating, individual activation [116](#)
- Seats and head restraints [103](#)
- Seats, front [103](#)
- Seat ventilation, active [116](#)
- Seat ventilation, individual activation [116](#)
- Securing, transported loads [290](#)
- Selection list in the instrument cluster [160](#)
- Selector lever [140](#)
- Selector lever, M Steptronic sport transmission [139](#)
- Selector lever position [140](#)
- Sensors, care [370](#)
- Sequential mode [142](#)
- Service history [157](#)
- Service requirements [156](#)
- Service requirement, see CBS Condition Based Service [347](#)
- Services, ConnectedDrive, see Owner's Handbook for Navigation, Entertainment, Communication [6](#)
- Service, see Accident Assistance [360](#)
- Service, see Breakdown assistance [359](#)
- Servotronic [218](#)
- SET button, see Active Cruise Control [224](#)
- Setting, Control Display [64](#)

S

- Safe seating position [103](#)
- Safety locks, doors and windows [128](#)
- Safety package, see Active Protection [209](#)
- Safety switch, windows [99](#)
- Safety systems, see Airbags [175](#)

- Settings for vehicle configuration, resetting [64](#)
- Settings, general [60](#)
- Settings, locking/unlocking [94](#)
- Settings, M Setup [212](#)
- Settings, seats and head restraints [103](#)
- Setup assistant [66](#)
- Shift Lights [165](#)
- Shift paddles on the steering wheel [139](#)
- Shift point indicator [157](#)
- Shock absorber adjustment, active, see Adaptive M suspension [260](#)
- Shoulder support, front [105](#)
- Side airbag [175](#)
- Side lights [168](#)
- Side nozzles, see Ventilation [267](#)
- Signal horn, horn [32](#)
- Signals on unlocking, see Acknowledgement signals [94](#)
- Situational adjustment [53](#)
- Sizes [372](#)
- Sizes, see Technical data [372](#)
- Ski and snowboard bag [294](#)
- Sliding/tilting roof, see Electric glass roof [100](#)
- Smartphone, connecting [70](#)
- Smartphone, operating via voice control [51](#)
- Smartphone, see Owner's Handbook for Navigation, Entertainment, Communication [6](#)
- Smokers package [280](#)
- SMS, see Short messages, see Owner's Handbook for Navigation, Entertainment, Communication [6](#)
- Snow chains [323](#)
- Socket for on-board diagnosis OBD [348](#)
- Sockets [281](#)
- Soft Close Automatic [94](#)
- Software update, see Remote Software Upgrade [57](#)
- Software upgrade, see Remote Software Upgrade [57](#)
- Software version, see Remote Software Upgrade [57](#)
- Soot particle filter, see Exhaust gas particle filter [299](#)
- SOS button, see Intelligent emergency call [361](#)
- Sound control [147](#)
- Sound, exhaust system [147](#)
- Sound output, see Owner's Handbook for Navigation, Entertainment, Communication [6](#)
- Sound, see Owner's Handbook for Navigation, Entertainment, Communication [6](#)
- Spanner, see On-board tool kit [350](#)
- Spare wheel, see Emergency wheel [335](#)
- Special equipment, see Vehicle equipment [7](#)
- Speed Limit Assist [231](#)
- Speed Limit Device, Manual Speed Limiter [220](#)
- Speed limit, display, see Speed Limit Info [158](#)
- Speed limiter, manual [220](#)
- Speed Limit Info [158](#)
- Speed warning [62](#)
- Sport displays [162](#)
- Sport programme, M Steptronic sport transmission [139](#)
- Sport suspension, see Adaptive M suspension [260](#)
- Stability control systems [212](#)
- Standard equipment, see Vehicle equipment [7](#)
- Standard view, Head-Up Display [163](#)
- Standby state, rest state and drive-ready state [37](#)
- Start/stop button [130](#)
- Starting assistance [363](#)
- Starting assistance, see DSC [214](#)
- Starting, see Drive-ready state [38](#)
- Starting the engine, see Drive-ready state [38](#)
- Stations, AM/FM, see Owner's Handbook for Navigation, Entertainment, Communication [6](#)
- Status indicator, tyres [326](#)
- Status information, iDrive [41](#)
- Status of the Owner's Handbook [7](#)
- Status, vehicle [163](#)
- Steering and lane control assistant incl. traffic-queue assistant [233](#)
- Steering assistance [218](#)
- Steering wheel, adjusting [113](#)
- Steering wheel, buttons [32](#)
- Steering wheel heating [113](#)
- Steering wheel heating, individual activation [116](#)
- Stopping the engine, see Drive-ready state [38](#)
- Storage compartment, boot [292](#)
- Storage compartment, centre console [287](#)
- Storage compartments [286](#)
- Storage facilities [286](#)

Storage, see Laying up the vehicle [370](#)
 Storage, tyres [319](#)
 Stowing, transported loads [290](#)
 Suitable devices [71](#)
 Suitable mobile telephones [71](#)
 Summer tyres, tread [316](#)
 Sun visor [279](#)
 Supplementary handbook [14](#)
 Supplementary text message [150](#)
 Surround View [244](#)
 Surround View, Gesture Control [55](#)
 Suspension, electronic, see Adaptive M suspension [260](#)
 Swinging of the trailer, see Trailer Stability Control [307](#)
 Switches, see Driving area [32](#)
 Symbols and displays [7](#)
 SYNC programme, automatic air conditioning [266](#)

T

Tailgate, see Boot lid [92](#)
 Tank display [154](#)
 Technical changes, see Your own safety [8](#)
 Technical data [372](#)
 Technology, BMW M [296](#)
 Telephone, connecting [70](#)
 Telephone, see Owner's Handbook for Navigation, Entertainment, Communication [6](#)
 Teleservices, see Owner's Handbook for Navigation, Entertainment, Communication [6](#)
 Television, TV, see Owner's Handbook for Navigation, Entertainment, Communication [6](#)
 Temperature, automatic air conditioning [263](#)
 Temperature display, see Outside temperature [154](#)
 Temperature, engine oil [154](#)
 Tension belt, see Lashing eyes in the boot [291](#)
 Text message, supplementary [150](#)
 Thermal camera, see Night Vision [190](#)
 Thiefproof wheel studs [333](#)
 Thigh support [104](#)
 Through-loading system [292](#)
 Tilt alarm sensor [97](#)
 Tilting down, front passenger's mirror, see Automatic parking function [112](#)
 Time [61](#)
 Tool [350](#)
 Torque display, see Sport displays [162](#)
 Total weight [373](#)
 Total weight, permitted [373](#)
 Touchpad, Controller [46](#)
 Tourist function, see Right-hand/left-hand traffic [172](#)
 Tow bar [365](#)
 Tow fitting, see Towing eye [365](#)
 Towing a trailer [305](#)
 Towing a trailer, activation [307](#)
 Towing a trailer, data [373](#)
 Towing away [364](#)
 Towing eye [365](#)
 Towing rope [365](#)
 Towing, see Tow-starting and towing [364](#)
 Tow-starting [364](#)
 TPM Tyre Pressure Monitor [324](#)
 Traffic information, see Owner's Handbook for Navigation, Entertainment, Communication [6](#)
 Traffic jam assistant, see Steering and lane control assistant [233](#)
 Traffic-queue assistant, see Steering and lane control assistant [233](#)
 Trailer loads [373](#)
 Trailer Stability Control [307](#)
 Trailer tow hitch, ball linkage electrically swivellable [308](#)
 Trailer tow hitch, rear-view camera view [242](#)
 Trailer tow hitch, Surround View [246](#)
 Transmission lockout, unlocking electronically [146](#)
 Transmission, see M Steptronic sport transmission [139](#)
 Transported loads, stowing and securing [290](#)
 Tread, tyres [316](#)
 Trip distance recorder, see Journey data [161](#)
 Triple turn signal [136](#)
 Turn indicator, indicator lamp [153](#)
 Turn indicators, high-beam headlights, headlight flasher [136](#)
 Turn indicators, replacing bulbs, see Bulbs and lights [351](#)

Turning circle lines, rear-view camera [242](#)
Turning circle lines, Surround View [246](#)
TV, see Owner's Handbook for Navigation, Entertainment, Communication [6](#)
Tyre damage [316](#)
Tyre inflation pressure [314](#)
Tyre makes, recommendation [318](#)
Tyre pressure [314](#)
Tyre pressure monitor, see RPA [329](#)
Tyre Pressure Monitor TPM [324](#)
Tyre repair kit, see Mobility System [319](#)
Tyres and wheels [314](#)
Tyre sealant, see Mobility System [319](#)
Tyre settings [325](#)
Tyre tread [316](#)

U

Units of measure [62](#)
Universal remote control [277](#)
Unloaded weight [373](#)
Unlock button, M Steptronic sport transmission [139](#)
Unlocking, automatic [95](#)
Unlocking, see Opening and closing [78](#)
Unlocking, settings [94](#)
Unlocking, vehicle key [79](#)
Updates after going to press [7](#)
Upgrade, see Remote Software Upgrade [57](#)
USB connection [73](#)
USB interface, position in the vehicle [282](#)
Use, intended [8](#)

V

V8 high-performance engine [296](#)
Vanity mirror [280](#)
Vehicle acknowledgement signals [94](#)
Vehicle battery [354](#)
Vehicle breakdown, see Help in case of a breakdown [359](#)
Vehicle care [368](#)
Vehicle configuration, resetting [64](#)
Vehicle equipment [7](#)
Vehicle identification number [12](#)
Vehicle key [78](#)

Vehicle key, additional [81](#)
Vehicle key, changing batteries [81](#)
Vehicle key, integrated key [86](#)
Vehicle key, loss [81](#)
Vehicle key, malfunction [81](#)
Vehicle key with display, malfunction [86](#)
Vehicle key with display, see BMW display key [82](#)
Vehicle paintwork [368](#)
Vehicle position, vehicle positioning [63](#)
Vehicle, running in [298](#)
Vehicle status [163](#)
Vehicle wash [367](#)
Ventilation [267](#)
Ventilation, see Independent ventilation [270](#)
Vents, see Ventilation [267](#)
Video, see Owner's Handbook for Navigation, Entertainment, Communication [6](#)
VIN, see Vehicle identification number [12](#)
Voice control [48](#)
Voice control function [48](#)
Voice control, Gesture Control [55](#)
Voice control, see BMW Intelligent Personal Assistant [52](#)
Voice control system [48](#)
Volume, Gesture Control [55](#)

W

Wake word [49](#)
Warning and indicator lamps [150](#)
Warning lamp in exterior mirror, see Crossing traffic warning [256](#)
Warning lamp in the exterior mirror, see Lane Change Warning [198](#)
Warning messages, see Check Control [149](#)
Warning of crossing traffic [256](#)
Warning triangle [359](#)
Warranty [8](#)
Washer fluid [345](#)
Washer jets, windows [138](#)
Washing bay view, Surround View [246](#)
Washing fluid, see Washer fluid [345](#)
Washing, vehicle [367](#)
Wash system [367](#)
Water on roads [300](#)

Water, see Condensation when vehicle is parked [301](#)

Website, see Internet [6](#)

Weights [373](#)

Weights, see Technical data [372](#)

Welcome lights [168](#)

Welcome light when unlocking [79](#)

Welcome screen, driver profiles [66](#)

Wheel change [331](#)

Wheels and tyres [314](#)

Wheels and tyres, replacing [317](#)

Wheels, see Runflat indicator RPA [329](#)

Widgets, iDrive [41](#)

WiFi connection [73](#)

WiFi hotspot, see Internet connection [73](#)

Window, defrosting [266](#)

Windscreen, defrosting [266](#)

Windscreen washer jets [138](#)

Windscreen washing system, see Wiper system [136](#)

Windscreen wipers, see Wiper system [136](#)

Winter storage, see Laying up the vehicle [370](#)

Winter tyres [318](#)

Winter tyres, tread [316](#)

Wiper blades, replacing [350](#)

Wipers, fold-out position [139](#)

Wipers, see Wiper system [136](#)

Wiper system [136](#)

Wiping fluid, see Washer fluid [345](#)

Wireless charging dock for smartphones [283](#)

Wireless charging, smartphone, see Wireless charging dock [283](#)

WLAN connection, see WiFi connection [73](#)

Wood parts, care [369](#)

Wordmatch principle, see Entry comparison [41](#)

Working in, engine compartment [338](#)

Wrong-way driving warning [160](#)

Y

Your own safety [8](#)



01402631225 en



The Ultimate
Driving Machine



BMW DRIVER'S GUIDE APP.

Your customised vehicle information in an app.
Optimised for smartphones & tablets. Can be used offline.



Download on the
App Store



GET IT ON
Google Play



01402631225 en

Online Edition for Part no. 01402631225 - X/19